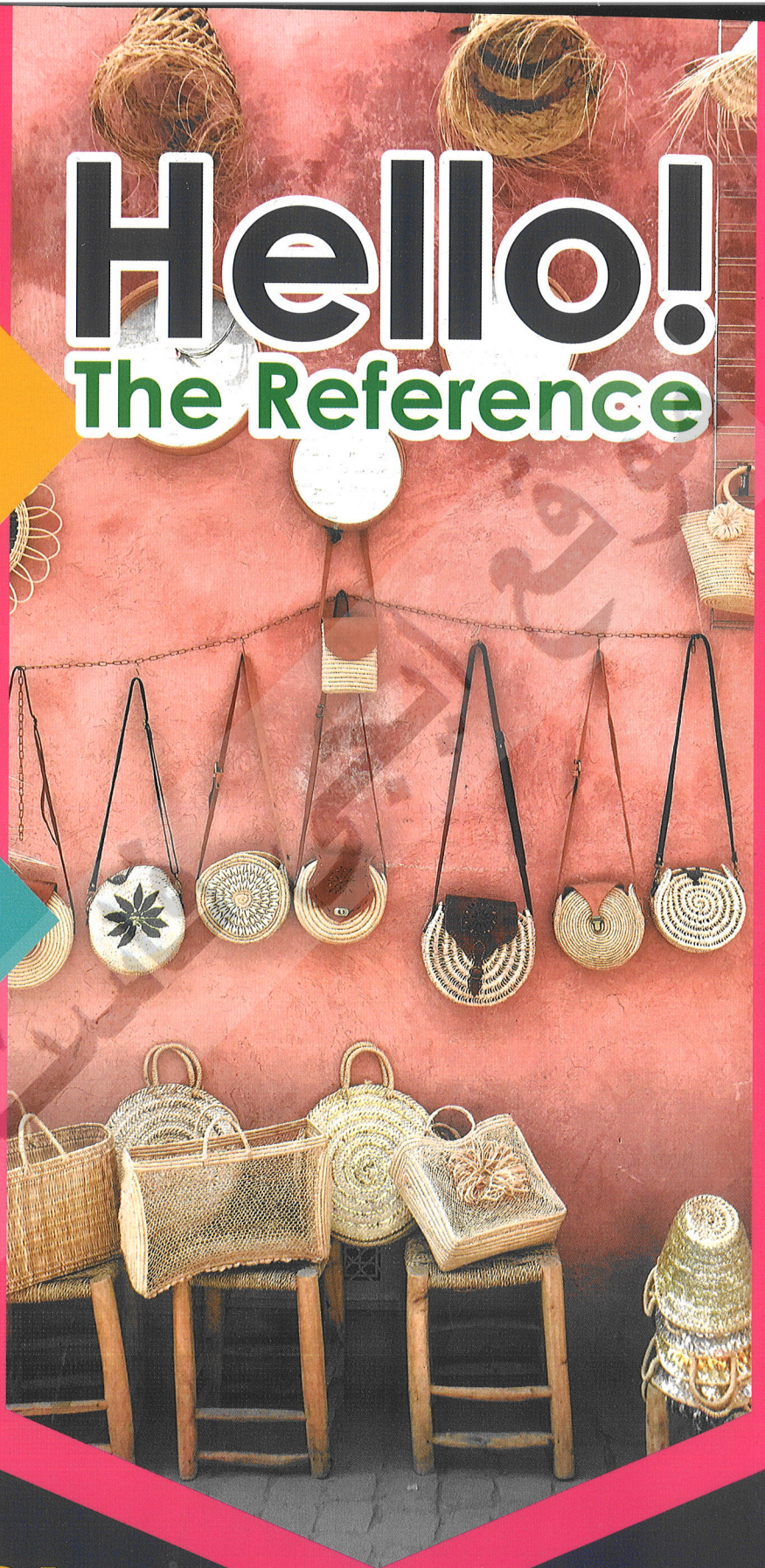


# Hello!

## The Reference



## Third Stage

### Part One

By: Hassan ElGebaly

Phone: 0100 150 78 63

f Mr/Hassan El-gebaly 2021





*Hassan.elgebaly2021*

**Hello ! Part One(2021)**

## **Third Sage**

- (1) Student's book**
- (2) Workbook**
- (3) Longman**
- (4) Choose the correct answer**
- (5) Previous Exams.**
- (6) Open Book Exercises:**

*By*

***Mr.Hassan El Gebaly***  
***Tel:01001507863***





# Unit One

## Writers and Stories

### 1 – Important vocabulary & derivatives:

average (n)	معدل / متوسط	confused(adj)	مشوش الذهن / مرتبك
believe (v)	يعتقد، يؤمن	confusing (adj)	مربك / محير
believer (n) in	مؤمن	confusion (n)	ارتباك
belief (n)	إيمان ، اعتقاد	style (n)	طريقة / أسلوب
beliefs (n)	معتقدات	stylish (adj)	ذو أسلوب / متميز بالاناقة
disbelief	عدم تصديق ، إنكار	midday (n)	منتصف النهار، الظهر
routine (n)	مُبتدل ، روتيني	midnight (n)	منتصف الليل
red tape	روتين حكومي	poetry	شعر
old-fashioned(adj)	موضة قديمة / قديم	poets (n)	شعراء
fashion (n)	موضة / طراز حديث	poems (n)	قصائد
fashionable (adj)	على الموضة	publisher (n)	ناشر (الكتب و المؤلفات)
pioneer	رائد	publish (v)	ينشر (كتاب او مؤلف)
pioneering (adj)	رائد في مجاله	publishing (n)	النشر
collect (v)	يجمع	experience (n)	خبرة / تجربة في الحياة
collector (n)	الجامع ، الجابي	experienced (adj)	ذو خبرة / متمرس
collection (n)	مجموعة	expert on	خبير في
insist on (v)	يصر	give me a headache	يصيبني بالصداع
disabled (adj)	معاق	district	إقليم ، مقاطعة ، منطقة
establish (v)	يؤسس / يرسخ	law (n)	قانون / شريعة
establishment (n)	تأسيس / انشاء	lawyer (n)	محامي
literature (n)	الأدب	lawful (adj)	مشروع / حلال
literary(adj)	أدبي	lawless (adj)	غير خاضع للقانون
competition (n)	منافسة/مسابقة	custom	عادة ، عَرَف ، رسوم جمركية
compete (v)	ينافس / يتسابق	attach (v)	يرفق ، يلصق ، يلحق بـ
comparative (adj)	تنافسي	attached (adj)	متعلق بـ ، ملحق بـ
secretary	سكرتيرة	attachment (n)	شيء ملحق أو مرفق
be made/turned into a film	حولت الى فيلم	respected	شخص (شيء) يستحق الاحترام بسبب القيمة او الأداء
custom (n)	عادة جماعية / تقليد	repectable	شخص جدير بالاحترام لاخلاقه او مكانته الاجتماعية
customary (adj)	معتاد / اعتيادي	respectful	محترم لغيره
develop (v)	يطور ، ينمي	delivered	سلم ، وزع ، أوصل
developing (adj)	متطور ، نامي	training	تدريب
developed (adj)	متقدم	race	مُسابقة ، تسابق -عِرْق
development (n)	تطور ، تنمية	prize	جائزة
politician (n)	رجل السياسة	graduate (d) (v),(n)	يتخرج / خريج
politics (n)	السياسة	graduation	التخرج (من الجامعة)
political (adj)	سياسي	diplomat (n)	دبلوماسي (شخص)
politically (adv.)	سياسياً	diplomatic (adj)	دبلوماسي(نواحي سياسية)





power(n)	قوة / سلطة	diplomacy (n)	دبلوماسية / لياقة
powerful (adj)	قوى / ذو سلطة	culture (n)	حضارة ، ثقافة
powerless(adj)	بلا سلطة او قوة	cultured (adj)	مثقّف
education (n)	تعليم	achieve (d)	يحقق / ينجز
educated (adj)	متعلم	achievement (n)	انجاز
support (ed) (v)	يساند / يدعم / يؤيد	cultural (adj)	ثقافي
supporter (n)	مؤيد / مساند	culturally (adv.)	ثقافياً

## 2 – Check Your Vocabulary :

excellent (adj)	ممتاز	unsuccessful	فاشل
product (n)	مُنتج	ancient	قديم
behaviour	تصرف ، سلوك	collection of	مجموعة من
system (n)	نظام	translate into	يترجم إلى
typical (adj)	نموذجي	succeed in	ينجح في
traditional (adj)	تقليدي	full of	مملوء بـ
journalist (n)	صحفي	work for	يعمل لدى
clerk (n)	موظف	happy with	سعيد بـ
useful (adj)	مفيد ، نافع	talk to	يتحدث إلى ( شخص )
successful	ناجح	modern	حديث
created	خلق	experience (n)	خبرة
fixed (adj)	محدد	earthquake (n)	زلزال
enter (v)	يدخل	postman (n)	ساعي البريد (البوسطجي)
editor (n)	محرر	century (n)	قرن
sound (v)	يبدو	fiction (n)	خيال
attend (v)	يحضر	create	يخلق ، ينشئ ، يحدث
society (n)	مجتمع	sailor (n)	بحّار
respect (v)	يقدر ، يحترم	concerned (adj)	مهتم
retire (v)	يتقاعد، يعتزل الخدمة	novelist (n)	روائي
expert (v)	خبير	successful (adj)	ناجح ، موفق
career (n)	الحياة المهنية	ask for	يطلب
abroad (adv.)	خارج البلاد	rules (n)	قوانين
affect (v)	يؤثر على	heart transplant	زراعة قلب

## 3- Tapescript:

Interviewer	:	When did you start writing?
Writer	:	<i>I first wrote stories and poems قصائد شعر when I was at primary ابتدائي school.</i>
Interviewer	:	What was the first thing you wrote?
Writer	:	When I was seven, I wrote a poem which <u>won second prize</u> جائزة in a national competition مسابقة for school children.
Interviewer	:	When did you start writing stories?
Writer	:	When I was at university جامعة , I wrote short stories for a student magazine مجلة . My head was always full of ideas. <u>While I was finishing one story, I was planning</u> يخطط <u>the next one.</u>
Interviewer	:	Didn't you get confused مرتبك ?





Writer	:	Not really. <u>I used to write very quickly.</u> I finished most short stories in two or three days. <u>As soon as I had finished one story, I started the next one.</u>
Interviewer	:	Do you still write like that?
Writer	:	No, <u>I don't write short stories now.</u> Now, I only write novels they take much longer.
Interviewer	:	So how do you write now? Do you have <u>a fixed routine</u> روتين ثابت ؟
Writer	:	Yes, I write from nine in the morning till three in the afternoon, <u>with a ten-minute break for coffee at midday</u> منتصف النهار .
Interviewer	:	Do you use a computer?
Writer	:	No, <u>I'm old fashioned</u> موضة قديمة / قديم - <u>I use a pencil and paper.</u> I used a computer for a few weeks, <u>but it gave me a headache</u> صداع. So, first I write something by hand then my secretary types it onto the computer. My publisher الناشر / دار النشر insists علي that I send everything as <u>an e-mail attachment</u> مرفق .
Interviewer	:	How many words do you write usually a day?
writer	:	I write one thousand new words a day for a week, then I spend two or three days checking يفحص the week's work until I'm completely happy. <u>I'd changed my last novel six times before I was happy with it.</u>
Interviewer	:	Do you show other people?
Writer	:	No, not until a novel's almost تقريبا finished. Then I give it to two or three good friends and ask them for their opinions.
Interviewer	:	Do they ever tell you they don't like what you've written?
Writer	:	Yes! Last year both of the people who read one of my books said they didn't like how my story ended. So I changed it.
Interviewer	:	What did you think of the ending النهاية of your last story?
Writer	:	When I finished it I thought it was my best ending yet!
Interviewer	:	That's very interesting. Thank you for talking to me.
Writer	:	You are welcome.

#### ✓ 4- Reading:

##### Yehia Haqqi (1905 – 1992)

Yehia Haqqi was one of the pioneers رواد of modern Egyptian literature الأدب . As well as being an important writer, he was an expert on خبير في Arab culture الثقافة . Yehia Haqqi was born in 1905 in the Sayyada Zeinab district منطقة / حي of Cairo. He graduated in law القانون and worked for a short time as a lawyer محامي . In 1929, he began his career مهنة / حياة عمل as a diplomat دبلوماسي and he worked abroad for more than 20 years. The time he had spent in France, Italy, Turkey and Libya gave him experiences تجارب / خبرات he later used in his writing.

At the same time as he was working, Haqqi was also writing stories. His first short story, published المنشورة في in 1925, established رفعة الى مكانة him as one of the great short story writers of the Arab world. Haqqi always wanted to help poor and disabled المعاقين people. In 1955, he wrote a collection of مجموعة من short stories about the poor and the disabled which won an important prize. One of his novels, "The postman ساعي البريد", was made into حولت الى a film . In 1992, he had to go to hospital





after an earthquake زلزال in Cairo, but gave his bed to a poor person who he thought needed it more. Haqqi wrote in a new way about Arab society and customs عادات in the twentieth century. Haqqi was also interested in the Arabic language and he developed a new style أسلوب of writing which is respected محترم today.

As well as بالإضافة الى writing his own novels and stories, Haqqi also translated Russian, French, Italian and Turkish literature into Arabic. He was a very strong believer in مؤمن بـ the power of books and he supported يؤيد / يساند many young Egyptian writers. Haqqi died in 1992, but is still thought of as the father رائد of the modern short story and the novel in Egypt.

### ✓ 5 - Main Points:

- 1 - Yehia Haqqi was one of the pioneers of modern Egyptian literature رواد (one of) يليها اسم في الجمع
- 2 - As well as being an important writer, he was an expert on Arab culture. (an expert on) خبير في ، لاحظ حرف الجر .  
نستخدم (Arabic) مع كل شئ متعلق باللغة اما (Arab/Arabian) في غير ذلك .  
The Arabic language / an Arabic work / an Arabic expression.  
An Arab custom / Arab society / Arab dress / Arabian horse / Arabian Nights
- 3 - In 1929, he began his career as a diplomat and he worked abroad for more than 20 years. مهنة عملية
- 4 - The time he spent in France, Italy, Turkey and Libya gave him experiences he later used in his writing. خبرات حياتية
- 5 - His first short story, published in 1925 , established him as one of the great short story writers of the Arab world. المنشورة في  
(published) (which was published) تصريف ثالث أصلها
- 6 - In 1955 , he wrote a collection of short stories about the poor and the disabled which won an important prize. مجموعة من

### ✓ 6- Important Sentences :

- ♦ 1 - I first wrote stories and poems when I was at primary school. مدرسة ابتدائية
- ♦ 2 - While I was finishing one story, I was planning the next one.
- ♦ 3 - As soon as I'd finished one story, I started the next one.
- ♦ 4 - With a ten-minute break for coffee at midday. فترة راحة لعشر دقائق للقهوة
- ♦ 5 - I used a computer for a few weeks , but it gave me a headache. بسبب الصداع
- ♦ 6 - My publisher insists that I send everything as an e-mail attachment. يصر ان
- ♦ 7 - I write one thousand new words a day for a week, then I spend two or three days checking the week's work until I'm completely happy. يفحص
- ♦ 8 - Last year both of the people who read one of my books said they didn't like how my story ended . انتهت

### \*\*\*Practice(1)Test Your Vocabulary\*\*\*

\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- ⌘ 1 - The city has eight (distinctions- disruptions- districts disputes), each with a representative on the City Council.
- ⌘ 2 - Hundreds of athletes from across the nation came to (complete-conflict- compete delete) in the games.
- ⌘ 3 - It is the (routine-custom-prize- customer) to greet someone when you meet them.
- ⌘ 4 - Using a typewriter is (poetic-vague-ancient- old-fashioned). Now we use computers.





- ⌘ 5-Dr Fathi has performed a new type of surgery. He is considered a (n) (routine - pioneer - complication-explorer) in his field.
- ⌘ 6-This author uses long, complex sentences. That is her(routine-pen-fashion-style) of writing.
- ⌘ 7-With his book The Country of Men, Hisham Matar has become a(n)(established-literal- eventual-artistic) author.
- ⌘ 8-The (styling-development-establishment-custom)of vaccines to prevent diseases has helped to save many lives.
- ⌘ 9-When the(style-law-pioneer-custom)requires you to follow a rule, you can receive a penalty if you disregard it.
- ⌘ 10-In eastern countries, it is (legal-pioneering-routine-customary) to remove your shoes before you enter a home.

### **Student's Book & Workbook :**

- ⌘ 11-Haqqi wrote in a new way about the(customs-communities -taxes- stamps) and traditions of the Arab society in the twentieth century.
- ⌘ 12-The official(shook-tested-revised-checked)our passports carefully before we were allowed to get on the plane.
- ⌘ 13-I always have(ten-minute break-a ten-minutes break - a ten-minute breaks – a ten - minute break) for tea at midday every day.
- ⌘ 14-You can send a/an(attainment بلوغ تحقيق-establishment-attachment-management) with your e-mail to the company.
- ⌘ 15-He was the first surgeon to do an open-heart surgery. He is a/an(president – -beginner – pioneer – boss) in this field.
- ⌘ 16-As well as (be - to be – being – was) an important writer, Yehia Haqqi was an expert on Arab culture.
- ⌘ 17-I have two brothers;(neither-both-each-none of)of them are university students.
- ⌘ 18-The questions the teacher asked me were(confuses-confusing-confused-confusion) because he used mysterious words. عاجل عاجل عاجل
- ⌘ 19-Haqqi was a brilliant writer who developed a new(fashion-style-standard-policy) of writing short stories.
- ⌘ 20-Haqqi was an expert on Arab(culture-belief-religion-cultural).
- ⌘ 21-He was one of the(politicians-pioneers-adventurers-scientists)of modern Egyptian literature.
- ⌘ 22-Haqqi's works(created-launched-constructed-established)him as a great short story writer.
- ⌘ 23-He was a strong(publisher-interest-believer-belief) in the power of education.
- ⌘ 24-The time he spent abroad gave him(experiments- experiences- situations-believes) he used in his writing.
- ⌘ 25-He always wanted to help poor and(disabled-disability-handicap-enabled) people.
- ⌘ 26-He worked(aboard-ahead-abroad-a shore) for more than 20 years.
- ⌘ 27-Haqqi is thought of(such as-like-as like-as)the father of the modern short story in Egypt.
- ⌘ 28-My uncle is the(publisher-publishing-believer-pioneer) of a local newspaper.
- ⌘ 29-In 1992, an(volcano-earthquake-windbreak-seaquake)stroke Egypt and destroyed a lot of buildings. أسفل
- ⌘ 30-When he reached sixty, he(regretted-resigned-rejected-retired)and stopped working.





## ✓ 7-Definitions:-

1-	average	: The amount you get by adding several quantities together and then dividing them by the number of quantities. معدل
2-	confused	: Unable to understand something clearly. مشوش / مرتبك
3-	insist	: Demand that something should be done. يصر
4-	competition	: A situation in which people or organizations compete with each other منافسة - مسابقة
5-	midday	: Twelve o'clock in the middle of the day. وسط النهار
6-	poetry	: Poems in general. شعر
7	old-fashioned	: Not modern and not fashionable any more. أفكار - موضة قديمة
8-	routine	: The usual way in which you do things روتين
9-	secretary	: Someone whose job is to type letters , arrange meetings , answer telephone calls , etc. in an office سكرتير / سكرتيرة
10	publisher	: A person or company that produces books , magazines, etc. and makes them available for people to buy. ناشر
11	attachment	: Something you attach to / send with an- email ارفاق مع
12	believer	: Someone who believes that a particular idea or thing is very good. مؤمن بـ
13	collection	: A set of similar things that you keep together. مجموعة من
14	custom	: Something that people do in a society because it is traditional. "conventional". عرف - عادات
15	disabled	: Unable to use a part of the body in the way that most people do . المعاقين
16	district	: An area of a country, city, etc. حي - منطقة
17	establish	: To achieve or give someone a respected position in a society or in an organization يرسخ - يوطد
18	law	: The system or rules that people in a country or a place must obey قانون
19	pioneer	: One of the first people to do something that other people will continue to develop رائد في مجال معين
20	style	: A way of doing something that is typical of a particular person , group or period. أسلوب

## ✓ 8- Phrases, Expressions and Idioms :

won the second prize	كسب الجائزة الثانية
as well as being	بالإضافة إلى كونه
an expert on arab culture	خبير في الثقافة العربية
graduated in law	تخرج في القانون
as a diplomat	كدبلوماسي
experiences he later used	خبرات حياتية استخدمها فيما بعد
at the same time	في نفس الوقت
established him as	رسخته لـ - وضعته في مكانه
disabled people	المعاقون
a collection of short stories	مجموعة من القصص القصيرة
was made into a film	حول - أنتج ك فيلم
developed a new style	طور أسلوب جديد





a very strong believer in the power of education	يؤمن بشدة في قوة التعليم
is still thought of as fixed routine	ما زال يعتقد فيه انه روتين ثابت لا يتغير
look old fashioned	تبدو موضحة قديمة
work for a publisher	يعمل مع ناشر
sound busy	يبدو مشغولا
a block of flats	عمارة
have a routine	لديه روتين - نظام
a ten-minute break	راحة لمدة 10 دقائق
win a prize in a competition	يفوز بجائزة في مسابقة
write in a very simple style	يكتب بأسلوب بسيط
look old-fashioned	يبدو موضحة قديمة
an email with an attachment	ملف مرفق
enter a competition	يدخل مسابقة

### ✓ 9-Language Notes:

1-	*win:won won	:	يكسب ، يفوز بـ ( مباراة - كاس - مسابقة - ميدالية ..... ) She won the gold medal.
	*gain:gained gained	:	يكتسب ( معلومات - خبرة - معرفة - شئ معنوي ) He gained a lot of love.
	*beat:beat beaten	:	يكسب - يهزم ( شخص او فريق ) I beat Osama at chess yesterday
	*earn:earned earned	:	كسب ( مال - نفود - قوته ..... ) They work hard to earn their living.
2-	habit :	:	عادة (فردية) something done regularly by a single person E.g. He has an annoying <u>habit</u> of biting his nails.
	custom :	:	عادة اجتماعية - something done by a whole society - e.g. Our <u>custom</u> is to give presents on birthdays.
	tradition :	:	تقاليد - the passing down of practices - It is a <u>tradition</u> that women get married in long white dresses.
	customs	:	الجمارك / التقاليد Every country has its customs.
	costumes	:	ملابس للتمثيل أو لزم من معين Actors often wear special costumes.
	customary	:	تقليدي / عرفي Customary practices govern our customs.
3-	experience:	:	تجربة في الحياة ( او موقف او مغامرة وهنا تعد ) - e.g. Seeing the criminal was quite an <u>experience</u> . وقد تأتي بمعنى خبرة في مجال العمل ( وهنا لا تعد ) - e.g. If you want this job, you have to have <u>experience</u> .
	experiment (n)	:	تجربة في المعمل - e.g. Professor Zewail does all his <u>experiments</u> in his laboratory.
4-	respect (v)	:	يحترم
	respectful (adj)	:	محترم للآخرين ❖ You show politeness or <b>respect</b> to someone.
	respectable (adj)	:	❖ You have apprecvated /good behavior or reputation and that you are worthy of <b>respect</b> . ❖ Example : He came from a perfectly <u>respectable middle</u> -class family. محترم لأخلاقه الحسنة و مكانته الاجتماعية





	respected (adj)	admired by many people for your qualities or achievements ❖ He is very well respected in the business world محترم لعلمة وتفوقة خارج البلد أو البيت
5-	abroad:	- Nader has lived abroad for ten years.
	aboard:	على متن (سفينة - قطار - طائرة - باص) - The flight attendant welcomed us aboard (the plane).
	on board:	على متن ( سفينة - قطار - طائرة - باص ) All the passengers were safely on board.
	broad	واسع ، عريض She has broad shoulders.
6-	be proud of + اسم:	فخور بـ - We are proud of our past .
	be proud to + مصدر	فخور ان - He is proud to belong to such a family.
7-	graduate from	يتخرج من "اسم جامعة" - He graduated from Assiut University.
	graduate in	يتخرج في علم من العلوم - My brother graduated in law from Assiut University.
	a graduate of graduates of	خريج من My sister is a graduate of Cairo University.
	graduate as	يتخرج كـ She graduated as a doctor in 2011.
	graduate with	يتخرج ومعة She graduated with an art degree in 2012.
8-	affect (v)	يؤثر على : have an effect on - Her friend's death affected her badly
	effect (n)	تأثير ( نستخدم معها حرف الجر on ) - Her friend's death had a bad effect on her.
9-	award (v) (n)	: - After graduation he was awarded a scholarship to do research. يمنح / منحة / جائزة رسمية
	reward	يكافئ - مكافأة ( مقابل سلوك حسن أو مجهود ) - He always believed that the company would reward him for his efforts
10	work	عمل / مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد) Mona has got a lot of work to do.
	work as	يعمل كـ He works as a teacher.
	work for	يعمل لدى He works for a kind employer.
	work in	يعمل في He works in Giza branch.
	work on	يحسن / يطور He works on a new project.
	job	وظيفة / مهنة (اسم يعد) My job is a doctor.
	career	مهنة الحياة العملية للفرد He started his career as a lawyer.
	profession	مهنة تحتاج الى مؤهلات Looking after patients is a profession
11	attached to = connected to	موصول بـ The statue was attached to a concrete base. متصل بـ (شئ مادي) Connect the device to the power supply.
	attach with /connected with related to	مرتبط بـ This grammar is connected with (If Clauses). له علاقة بـ "معنوى" Tourism is related to the national income.





12	writer	Someone who writes stories or books.	كاتب
	novelist	Someone who writes novels .	روائي
	playwright	Someone who writes plays.	كاتب مسرحي
	poet	Someone who writes poems.	شاعر

### 13)....as well as + v-ing / noun بالإضافة إلى

As well as writing short stories, he worked as a diplomat.

As well as chess, he plays football.

\*\* Subject + verb + as well as + verb

She plays as well as writes the piano.

\*\* Subject + as well as + subject + verb (The verb must be conjugated according to the first subject).

\* عند الربط بين فاعلين مختلفين، فإن فعل الجملة يتبع الفاعل الذي يسبقها من حيث المفرد و الجمع .

She as well as her friends, is clever. Her friends as well as she, are clever.

\*\* ...as (adjective) as

Mohamed is as clever as Ahmed.

\*\* As soon as + past perfect + past simple

As soon as they had had their dinner, they went for a walk.

\*\* As far as

As far as I am concerned, you are lazy.

\*\* As long as

As long as I make all efforts, I will achieve my goals.

بمجرد ان

كما افهم / كما اعتقد

طالما

### 14) Subject + insist on يصر على + noun or v + ing

My publisher insists on being sent everything as an e-mail attachment.

\*\* Subject + insist (that) another subject + infinitive ..... ان يصر ان

My publisher insists that I send everything as an attachment.

\*\* Subject + verb + insistent on + noun or v + ing مصمم على / مصر على

Mariem is insistent on watching the horrible film once again.

\*\* Subject + verb + insistent (that) + another subject + infinitive or should + inf.

Mariem is insistent that he take the day off.

Mariem is insistent that he should take the day off.

### 15) Compound adjectives with numbers : (a + number + singular noun)

With a ten-minute break for coffee.

(minute) استخدمت في المفرد ولم تستخدم جمع لأنها تستخدم هنا كصفة والصفة لا تجمع و تستخدم هذه الطريقة مع كل التعبيرات الزمنية و المسافات و الأطوال..... الخ وخاصة في وجود كلمة time

\*\* Possession :

1- We add (s) to : singular or irregular plural (man men)

2- We add (s) to : regular plural (boy boys)

1- They will complete the project in three (year-years-year's-years') time.

2- This (week-week's-weeks'-weeks) weather is very bad.

3- The train will arrive in two (minutes-minutes-minute-minute's) time.

4- They will do the job in a (year-years-year's-years') time.





والمعنى هنا ( الذي يفعل ) لأنها مبنى للمعلوم **16) who / which / that + Active = v + ing**

The man who runs along the shore, is very active.

The man running along the shore, is very active.

**\*\* who / which / that + (passive) = P.P.**

His first short story, which was **published** in 1925, established him as one of the great short story writers of the Arab world. التي نشرت في

His first short story, **published** in 1925, established him as one of the great short story writers of the Arab world. المنشورة في

### ✓ 10- Confusing words for choices :

1 - rule	قاعدة	role / part	دور
2 - retire	يتقاعد	resign	يستقيل
3 - retirement	التقاعد	resignation	الاستقالة
4 - reward	يكافئ - مكافأة	award	منحة - يمنح   جائزة رسمية
5 - reward	يعيد صياغة	a ward	عنبر في مستشفى
6 - biography	سيرة ذاتية يكتبها شخص آخر	autobiograpy	سيرة ذاتية يكتبها شخص عن نفسه
7 - present / gift	هدية بدون مقابل	prize	جائزة نقدية أو ميدالية
8 - spread	ينشر / ينتشر	prevail	يسود
9 - collection	مجموعة	collective	جامع
10 - routine	روتين يومي معتاد	red tape	روتين حكومي
11 - experience	خبرة - تجربة حياتية	experiment	تجربة معملية
12 - insist on	يصر	persist in	يثابر - يستمر
13 - respect	يحترم	aspect	جانب / مظهر - مجال
14 - politician	رجل سياسته	diplomat	دبلوماسي
15 - pour	يصب " يسكب "	poor	فقير
16 - graduate in	يتخرج في " فرع من العلوم "	graduate from	يتخرج من " كلية - جامعة "
17 - district	حي   منطقة	distract	مشتت الذهن

### 11 - Words and their antonyms :

old-fashioned	قديم / غير مسابر للموضة	modern / fashionable	حديث / مسابر للموضة
ability	قدرة	disability	اعاقة
successful	ناجح	unsuccessful	غير ناجح
beginning	بداية	ending	نهاية
fiction	الخيال	non-fiction	واقعي / الواقع
tolerant	متسامح	intolerant	غير متسامح
midday	منتصف النهار	midnight	منتصف الليل
obey	يطيع	disobey	يعصي / يخالف
lawful	قانوني / شرعي	unlawful	غير قانوني / غير شرعي
customary	تقليدي / معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
simple	بسيط	complicated	معقد
detest	يكره	love	يحب
support	يؤيد	oppose	يعارض
thoughtful	مراع لمشاعر الآخرين	thoughtless	غير مراع لمشاعر الآخرين





considerate	مراع لمشاعر الآخرين	inconsiderate	غير مراع لمشاعر الآخرين
familiar	مألوف	unfamiliar	غير مألوف
flexible	مرن	inflexible	غير مرن
experienced	ذو خبرة	inexperienced	بلا خبرة
available	متاح / متوفر	unavailable	غير متاح
modern	حديث	ancient / classic	قديم / تقليدي
start	يبدأ	end	ينتهي
belief	إيمان / اعتقاد	disbelief	تكذيب / عدم إيمان
respect	احترام	disrespect	عدم احترام / ازدراء
fixed	ثابت	movable	متحرك
attach	يلصق	detach	يفصل
establish	يؤسس / يرسخ	demolish	يهدم
carefully	بعناية / بحرص	carelessly	بأهمال

### \*\*\*Practice(2) Test Your Knowledge\*\*\*

\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- ⌘ 31-Are you.....in reading short stories?  
 (a) interested (b) happy with (c) fond of (d) able to
- ⌘ 32-The instructions are terribly..... could you help me with them, please?  
 a) confused b) confusion (c) confusing d) confuse
- ⌘ 33- As a good typist, she writes a/ an.....of eighty words a minute.  
 (a) average b) coverage c) moderate d) nearly
- ⌘ 34- Some companies .....on staff undergoing regular medical checks.  
 a) resist b) persist (c) collect (d) insist
- ⌘ 35-As far as I'm..... the issue is over and done with.  
 (a) concerned b) connected c) conceited d) concerted
- ⌘ 36-As well as.....his own business, Ramy worked in an investment company  
 a) ran (b) running c) runs d) run
- ⌘ 37-He is well-known..... a pioneer social historian.  
 a) such b) as c) like d) so
- ⌘ 38-The workers in our company take a twenty-minute break for lunch.....midday.  
 a) in b) on (c) at d) for
- ⌘ 39- The president..... a speech on TV last Friday.  
 a) did b) had c) took (d) made
- ⌘ 40-Architects.....a survey to carry out the project.  
 a) made b) had (c) did d) took
- ⌘ 41-He..... a big mistake when he sold his house.  
 (a) made b) did c) took d) had
- ⌘ 42 -She ..... well in school, all teachers like her.  
 a) makes b) has c) takes (d) does
- ⌘ 43-You have.....two mistakes in the test.  
 (a) made b. done c. taken d. given
- ⌘ 44-Ali.....a good job when he made that new table.  
 a. got b. baked c.made (d.did)
- ⌘ 45-I write from nine in the morning till three in the afternoon, with a.....break for coffee at midday.  
 (a. ten-minute b. ten-minute's c. ten minutes' d. tens of minute
- ⌘ 46-Through literature, I can explore unusual or different situations, thus.....my horizons.  
 a. narrowing b. publishing c. deepening (d. widening)



- ⌘ 47- Looking at the computer screen for a long time..... me a headache.  
a. gives b. does c. makes d. takes
- ⌘ 48- Egypt is an.....country.  
a. Arabic b. Arabian c. Arab d. Arabs
- ⌘ 49- I changed my novel six times. I..... the changes myself.  
a. took b. done c. made d. told
- ⌘ 50- As well as being an important writer, he was an expert..... Arab culture.  
a. as b. on c. by d. for
- ⌘ 51- Doing different jobs can help writers..... their stories  
a- with b- at c- for d- on
- ⌘ 52- He usually types his plans.....the computer.  
a- at b- with c- in d- onto
- ⌘ 53- She was an expert.....child development.  
a- of b- on c- to d- about
- ⌘ 54- Hana isn't happy..... Amr's proposal.  
a- with b- of c- at d- by
- ⌘ 55- She gave.....her job and started writing poetry.  
a- off b- out c- up d- into
- ⌘ 56- I've always been a strong believer..... the power of education  
a- at b- with c- on d- in
- ⌘ 57- Nada likes her teacher and usually asks her.....advice.  
a- for b- from c- of d- on
- ⌘ 58- They'd ..... all the arrangements for the party  
a) done b) bought c) made d) paid
- ⌘ 59- He ..... an excellent job at the meeting last week.  
a) made b) did c) asked d) played
- ⌘ 60- Do you mind .....the washing-up this evening?  
a) buying b) making c) having d) doing
- ⌘ 61- A.....is one of the first people to do something.  
a- believer b- diplomat c- pioneer d- writer
- ⌘ 62- The writer had to pay for his new book as.....refused it.  
a- publishers b- polishers c- authors d- libraries
- ⌘ 63- If someone adopts a certain doctrine then he is a..... in it.  
a- belief b- thinker c- doubter d- believer
- ⌘ 64- The pictures or files sent with an e-mail are called.....  
a- attractions b- connections c- attachments d- websites
- ⌘ 65- Leila started her new job as a.....in a company.  
a- sailor b- secretary c- carpenter d- diver
- ⌘ 66- A..... is an area of a city or country.  
a- district b- continent c- block d- destruct
- ⌘ 67- A..... is the system of rules that people in a country must obey,  
a- custom b- routine c- habit d- law
- ⌘ 68- If something is..... it is not modern and not fashionable.  
a- stylish b- old-fashioned c- untraditional d- unconventional
- ⌘ 69- They live..... life, they do everything the usual way.  
a- routine b- modern c- spontaneous d- interesting
- ⌘ 70- A.....is a set of similar things that you keep together.  
a- combination b- connection c- collection d- composition
- ⌘ 71- A..... is something that people do in a society as it is traditional.  
a- style b- costume c- habit d- custom
- ⌘ 72- If someone is..... they are unable to use a part of the body.  
a- abled b- disabled c- fit d- suitable





- 73- Writing rhymed..... is different from writing the homework.  
a-poetry b-poet c-article d-essay
- 74-A..... is someone who produces books, newspapers or magazines.  
a) politician b) writer c) scientist d) publisher
- 75-A..... is a way of writing that is typical of a person or group.  
a) Style b) Method c) Type d) Device
- 76-A..... represents one country in another and works in an embassy.  
a) minister b) coach c) diplomat d) supervisor
- 77-..... are the behaviour and beliefs of a group of people.  
a) Battles b) Wars c) Laws d) Customs
- 78-To..... means to demand that something should be done.  
a) allow b) attach c) insist d) publish
- 79- Which is the richest..... of Alexandria?  
a) cottage b) cave c) city d) district
- 80-..... is poems in general, or the art of writing them.  
a- Story b- Novel c- Poverty d- Poetry
- 81- Early black and white photos show people in..... clothes  
a. modern b. old fashioned c. fashionable d- oily
- 82-The sun is at its strongest at.....  
a. midnight b. midday c- mediator d-media
- 83- I don't really have a..... during the holidays.  
a. red tape b. routine c. style d- router
- 84- My friend won a prize in a..... competition.  
a. poetry b. poem c. poet d- boot
- 85- I sent an e-mail with two..... They were photos of my friends.  
a. fabrications b. attachments c. paramedics d. tournaments
- 86-The author's books are very successful, so I think that he will easily find  
a..... for his next book.  
a. publisher b. butcher c. banner d. prier
- 87-..... means unable to understand something clearly.  
a. Average b. Confused c. Insist d. Amused
- 88- A usual way in which you do things is called.....  
a. red tape b. traditions c. poetry d. routine
- 89-..... is twelve o'clock in the middle of the day.  
a. Midyear b. Midterm c. Midday d. Midnight
- 90-..... means not modern and not fashionable any more.  
a. Stylish b. Old fashioned c. Fashionable d. Modern
- 91-I sent a photo as an email..... with my application form.  
a-attachment b- detachment c- replacement d -development
- 92 Young writers find it difficult to have a/an..... for their stories.  
a-publisher b- writer c- reader d -author
- 93-Young people like to wear..... clothes to follow the latest fashion.  
a -old-fashioned b- old c- unfashionable d-fashionable
- 94- My mother has a..... that children learn best by playing games.  
a -relieve b- believe c- belief d -relief
- 95.A person who can't use part of his/her body is.....  
a-disabled b- unable c- enabled d -able
96. Yahia Haqqi qualified in..... and worked for a short time as a lawyer.  
a -rule b- rules c -laws d -law
- 97.Yahia Haqqi was one of the..... of modern Egyptian literature.  
a -pioneers b- pioneering c -beginners d -beginning



- ✂ 98. Yahia Haqqi's first novel.....him as one of the great short story writers of the Arab world,  
a -refreshed      b- published      c -established      d -furnished
- ✂ 99. Yahia Haqqi wrote a .....of short stories about the poor and the disabled.  
a -reflection      b- collection      c -selection      d -correction
- ✂ 100. The novelist.....an important prize for his last novel.  
a. won      b. gained      c. beat      d. earned
- ✂ 101. "The Postman" was..... into a successful film.  
a spread      b. done      c written      d made
- ✂ 102 My friend tried to make me change my mind but I.....on my opinion.  
a resisted      b. insisted      c persisted      d consisted
- ✂ 103. Yahia Haqqi wrote about Arab society and.....  
a cats      b. casts      c costumes      d customs
- ✂ 104. Ministry of education plans for..... education.  
a developing      b. enveloping      c deleting      d delaying
- ✂ 105. Scientists have a great .....on our life.  
a affect      b. affective      c effect      d effective

## ✓ 12- Prepositions :

pay back	يرجع - يسدد ما عليه	get up	يستيقظ
forms of	اشكال من	on computer	على الكمبيوتر
born in + date	ولد في (التاريخ فقط)	ask about	يستفسر
born on + date in detail	ولد في (التاريخ بالتفصيل)	expert on	خبير في
born into + family	ولد (نوع الاسرة)	believe in	يؤمن بـ
graduate in	يتخرج في علم من العلوم	cut down	يقطع
graduate from	" يتخرج من " اسم جامعة	a collection of	مجموعة من
a graduate of	خريج من	give up	يقنع / يتخلى عن
type onto the computer	ينسخ على الكمبيوتر	style of writing	اسلوب من الكتابة
publish in	ينشر في	competition for	مسابقة لـ
was made into	حول الي	write for	يكتب لـ
interested in	مهتم بـ	full of	ممتلئ
have lunch at midday	يتناول الغداء في منتصف النهار	think of / about	يفكر في
an average of	متوسط	put up	يثبت
happy with	سعيد بـ	be made/turned/ converted into a film	حولت الى فيلم
ask for	يطلب		
work for a publisher	يعمل لدار نشر	used to write	معتاد ان
thank for	يشكر على	insist on	يصر على
walk through	يجوب الشوارع	look forward to+v.ing	يتطلع
depend on	يعتمد على	divide into	يقسم إلى
fall between - and	يقع ( فترة زمنية )	decide to + v. inf	يقرر
let off	يطلق	decide on +non	يقرر
connect to	يوصل بـ	take part in	يشارك في
sweep away	يكتسح بعيد	hang on	يلتصق على
sail to	يبحر إلى	fall off	يسقط من على الحصان / عجلة
differ from	يختلف عن	go on	يستمر
remind sb of	يذكر بـ	come from	يأتي من ( مكان )





### \*\*\*Practice(3):(Test Your Prepositions)\*\*\*

\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

H.W

- 106-I'm used to having a break(for-to-on-with)coffee at 5 o'clock every day.  
 107-Mr. Sami graduated (on-of-at-in)law ; he wants to be a lawyer.  
 108-One(out-of-by-into)his stories, The Postman, was made into a film.  
 109-He graduated(on-in-at-with)law and worked for a short time as a lawyer.  
 110-Haqqi died in 1992, but is still thought(in-at-on-of)as the father of the modern short story and the novel in Egypt.  
 111-As well as being an important writer, he was an exper(of-with-on-by)Arabic culture.  
 112-Most of Yehia Haqqi's novels were made(to-into-from-with)films.  
 113-Some of Agatha's books are based(in-at-on-of)her travels abroad.  
 114-As children, they always used to compete(by-with-to-in)each other.  
 115-I have a ten-minute break for coffee (for-at-with-in) midday.  
 116-Haqqi died in 1992, but is still thought(in-at-on-of)as the father of the modern short story and the novel in Egypt.  
 117- Then I give it to two or three good friends and ask them (about-for-of-to) their opinions.  
 118-Yehia Haqqi was one(of-from-for-off)the pioneers of modern Egyptian literature.  
 119-Haqqi was also interested (at-with-of-in) the Arabic language.  
 120-He developed a new style (on-to-of-with) writing which is respected today.  
 121-Haqqi died (at-on-out-in) 1992, but is still thought of as the father of the modern short story and the novel in Egypt.  
 122-I 've written stories and poems for (as well as-as far as-as soon as-as long as) I can remember.  
 123-When I was at university, I wrote short stories (at-on-for-in) a student magazine.  
 124-My head was always full (with-of-on-at) ideas.  
 125-I haven't written any short stories (for-since-from-after) over twenty years.  
 126-When I'm happy with what I've written, my secretary types it(into-out-down-onto) the computer.  
 127-My last novel was changed six times before I was happy(by-for-with-from)it.

### ✓13-Add to your knowledge :

#### \*\*Do or make\*\*

- ♣ 1-We usually use **make** to talk about producing, a reaction, plans, decisions, speaking, sounds, creating or building something new:  
 - The computer **made** a noise. - My uncle is **making** a new table.  
 - He's going to **make** a speech.  
 ♣ 2-We usually use **do** to talk about work, a task, job or activities:  
 -I always **do** my homework. - She **did** well in the exam.  
 -We **did** a class survey today.

Do		Make	
do operation on	يجرى عملية جراحية على	make a decision	يتخذ قرار
do duties	يؤدي واجبات	make sense	له معنى
do a job or work	يقوم بوظيفة أو عمل	make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
do something	يفعل شيء - أفعّل شيء	make a suggestion	يقدم اقتراح



do cooking	يطهو	make a promise	يوعد
do exercise	يؤدي تمرين	make an effort	يقوم بجهد
do sport	يمارس رياضة	make a choice	يختار
do research on/into	يقوم ببحث في أو على	make money	يتربح
do a report	يعد تقريراً	make time	يحدد وقت
do shopping	يتسوق	make friends	يكون أصدقاء
do repairs	يقوم بإصلاحات	make a complaint	يشكو
do post-graduate studies	يقوم بدراسات عليا	make the bed	يرتب الفراش
do favour	يصنع معروف	make parts	يصنع أجزاء
do homework	يعمل الواجب	make a difference	يحدث اختلاف
do the house work	يؤدي الأعمال المنزلية	make a change	يحدث تغييراً
do business	يعقد صفقة	make fun of	يسخر من
do one's best	يبذل أقصى جهد	make human cells	يصنع خلايا بشرية
do better	يتحسن	make contributions	يقدم أسهامات
do without	يستغنى عن	make an appointment	يحدد موعد

### \*\*\*Practice(4):(do or make)\*\*\*

\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- \*128-The house was (made-done-spent-caught) of bricks.
- \*129-Wine is (made-done-spent-caught) from grapes.
- \*130-The watches were (made-done-spent-caught) in Switzerland.
- 131-Have you (made-done-spent-caught) your homework?
- \*132-I have guests visiting tonight so I should start(making-doing-catching-spending) the housework now.
- \*133-I wouldn't like to (make-spend-catch-do) that job.
- \*134-Hurry up! I've got things to (make-spend-catch-do)!
- \*135-Don't just stand there – (make-spend-catch-do) something!
- \*136-Is there anything I can (make-spend-catch-do) to help you?
- \*137-His wedding ring is (made-done-spent-caught) of gold.

## B3 - Language Focus:

### Past Tenses:

#### 1-PAST SIMPLE TENSE

**1) Form:** التصريف الثاني للفاعل  
يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفاعل و هو بأضافة :  
1-"d" للتصريف الأول للفاعل مثل:

arrive	→	arrived	close	→	closed
					2- "ed" للتصريف الأول للفاعل مثل:
reach	→	reached	work	→	worked
					3 -تحويل ال "y" اذا سبقة حرف ساكن الى ied مثل :
deny	→	denied	try	→	tried
					4- حفظ الأفعال الغير منتظمة في تصريفها مثل :
cut	→	cut	put	→	put
catch	→	caught	give	→	given





### A) The Active Voice: في المبني للمعلوم

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
Verb+d /ed /ied / irregular He worked She slept	Subject + didn't +infinitive He did not work (didn't work) She did not sleep (didn't sleep)	Did +subject +infinitive? Did he work? Did she sleep?

### B) The Passive Voice: في المبني للمجهول

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
Subject +was / were + P.P. He paid the bill. The bill was paid by him	Subject+was/were+not+ P.P. He didn't pay the bill. The bill wasn't paid .	Was/Were +subject +P.P? Did he pay the bill? Was the bill paid by him?

### 2) Usages:

- \*1) - *An action that started and finished in the past* . حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي .  
eg : He visited London in 2005 .
- \*2) - *Past situations or habits* التعبير عن عادة في الماضي  
eg : when I was a boy , I played football everyday .  
when I was a boy , I used to play football .
- \*3) - *Repeated action in the past* حدث متكرر في الماضي  
eg : She cooked lunch every day last week .
- \*4) - *Actions actually happened in the past :*  
للتعبير عن احداث قد حدثت في الماضي بطبيعتها دون الحاجة لذكر الوقت المحدد لوقوع الحدث :  
e.g. When were you graduated from Cairo university?  
e.g. She was born in a poor district in Alexandria.
- \*5) - *For actions which happened immediately one after the other in the past.*  
للأحداث التي حدثت تباعا واحد تلو الآخر في الماضي دون فارق زمني:  
e.g. When his father died, he felt sad.  
e.g. When he got to the station, the train left.
- \*6) - *Unreal past :* الماضي الغير حقيقي وهو هام جدا لأننا نستخدمه مع :  
as if=as though كما لو كان /wish/if only/ It is time just now/'d rather / Suppose

### \*\*Examples : Open Book:

\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :\*\*\*

- ❑ 1-I (feel-felt-am feeling-will feel) a sudden pain just now.
- ❑ 2-It is high time we (leave-will leave-left-are leaving).
- ❑ 3-I wish I (am-were-is-are) Mo Salah.
- ❑ 4-Mariem wishes she (would-could-should-might) come to the wedding.
- ❑ 5-He behaves as if he (was-were-is-has been) a millionaire.
- ❑ 6-Your parents wish you (couldn't-wouldn't-shouldn't-might not) smoke.
- ❑ 7-She treats me as though she (was-were-had been-has been) a queen.
- ❑ 8-If only the weather (were-had been-has been-is) fine now.
- ❑ 9-I'd rather you (went-goes-go-had gone) home earlier.
- ❑ 10-It's time we (went-goes-go-had gone) to bed.

- \*7) - *For past habits which are now finished.* اعتاد ان في الماضي ولم يعد يفعل  
وهنا يصح استخدام always,usually, sometimes  
e.g. I always did my homework at night but I no longer do.  
e.g. When I was young, I usually played football, but now I don't do that.  
e.g. When I was young I used to play football but now I don't do that.



\*8- In a narrative (a story or a report) **لِسرد أحداث قصة وقعت في الماضي**

e.g. Once, Ahmed found some money, then he went to the police.

\*9- With the past continuous : **مع الماضي المستمر**

e.g. While I was doing my homework, the telephone rang.

\*10- With different conjunctions: **مع أدوات الربط**

e.g. After they had finished the mission, they asked for a promotion.

\*11- The second "If":

e.g. If I had enough time, I would visit you.

\*12- Facts happened in the past: "history" **حقائق معلومة حدثت في الماضي**

e.g. The Pharaohs ruled in Egypt in the past.

### 3) Key-markers:

yesterday	أمس	once / one day	ذات مرة
last , week , month , year, Friday	الماضي	When I was.....	عندما كنت في
ages ago	من عصور	two days/ a long time ago...	وقت طويل مضى
ago	مضت	in 2004	في عام 2004
in ancient times	في العصور القديمة	in the past	في الماضي
in old times		the other day	اليوم المنقضي
in the old days	في العصور القديمة	from.....to.....	من.....الى....
the previous day/ week /year	السابق	then	ثم
once upon a time	كان ياما كان	how long ago	متني
formerly	سابقا	in the middle ages	في العصور الوسطي

### 4) Synopsis: الخلاصة

1) "could + infinitive" and "would+infinitive" could be used to express past simple.

يمكن ان تستخدم لتعبر عن الماضي البسيط :

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
Subject+could/would + inf.	Subject+couldn't/wouldn't + inf.	Could/Would+subject+infinitive

e.g As soon as I'd finished one story, I'd start / started the next one.

2) Past habits: A) Subject used to + infinitive **أعتاد ان في الماضي ولم يعد يفعل:**

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
Subject + used to + inf. =	Subject +didn't use to + inf.	Did subject use to + inf. ?
It was my habit to +inf. =	Subject +never used to + inf.	
Subject+no longer+"present simple .	It wasn't my habit to + inf.	Was it your habit to + inf. ?

e.g. When he was young, he used to play football .

e.g. When he was young, he didn't use to play football.

e.g. When he was young, he never used to play football.

e.g. Did he use to play football when he was young?

e.g. When he was young, it was his habit to play football.

e.g. He no longer plays football.

B) Present habits: **عادات في الحاضر (ما زال يفعل)**

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
Subject+am/is/are/get +used to or accustomed to+v.ing	Subject+am/is/are+not+used to+v.ing	Am/Is/Are+subject+used to+v.ing?
He is used to living in Cairo	He isn't used to living in Cairo	Is he used to living in Cairo?





## C) use used used

(يستخدم أو يستعمل) في (مبنى للمجهول)

**\*\*Subject+is /are +used to +infinitive**

**\*\*Subject+is / are+used for+v.ing**

e.g. A fork is used to eat with.

e.g. A fork is used for eating.

**3) The past simple can be used with "for" to express biography.**

يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع "for" للتعبير عن سيرة ذاتية لشخص أو أحداث استمرت لفترة و انتهت.

eg : Ali went to the faculty of law for three years and left without a degree.

**4) We use past simple and not "used to" with exact days, times, number or period of times.**

نستخدم الماضي البسيط مع الايام و الاوقات و عدد المرات.

eg : My father sent me three letters last month.

**5) Question Tag : We use did/didn't + pronoun?**

eg: She used to buy fashionable dresses, didn't she?

**6) Subject +used to+ inf.**

اعتاد ان في الماضي ولم يعد يفعل

Subject + am/is/are used to +v.ing (تعبير عن عادة تحدث في الوقت الحاضر)

e.g. When he was young, he used to play tennis but now he doesn't do that.

e.g. He is used to playing tennis.

## PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE الماضي المستمر

### 1) Form: التكوين

- I / He / She/It/singular + was + v.ing

- We / They / You/plural + were +v.ing

### A) The Active Voice: في المبني للمعلوم

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I /He/ She/It/singular + was + v.ing	I /He/ She/It/singular + was +not+ v.ing	Was + I /He/ She/It/singular + v.ing ?
We/They/You/plural + were +v.ing	We/They/You/plural + were+not+v.ing	Were + We/They/You/plural +v.ing ?

She was watching a film when I arrived. She wasn't watching a film when I arrived.

Was she watching a film when I arrived?

### B) The Passive Voice: في المبني للمجهول

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
Subject+was/were+being+P.P He was reading Hamlet.	Subject+was/were+not being+P.P Hamlet was not being read.	Was/Were+Subject+being+P.P Was Hamlet being read?

e.g Active: معلوم

Yesterday evening, he was working on a new project.

Yesterday evening, he wasn't working on a new project.

Yesterday evening, was he working on a new project?

e.g. Passive: مجهول

Yesterday evening, a new project was being worked on.

Yesterday evening, a new project wasn't being worked on.

Yesterday evening, was a new project being worked on?

### 2) Usage:

**1 - It expresses something in progress when an action took place.**

يعبر عن حدث كان مستمراً في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر .

e.g.: While I was taking a bath, my mother came.

**2 - Past actions happening at the same time.**

حدثين مختلفين كانا يحدثان في نفس الوقت في الماضي .



e.g.: While I was studying my lessons, my sister was listening to music.

### 3- For an action which was in progress at a stated time in the past.

حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي .

e.g. He was watching a new film at 7 o'clock yesterday evening.

### 4- We do not use the past continuous with verbs that describe : sense أفعال الحواس, possession افعال الملكية, mental activity افعال التفكير, emotional verbs افعال العاطفة, communication افعال التواصل, and (verb to be).

remain	يبقى / يظل	seem	يبدو	mean	يعني / يقصد
cost	يتكلف	sound	يبدو	think	يعتقد / يظن
intend	ينوي	appear	يبدو	believe	يعتقد / يظن
include	يشمل / يتضمن	feel	يشعر / يحس	suppose	يعتقد / يظن
owe to	يدين الى	smell	ذو رائحة	guess	يخمن
involve	يتضمن	taste	ذو مذاق	imagine	يتخيل
hear	يسمع	belong to	ينتمي الى	doubt	يشك ان
see	يرى	possess	يمتلك	suspect	يشك ان
look	يبدو	own	يمتلك	consider	يعتبر
love / like	يحب	promise	يوعد	regard	يعتبر
hate / dislike	يكره	surprise	يدهش	forget	ينسى
desire	يرغب في	deny	ينكر	remember	يتذكر
prefer	يفضل	admit	يعترف	recognize	يتعرف على
need	يحتاج	disagree	يرفض	realize	يدرك
want	يريد	agree	يوافق	know	يعرف

e.g. While I (be-was-was being-been) in London, I met an old friend.

e.g. She (wasn't wanting-didn't want-hadn't wanted-hasn't wanted) to deliver the reports to the committee yesterday morning.

#### Note:

بعض هذه الافعال قد يستخدم بمعاني اخرى وفي هذه الحالة يصح استخدامها في الـ (past continuous):

e.g. I was seeing my boss all yesterday morning for important documents.

was seeing = was meeting. يقابل

e.g. While I was finishing one story I was thinking of the next one.

I was thinking كنت افكر في

e.g. He was having his lunch when his father called him.

He was having = He was taking يأخذ

### 5- To show or clarify the cause of an action

ليبيان او توضيح سبب حدوث شئ

past simple —→ because —→ past continuous ماضى مستمر

e.g. I didn't answer the phone because I was praying.

e.g. I couldn't watch the match because I was doing my homework.

### 3) Key markers:

While, as, just as, when,

all morning / evening / afternoon yesterday,

last night / yesterday morning / evening / afternoon / at 5 o'clock / at 4 o'clock

throughout or all last night / week / month / year

at this time yesterday / last night / week / month / year

from .....to....yesterday/ last night / week / month / year





## Note the following:

- 1 - While } ماضي مستمر  
As } ماضي بسيط  
Just as }  
When }  
Past simple (while / as / just as / when) Past continuous  
ماضي بسيط ماضي مستمر

e.g. While I was walking, I met an old friend.

e.g. I met an old friend while I was walking.

- 2 - While } ماضي مستمر  
As } ماضي مستمر  
Just as } ماضي مستمر  
When } ماضي مستمر  
Past continuous (while / as / just as / when) Past continuous  
ماضي مستمر ماضي مستمر  
Two actions were happening at the same time.

e.g. While the silly brother was playing the piano, his silly sister was singing a silly song.

e.g. His silly sister was singing a silly song while the silly brother was playing the piano.

- 3 - When } ماضي بسيط  
past simple ماضي مستمر  
past continuous ماضي بسيط

When } ماضي مستمر  
past continuous ماضي بسيط

When I arrived, she was writing a letter.

She heard a loud voice when she was eating her dinner.

- 4 - During + noun Or (noun phrase) } ماضي بسيط  
Past simple ماضي بسيط

e.g.: During my walk, I met an old friend .

- 5 - While + v, ing , past simple. ماضي بسيط

e.g. : While watching a play , my father arrived .

- 6 - We use "on" to replace "when" if we omit the subject.

نستخدم on لتحل محل when إذا حذفنا الفاعل

e.g.: When he saw her, he felt sad

On seeing her, he felt sad.

- 7 - Yesterday at 5 o'clock, I was working on a new project.

## 4) Synopsis: الخلاصة

- 1) We cannot use ( While + v.ing) if we have different subject

لا يمكن استخدام (While + v.ing) في جملة اذا كان الفاعل الاول غير الثاني ولا بد ان يكون نفس الفاعل في الجملتين :

e.g. While I was having my dinner, the bell rang.

**We cannot say :** While having my dinner, the bell rang.

- 2) We cannot use (Verb to be) as a main verb in past continuous but we use it in past simple.

e.g. While I was in London, I attended the conference.

e.g. While she was at school, the teacher rewarded her.



### ***\*Test Yourself:***

***Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :\****

- 11-I (used to write-am used to writing-write-am writing) stories very quickly. It was my habit.
- 12-I (used to write-wrote-write-am writing)wrote a short story once . It was a specific situation .
- 13-I(uses to reading-used to reading-used to read-had read)at least one book a week, but now I don't read so many.
- 14-I(uses to enjoy-am used to enjoy-used to enjoy-used to enjoying)going to the cinema five years ago.
- 15-When I was seven, I(had written-wrote-writes-written)a poem which won a prize.
- 16-This book (wrote- was written- is writing -is written) by a famous writer.
- 17-(I changed my novel-My novel was changed-My novel changed-I was changed my novel) six times. Someone changed it for me.
- 18-(I changed my novel-My novel was changed-My novel changed-I was changed my novel) six times. I did it by myself.
- 19-Amira (reads-is reading-was reading-am reading) all day yesterday.
- 20-While I(was reading- reading- read- am reading)the paper , the light went out suddenly
- 21-I (have watched-watched-watch-was watching)TV while my brother was doing his homework.
- 22-(Did-Were-Have-Are) you eating when I phoned you last night?
- 23-Just as they (were holding- held-are holding- holding) a meeting, he fainted.
- 24-While(was going-going-went-am going)out for a walk , I witnessed a serious accident.
- 25-She (cooks-cook - has cooked- was cooking) from 2 to 4 yesterday afternoon.
- 26-What(are you doing-have you done-were you doing-do you do)when I was out?
- 27-The pupils ( make -were making- making- are making) a lot of noise when the teacher entered the class.
- 28-I (saw-see-seen-seeing) a murder while I was waiting for the school bus.
- 29-We (are having-were having-had- have had) lunch when our neighbour called.
- 30-While she was cooking dinner , her daughter (playing-played-is playing-was playing) the piano.
- 31-I(was making-made-making-make) a mistake just as I was taking my driving test.
- 32-When he was driving home , he(crashed-was crashing-is crashing-had crashed) into another car.
- 33-He fell off the ladder while (was painting-painted-is painting-painting) his room.
- 34-They were digging the land when they (were discovering-discovered-had discovered- discover) a treasure.
- 35-This parcel was delivered while I(read-was reading-have reading-had read)the newspaper.
- 36-I saw an accident while I(coming-was coming-am coming-had come)to school today.
- 37-While I (finished- was finishing -have finished- had finished) one story , I was thinking of the next one.
- 38-(The past simple -The present perfect -The past continuous-The past perfect) is used for actions which happened for a length of time in the past.
- 39-What ( had you doing-were you doing-were you done-are you doing) at six o'clock yesterday evening?
- 40-They're (making-doing-catching- spending) plans for the weekend.





## The Past Perfect Tense

**1) Form:** التكوين **Subject + had + P.P.**

**A) The Active Voice:** في المبني للمعلوم

<u>Affirmative</u>	<u>Negative</u>	<u>Interrogative</u>
Subject + had + P.P.	Subject + had + not + P.P.	Had + subject + P.P.?

e.g. By 5 o'clock yesterday, he had studied the novel.

By 5 o'clock yesterday, he hadn't studied the novel.

By 5 o'clock yesterday, had he studied the novel?.

**B) The Passive Voice:** في المبني للمجهول

<u>Affirmative</u>	<u>Negative</u>	<u>Interrogative</u>
Subject had been + P.P.	Subject hadn't been + P.P.	Had + subject + been + P.P.

e.g. By 5 o'clock yesterday, the novel had been studied.

By 5 o'clock yesterday, the novel hadn't been studied.

By 5 o'clock yesterday, had the novel been studied?.

### 2) Usage:

1- Two actions happened in the past one before another.

حدثين وقعا في الماضي, احدهما سبق الاخر, الحدث الذي حدث اولاً يوضع ماضى تام و الحدث حديثاً ماضى بسيط.

eg: After he had left the house, I found his coat.

2- For an action which finished in the past and whose result was visible in the past.

حدث انتهى في الماضي و كانت نتيجة واضحة في الماضي

eg: My son's room was untidy because his friends had scattered things every where.

3- For an action which finished before a stated time in the past stated.

(this time-before -by) للتعبير عن حدث تم قبل وقت محدد في الماضي وهنا يأتي مع

eg: By 5 o'clock yesterday, I had studied the novel.

### 3) Key-markers:

1- By the time

Before

When

past simple

ماضى بسيط

→

past perfect.

→

ماضى تام

Past perfect

ماضى تام

by the time

before

when

Past simple

ماضى بسيط

#### Examples:

By the time / Before / When I went home, I had met some friends.

I had met some friends before / by the time / when I went home.

\*\* Before + v.ing,

ماضى تام Past perfect

بدون فاعل Subject

Before going home, I had met some friends.

2- After

As soon as

When

The moment

Once

Past perfect

ماضى تام

→

Past simple

→

ماضى بسيط

Past Simple

ماضى بسيط

after

as soon as

when

the moment

once

Past perfect

ماضى تام



### Examples:

After/As soon as/When/The moment/Once I had done my homework, I visited my uncle.  
I visited my uncle after/as soon as/when/the moment/once I had done my homework.

- 3- **Past Simple** till until **past perfect**  
ماضي بسيط غالبا منفي ماضي تام
- I wasn't taken a permission until I had asked my boss for.  
She didn't buy a new dress until she had gone to many shops.  
He refused to lend me the money until I had written him a receipt.

- 4- **It wasn't until** Past perfect → that → past simple  
ماضي تام ماضي بسيط
- It was only when** Past perfect → that → past simple  
ماضي تام ماضي بسيط
- It was only when I had taken the day off that I travelled to Alexandria.  
It wasn't until she had visited us that we knew the truth.

- 5- **When** → **Past simple** → **past simple**  
e.g.: When I got to the cinema, the film started.  
هنا المعنى لا يوجد فيه فارق زمنى أى بدأ الفيلم لحظة وصولى .

- When** → **Past simple** → **past perfect**  
e.g.: When I got to the cinema, the film had started.  
بدأ الفيلم هو الحدث الأول ، بمعنى الفيلم بدأ قبل وصولى .

- When** → **Past perfect** → **past simple**  
e.g.: When I had got to the cinema, the film started.  
الحدث الأول وصولى إلى السينما ، أى وصلت الأول تم بدأ الفيلم .

- When + Subject + verb** → **on + v +ing**  
e.g.: On getting to the cinema, the film started.

- 6- **S. had** no sooner hardly scarcely + P. P. → Than When When Past simple
- No sooner** Hardly Scarcely had [ S. + P.P ] → Than When When → Past simple
- e.g.: He had no sooner gone home than he asked for dinner.  
No sooner had he gone home than he asked for dinner.

- 7- **Past simple** ← because Past continuous. ماضي مستمر  
Past perfect. ماضي تام  
Past perfect continuous+ ماضي تام مستمر { all for since } + period of time

### Examples:

She was very tired because she had cooked too much.  
She was very tired because she had been cooking for four hours.  
He was tired because he had run all the way home.  
He was tired because he had been running all the morning.  
I couldn't answer the phone because I was praying.  
She was tired because she had run all the way home.  
She was tired because she had been running for one hour.





8-we can use the past perfect with (already/just/never/yet)

يصح استخدام الماض التام مع (yet/never/just/already)

### Examples:

When we arrived, the film had already started.

He told me he had already done his homework.

She had just got home when I phoned her.

They had never come late before.

### 9- Very important:

في الحالات الآتية : Past perfect يستخدم الماضي التام

By + a past date + past perfect.

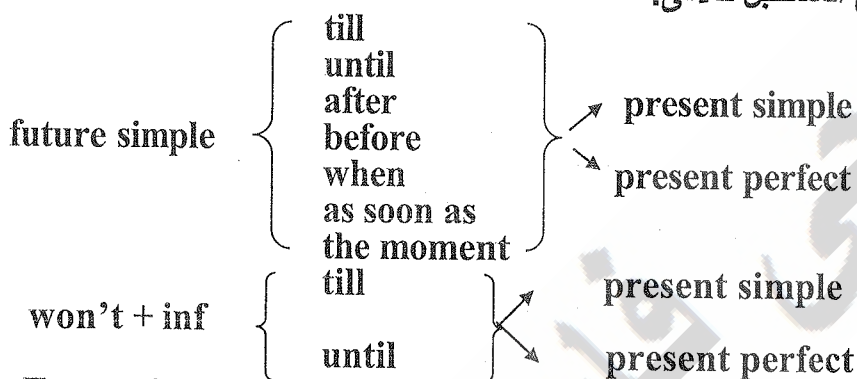
eg : By 2006, I had moved to a new flat.

Until + a past date, + past perfect

eg : Until 1919, The Egyptian woman had had no role in demonstrations.

Synopsis: very important

1- لاحظ استخدام الروابط الزمنية مع المستقبل كالاتي:



### Examples:

We will leave as soon as the boss arrives.

He won't confess until you promise to forgive him.

He will finish it before you leave.

They won't start eating until she arrives .

I'll call you as soon as he comes.

2-If we have more than two actions, the action that happened first must be in "past perfect" and the others past simple or continuous according to the meaning.

إذا وجد أكثر من حدثين في الجملة فيجب تحديد الحدث الذي حدث أولا و وضعه ماض تام و الآخرين اما الماضي البسيط او الماضي المستمر حسب المعنى و عادة مع (when/as soon as/after) في .

When	{	+ Past simple + Past simple + had + p.p.
After		
As soon as		
When	{	+ Past simple + had + p.p + Past simple.
After		
As soon as		

ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط + ماضي بسيط

ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط

و عادة مع Was sure / understood/ new/ noticed/ found out/ discovered/ realized

### Examples:

As soon as/When/After I returned home I realized that I had forgotten my keys.

I was buying a new shirt when I realized that my money had been stolen.

When/After/As soon as I got the news that my friend had won a gold cup, I congratulated him.



### 3- After = Before that.

ماضي بسيط { after  
past simple  
before that } ماضي تام past perfect

eg: President Sadat died in 1981, before that our army had crossed the Suez canal in 1973.

### 4- before = after that

ماضي تام { before  
past perfect } ماضي بسيط past simple  
after that

eg: Our army had crossed the Suez canal in 1973 after that President Sadat died in 1981.

### 5- V. + ing →

Past Simple

Because →

Past Continuous

→

Past Simple

ماضي مستمر

ماضي بسيط

eg: Because I was having a shower, I couldn't answer her call.

Having a shower, I couldn't answer her call.

Using the best roller, I painted two rooms in no time.

Because I was using the best roller, I painted two rooms in no time.

6- يستخدم الماضي التام بدلا من الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث استمر لفترة قبل وقوع حدث آخر و ذلك مع افعال الملكية و الحواس و التفكير و العاطفة و التواصل.

eg: We had had this old car for years before we sold it.

### 7- On

Immediately on

Immediately after

+ v. ing , Past Simple

ماضي بسيط

eg: When I had got to the station, the train left. So, I caught it.

On/Immediately on/Immediately after getting to the station, the train left. So, I caught it.

### 8- Only when

Not until

Only by

Not since

Only when

Only after

Past Perfect, did subject + inf.

↓ ماضي تام

(Past Simple in interrogate)

eg: Only when I had bought a new car, did I give her a lift.

### \*\*\*Practice(5):( Open Book Exercises:)\*\*\*

#### \*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- ⌘ 41-Do I need to (make-spend-catch-do) my hair? (do = brush or comb)
- ⌘ 42-He has (made-done-spent-caught) arrangements to finish work early
- ⌘ 43- He(insists-consists-resists-conducts) that he study literature instead of science.
- ⌘ 44-Have you (made-done-spent-caught) the dishes yet? (done = washed)
- ⌘ 45-She (made-done-spent-caught) a cup of tea.
- ⌘ 46-I'll (make-spend-catch-do) the kitchen if you (make-spend-catch-do) the dishes.
- ⌘ 47-He is well-trained in computer. He can (write-draw-point-type) 40 words a minute.
- ⌘ 48-Onions (make-spend-catch-do) your eyes water.
- ⌘ 49-I (made-done-spent-caught) a cake for her birthday.
- ⌘ 50-You (make-spend-catch-do) me happy.
- ⌘ 51-I really enjoyed this book, it is written in a very simple (fashion-style-system-standard).





- ⌘ 52—My sister loves clothes and buys very (fashion-old-fashioned-fashionable-fashionably) dresses.
- ⌘ 53—Haqqi came from a poor (location-district-outskirt-territory) اقليم \ مقاطعة of Cairo.
- ⌘ 54—The(establishment-statement-agreement-customary)of this charity was chiefly to assist orphans.
- ⌘ 55—There is a/an(massive-mass-masses-massively)increase in the types of writing that we see now.
- ⌘ 56—My friend keeps a rare (combination-collection-completion-attachment) of old coins.
- ⌘ 57—He was jailed for distributing (politics-politician-political-politicians)reports against the regime. الحكم - النظام
- ⌘ 58—The murderer hired a (lawyer-reporter-judge-witness) to speak for him at the court.
- ⌘ 59—When we got to the stadium, the match(had-has-have-had been) already begun.
- ⌘ 60—Fishermen (attract-combine-attach-attack)baits to their line to entice يغري \ يجذب the fish.
- ⌘ 61—He works (for-on-out-against) a well-known computer company.
- ⌘ 62—A (lawyer-journalist-politician-doctor) is someone who writes articles for newspapers.
- ⌘ 63—The archaeologists are(extracting-sweeping-drilling-excavating)for the remains from the Roman Age.
- ⌘ 64—Members of the parliament are(economists-traders-psychologists- politicians) They have jobs in politics.
- ⌘ 65—Their company(polishes-spreads-publishes-reveals)a wide selection of books.
- ⌘ 66—The company realized the(importance-loss-defects-drawbacks) of training its employees so it sent them to do courses.
- ⌘ 67—The new (base-law-rule-court) will be passed by parliament after the elections.
- ⌘ 68—They put me in a(confused-confuse-confusion-confusing) situation. It was too difficult for me to behave.
- ⌘ 69—We need some change. We got bored with this (static ساكن \ مستقر - remained - fixed- settled) routine.
- ⌘ 70—Old(fashion-fashioned-fashionable-fashions)people are not used to modern technology.
- ⌘ 71—I enjoyed this book. It is written in a very simple.....  
a-fashion      b-style      c- system      d standard
- ⌘ 72- Haqqi came from a poor..... of Cairo.  
a-location      b- destruct      c-district      d-outskirt
- ⌘ 73- In my grandfather's village, they still follow the same traditional.....  
a-customs      b-habits      c-routines      d-costumes
- ⌘ 74- Ali's cousin is.....and cannot walk very well.  
a-disable      b-unable      c-enabled      d-disabled
- ⌘ 75- My sister loves clothes and buys very.....dresses.  
a-fashion      b- old-fashioned      c-fashionable      d-fashionably
- ⌘ 76- My parents gave me a..... of modern short stories for my birthday.  
a-combination      b-collection      c-mixture      d-connection
- ⌘ 77- Yehia Haqqi was an important twentieth-century.....  
a-writer      b- diplomat      c-editor      d-journalist
- ⌘ 78- My mother has a.....that children learn best by playing games.  
a-believe      b-complain      c-refuse      d-belief
- ⌘ 79- Although Nawal has a.....she is very good at sports.  
a- disabled      b- disability      c- disadvantage      d- mistake
- ⌘ 80- I want to see my..... before I say anything.  
a-judge      b-partner      c-witness      d- lawyer



- ⌘ 81. When he had an idea, he..... a short story.  
a-was writing      b-had written      c-was written      d-wrote
- ⌘ 82. While I....at home, a man knocked on the door and asked for help,  
a-am      b-was being      c-was      d-had been
- ⌘ 83- I always..... breakfast before I went to school.  
a-eat      b-ate      c-eating      d-eaten
- ⌘ 84. While I was doing my homework, my sister.....my mother.  
a-helped      b-helping      c-had helped      d-was helping
- ⌘ 85- I..... in Alexandria a month ago.  
a-had been      b-was being      c-was      d-have been
- ⌘ 86- I .....a book when my friend arrived.  
a-was reading      b-read      c-had read      d-was read
- ⌘ 87. She.....London in 2010.  
a-has visited      b-was visiting      c-visits      d-visited
- ⌘ 88- I once..... the newspaper every day. Now I don't have the time.  
a- use to read      b- used to read      c-used to reading      d- am used to
- ⌘ 89- What..... when I called you? You sounded very busy.  
a-were you doing      b-did you do      c- had you done      d- are you doing
- ⌘ 90- While she..... her homework, my sister was listening to music.  
a-used to do      b-is doing      c- was doing      d- had done
- ⌘ 91. There is some.....whether the referee will give a penalty of not.  
a-confusion      b-confusing      c-confused      d-confuse
- ⌘ 92- I was rather.....by his question.  
a- confusing      b- amazing      c- boring      d- confused
- ⌘ 93. Leila retrains her..... skills to get the job with a multinational company  
a- secret      b- secretary      c- secretarial      d- secreting
- ⌘ 94. Haqqi..... a new style of writing which is respected today.  
a-expected      b-developed      c- played      d-directed
- ⌘ 95. He was a..... in modern Egyptian literature.  
a- pioneer      b- celebrated      c- pharmacist      d- influential
- ⌘ 96. Haqqi's works..... him as a great short story writer.  
a- generated      b- launched      c- constructed      d- established
- ⌘ 97. He was a strong..... in the power of books.  
a- publisher      b- producer      c- believer      d- sponsor
- ⌘ 98. He is still.....of as the father of modern short story in Egypt.  
a-thought      b- considered      c- regarded      d-published
- ⌘ 99. The time he had spent abroad gave him.... he used in his writing.  
a-experiments      b-experiences      c-books      d-jobs
- ⌘ 100. He won the first prize in a poetry.....  
a-race      b- struggle      c- competition      d- fight
- ⌘ 101- I didn't go to school until I ..... breakfast  
a have      b. had      c. have had      d. had had
- ⌘ 102- Having..... the visa, I booked a flight to Canada.  
a received      b. had received      c.to receive      d receiving
- ⌘ 103- As soon as I saw the accident, I .....the ambulance.  
a- phone      b. will phone      c.had phoned      d phoned
- ⌘ 104- I returned the book to the library when I.....it.  
a- will read      b. had read      c.was reading      d have read
- ⌘ 105-By dinner time, mother..... prepared all the dishes we like most. Food was really delicious.  
a has already      b. had already      c.hadn't already      d already has
- ⌘ 106- Adel.....in Tanta in 2002.  
a- is born      b.bore      c.was born      d had born





- ⌘ 107- I .....lunch when my close friend arrived, so I warmly asked him to share the meal with me.  
a- had                      b. am having                      c.was having                      d had had
- ⌘ 108- There are always economic crises..... wars.  
a while                      b.as                      c when                      d. during
- ⌘ 109- I .....till my friend arrives to go to the club together,  
a- left                      b.didn't leave                      c won't leave                      d. am leaving
- ⌘ 110- While.....for the school bus, I met one of my old friends.  
a.being waited                      b.am waiting                      c.was waiting                      d.waiting
- ⌘ 111-While Samir was very busy doing his homework, his sister.....to loud music; he wasn't able to concentrate.  
a.had listened                      b.was listening                      c.is listening                      d.listened
- ⌘ 112-Egypt qualified for the world football cup finals in Russia in 2018. It.....since 1990.  
a. hadn't qualified                      b.hasn't qualified                      c.didn't qualify                      d.won't qualify
- ⌘ 113- I no longer play tennis as I.....  
a. am used                      b.am used to                      c.used to                      d.used
- ⌘ 114- What.....at 7 pm yesterday?  
a.you were doing                      b.have you done                      c.were you doing                      d.did you do
- ⌘ 115-I realized that I.....a silly mistake in the exam when I returned home and checked my answer.  
a.made                      b. had made                      c.was making                      d.make

**\*\*\*Practice(5):( Previous Exams Egypt, Sudan and Azhar: )\*\*\***

**\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\***

- ⌘ 116-I borrowed my brother's watch while mine..... (1994)  
a. repaired                      b. is repaired                      c. has been repaired                      d.was being repaired
- ⌘ 117-Noha phoned me while the dinner..... (2015- دور اول)  
a. was cooking                      b. cooked                      c. cooks                      d.was being cooked
- ⌘ 118-Ahmed's car was hit by a driver who.....at mad speed. (2016- دور اول)  
a. was driving                      b. drive                      c. was driven                      d.drives
- ⌘ 119-While I was doing my homework, my sister.....my mother. (SB)  
a. was helping                      b. helped                      c. had helped                      d.helps
- ⌘ 120- I.....a book when my friend arrived. (SB)  
a. am reading                      b. was reading                      c. reading                      d.have read
- ⌘ 121- Tarek..... dinner at noon yesterday. (SB)  
a. has eaten                      b. was eaten                      c. eating                      d.was eating
- ⌘ 122- I get.....if I have nothing to do. (ازهر-2011)  
a) boring                      b) boar                      c) bored                      d)board
- ⌘ 123- When I get up, I start my daily.....at 6:00. (ازهر-2013)  
a) red tape                      b) routine                      c) custom                      d)tradition
- ⌘ 124- Although the ..... was stiff, we won the contract. (ازهر -2015)  
a) compilation مجموعة                      b)competition                      c)combination                      d)completion
- ⌘ 125- Great.....houses in Paris design expensive dresses. (ازهر-2012)  
a) fashionable                      b) fashion                      c) fashioned                      d) fashionably
- ⌘ 126- She doesn't have a daily..... (ازهر -2013)  
a) routine                      b) root                      c) red tape                      d) reddish
- ⌘ 127- I sent all photos as an e-mail..... (دور ثانی - 2017)  
a) attraction                      b) enclosure                      c) attachment                      d) attention
- ⌘ 128- She came second in an international..... (ازهر - 2017)  
a) tournament                      b) competition                      c) championship                      d) completion



- ✂ 129- It took me a long time.....this problem. (الدور الاول-2017)  
a) solving b) solve c) solves d) to solve
- ✂ 130-My sister is.....a research on animals. (الدور الاول-2017)  
a) doing b) taking c) making d) digging
- ✂ 131- No sooner..... the noise than we rushed to the spot. (دور أول-2014)  
a. had we heard b. we did hear c. we had heard d. did we hear
- ✂ 132- After the house..... painted, we furnished it. (دور ثانی-2014)  
a. had b.had been c. has been d. is
- ✂ 133. We arrived an hour late. The film.....an hour earlier. (أزهر -2015)  
a. was beginning b.had begun c. has begun d. begins
- ✂ 134. Before..... to bed, the baby had drunk all his milk. (أزهر-2012)  
a. to go b.went c. going d. being gone
- ✂ 135. After her father had..... she lived with her grandfather. (أزهر2012)  
a. dead b. died c. deadly d. death
- ✂ 136. By the time he was 12, my son ..... all the Holy Quran by heart. (أزهر -2011)  
a. had kept b. kept c. was keeping d. had been kept
- ✂ 137. By the time we.....we had been flying for six hours. (أزهر -2011)  
a. arrival b. had arrived c) arrived d. arriving
- ✂ 138. Mona didn't send the message to her father until she.....it (دور أول -2016)  
a. has been writing b. has written c. had written d. writing
- ✂ 139- My daily.....begins when my alarm clock goes off at 6.30. 2013  
a) routine b) custom c) red tape d) tradition
- ✂ 140- They have just received this photo as an e-mail..... 2012  
a) post b) attachment c) letter d) part
- ✂ 141-Early black and white photos show people in ..... clothes. 2015  
a) old-fashioned b) up-to-date c)modern d)most recent
- ✂ 142-.....cars are cheap nowadays. (السودان-2013)  
a) Use b) Using c) Misuse d) Used
- ✂ 143-A.....is a person or a company that publishes books, newspapers or magazines.  
a) polisher b) producer c) manufacturer d) publisher
- ✂ 144- Travelling by planes sometimes.....me a headache . (السودان-2016)  
a) makes b) gives c) cause d) does
- ✂ 145-Yehia Haqqi wrote in a new way and developed a new....in writing.(السودان -2014)  
a) stick b) style c) storm d) stunt
- ✂ 146. President Sadat died in 1981, before that our army.....the Suez Canal in 1973. (السودان-2016)  
a. crossed b. had crossed c. have crossed d. was crossing

### Homework: Open Book Practice

**1)\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\***

- ✂ 1-His style of painting.....over the years.  
a) have changed b) changing c) is changed d)has changed
- ✂ 2-While he was working as a clerk for a judge, he.....himself as a great legal writer.  
a) establishes b) established c)establishing d)has established
- ✂ 3-Zeinab's biographical accounts of her life.....by her brother Ahmed.  
a) were written b) was written c)wrote d)had been written
- ✂ 4-Those old stories are still .....by many children today.  
a) loved b) loving c)being loved d)love
- ✂ 5-As far as Hany.....concerned, that team hasn't a chance of winning.  
a)were b)been c)is d)was





- ❏ 6-Fawzi.....already read some of Yehia Haqqi's writings before learning about him in class.  
a)have                      b) had                      c) is                      d)was
- ❏ 7-Many of the students.....questions for the speaker before he arrived.  
a) had prepared      b)have prepared      c)was preparing      d)been preparing
- ❏ 8-What.....you doing when the lights went out last night?  
a)was                      b)had been                      c) have                      d)were
- ❏ 9-The children.....tails to their donkey pictures then hung them up.  
a) are attaching      b) have attached      c) attached                      d)had attached
- ❏ 10-Fatma.....her own room since they moved to the new house in Sheikh Zaid.  
a) is having                      b) has                      c) has had                      d)had
- ❏ 11- ..... seeing the road accident, the motorists drove more carefully.  
a) On                      b) Without                      c) Despite                      d)Over
- ❏ 12- It's more than 20 years .....I travelled abroad.  
a) while                      b) before                      c) when                      d)since
- ❏ 13- Ali .....travelling by sea.  
a)used to                      b) using to                      c) is used to                      d)uses to
- ❏ 14- For centuries, the wind has been used .....ships.  
a) to sailing                      b) sailed                      c) sailing                      d)to sail
- ❏ 15-Last night, while I.....the internet, I found the camera was much cheaper to buy online.  
a-surfed                      b- was surfing                      c- surf                      d- am surfing
- ❏ 16- Neil Armstrong .....his first steps on the moon in 1969.  
a) took                      b) is taking                      c) has taken                      d)was taken
- ❏ 17-They .....what to do for the holidays yet.  
a) hadn't decided      b) haven't decided      c) don't decide                      d)won't decide
- ❏ 18-After he .....some good news, he left home.  
a) had received                      b) has received                      c) is received                      d)receives
- ❏ 19- We ..... our old friends for a year. They are too busy.  
a) hadn't met                      b) didn't meet                      c) haven't met                      d)haven't been met
- ❏ 20- I .....to spend the summer holiday in Alexandria when my sister suddenly felt ill.  
a)had been planning      b) have been planning      c)had planned                      d)have planned
- ❏ 21-They .....to spend the feast with us every year until we moved.  
a)use                      b)are used                      c)have used                      d)used
- ❏ 22-.....I started my job, I have met important people from all over the world.  
a)For                      b)Since                      c)Until                      d)When
- ❏ 23-You read the newspaper article about farming, ..... you? .  
a)haven't                      b)didn't                      c)have                      d)aren't
- ❏ 24-I ..... the book you lent me and I'm really enjoying it.  
a)will be reading      b)had read                      c)have been reading      d)will read
- ❏ 25-It's more than 40 years .....I travelled abroad.  
a)while                      b)before                      c)when                      d)since
- ❏ 26-Naguib Mahfouz's books .....into many languages.  
a)have translated      b)had translated                      c)were translating                      d)have been translated
- ❏ 27-No sooner .....the noise than we rushed to the spot.  
a)had we heard                      b)do we hear                      c)we had heard                      d)we did hear
- ❏ 28-After the house .....painted, we furnished it.  
a)had                      b)had been                      c)has been                      d)is
- ❏ 29-The glass window .....when the boy hit it with the ball.  
a)is breaking                      b)was breaking                      c)was broken                      d)had broken
- ❏ 30-My sister .....at university for 3 years. she comes home every weekend.  
a)is                      b)has been                      c)is being                      d)had been



- 31-For Egypt, reaching the World Cup finals in Russia is the..... of the year.  
a) highlight      b) highline      c) high power      d) high level
- 32.I sent an email with two..... They were the photos of my son.  
a) emails      b) attractions      c) attacks      d) attachments
- 33- I don't really have a.....during the holidays.  
a) routine      b) red-tape      c) custom      d) costume
- 34.The..... of people in Egypt have brown eyes.  
a) most      b) main      c) many      d) majority
- 35.To ..... means to make a new product or idea successful.  
a) divide      b) retire      c) develop      d) involve
- 36- I really enjoyed that book, it is written in a very simple.....  
a) style      b) road      c) line      d) word
- 37.Mona tried English food when she went to London, but she wasn't very.....with it.  
a) interested      b) keen      c) fond      d) happy
38. Scientists are paid to ..... new medicines every year to help people.  
a) build      b) hide      c) develop      d) arrive
39. You can't compare the..... of watching live theatre with watching a Film.  
a) experience      b) experiment      c) explanation      d) exploration
40. We..... a class survey today.  
a) did      b) made      c) gave      d) put
- 41- We're going to enter an athletic competition. We hope to..... something.  
a) make      b) gain      c) win      d) earn
- 42-I.....read the newspaper every day when I was younger. Now I don't have the time.  
a) am used to      b) used      c) am used      d) used to
- 43- As soon as we arrived at school, the first lesson.....  
a) began      b) begins      c) begin      d) has begun
- 44- I..... the film before I read the book.  
a) already saw      b) 'd already seen      c) have seen      d) saw
- 45-He really enjoyed this book. It is written in a very simple.....  
a) style      b) letter      c) symbol      d) figure
- 46- Haqqi wanted to help poor and..... people.  
a) healthy      b) wealthy      c) powerful      d) disabled
- 47- My father usually works from eight in the morning.....three in the afternoon.  
a) for      b) on      c) about      d) till
- 48- A successful person should have a.....  
a) regulation      b) custom      c) routine      d) red tape
- 49- Magdi Yacoub was one of the first heart transplant.....  
a) leaders      b) pioneers      c) carriers      d) learners
- 50- Scientists are paid to.....new medicines every year to help people.  
a) explore      b) deduce      c) reduce      d) develop

## 2) Reading Comprehension:

✓ Read the passage and answer the questions below

Aunt Jane is now well over seventy, but she is still a great cinema-goer. The cinema in our town closed down years ago and sometimes she has to travel twenty miles or more to see a good film. And once a month at least she goes up to London to see the latest foreign films. Of course she could see most of these films on television, but the idea does not attract her. "It is not the same", she says. "For one thing, the screen is too small. Besides, I like going to the cinema!"

One thing has always puzzled us. Although Aunt Jane has lots of friends and enjoys company. She always goes to the cinema alone. We discovered the reason for this only recently-from mother. "It may surprise you to learn that Aunt Jane wanted to be an actress when she was young", she told us. "She used to wait outside film studios all day. just to appear in crowd scenes. Your aunt has probably appeared in dozens of films as a





face in the crowd at a railway station or in the street! Sometimes she did not even know the name of the film they were making, so she couldn't go to see herself at the cinema!

"All the time of course, she was looking for a small part in a film. The big chance came when they started to make a film in our town. The director offered her a role as a shopkeeper which was really a small part-she only had a few lines to say - but was important for her. She did it well. The director congratulated her and she thought it would be the beginning of her film career.

When the film first appeared. Aunt Jane took all her friends to see it. Unfortunately the shop scene was not included. It was a terrible blow! She stopped going to film studios and gave up the idea of becoming an actress, but still loves the cinema.

### ✓ 1-Choose the correct answer

1. Aunt Jane was unfortunate because .....  
 a) The shop was destroyed. b) She had no customers.  
 c) The shop scene was not included in the film. d) She failed as an actress.
2. "Gave up the idea" means.....  
 a) Stopped thinking b) went on thinking  
 c) had another idea d) was looking for a small part
3. Aunt Jane appeared  
 a) a heroine b) a director c) a main character d) as a face in the crowd
4. Aunt Jane was looking for..... in a film.  
 a) taking part b) taking place c) a small part d) a small place
5. Aunt Jane stopped  
 a) going to film studios with all her friends b) to go to film studios by herself  
 c) going to film studios d) to go to film studios
6. Aunt Jane still  
 a) loves the cinema b) loves the director c) hates the cinema d) loves her face

### ✓ 2-Answer Two of the following questions :

7. Why has Aunt Jane to travel long miles?
8. Why does not Aunt Jane watch films on TV?
9. What did Aunt Jane want to be when she was young?
10. What was considered a big chance for her?

### 3) Translation: A) Translate into Arabic :

- ✳ 1-Travelling is a fantastic experience that most people look forward to. For many of those people travelling is an escape from the stress of daily life, but for others it is a way to broaden their horizons. Perhaps the most common form of travel is escapism.
- ✳ 2-It is time for the Egyptians to unite to be one hand. They should cooperate to help production wheel to go on. They should work hard to increase production and achieve self- sufficiency.
- ✳ 3-Every year millions of people start learning a foreign language. Some people try at home with books and magazines. Some use radio or television programmers; others go to language classes

### B) Translate into English:

- 1- أحب قراءة قصص المغامرات لأنها تثير عني حب الاستطلاع.
- 2- تقينا المظلات من حرارة الشمس صيفا و المطر شتاء.
- 3- يجب علينا معاملة ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة بطريقة إنسانية و ذلك بدمجهم مع قرنائهم.
- 4- يجب أن يتعاون الجيران على حل مشكلاتهم بالطرق الودية.
- 5- توسع قصص الخيال العلمي المدارك كما أنها تجدد المعلومات و تثرى المعرفة.

### 4) Write an essay of about one hundred and eighty (180) words on :

Jobs can help writers with their stories(How can doing a job help you succeed in a different career)



## Unit two

### Abdel-Tawab Youssef: My Father, An Egyptian Teacher

#### 1 – Important vocabulary & derivatives:

ministry	وزارة	silence (n) (v)	الصمت / يسكت
association (n)	جمعية	culture (n)	ثقافة
political science(n)	العلوم السياسية	cultural (adj)	ثقافي
policy (n)	سياسة / نهج	influence (n) (v)	يؤثر / تأثير
politician (n)	السياسي	influential (adj)	مؤثر
political(adj)	سياسي	influenced (v) (adj)	اثر في / متأثر
politics (n)	علم السياسة	made into a film	قدمت كفيلم
lectured (v)	حاضر	be trusted	شخص موثوق به / محل ثقة
lecture (n) (v)	محاضرة / يحاضر	arabic literature	الأدب العربي
lecturer (n)	محاضر	a weak-old moon	هلال
honour (n) (v)	الشرف / يكرم	responsible(adj)	مسئول
honouable (adj)	مكرم / مشرف	take part in	يشارك في
formal	رسمي	take place (v)	يحدث
informal	غير رسمي	strict (adj)	صارم / حازم
layer (n)	طبقة	inspire (v)	يلهم
serious (adj)	جدي / خطير	inspiration (n)	الهام
semicircle (n)	نصف دائرة	discipline(n)(v)	تهذيب/ يضبط / انضباط
plan (n) (v)	خطة / يخطط	award	منحة / جائزة
spoil (v)	يفسد	do a project	يقوم بعمل مشروع
head teacher	مدرس مشرف	ache (n)	وجع/ يوجع
design (v)	يصمم	break (n) (v)	استراحة / يكسر
fatherly (adj)	أبوي	chat (n) (v)	دردشة / يدرش
concerned father	أب مهتم	(n)(v) demand	الطلب / يطلب
a writer (n)	كاتب	face(n)(v)	وجه / يواجه
favour (n) (v)	جميل / معروف	a secretary (n)	سكرتير / سكرتيرة
favourable (adj)	مستحسن / مساعد	active (adj)	نشط
favourably (adv.)	من المستحسن	activity (n)	النشاط
favourite (adj)	مفضل / مستحسن	nature (n)	الطبيعة
success (n)	نجاح	natural (adj)	طبيعي
succeed (v)	ينجح	achieve (v)	يحقق / ينجز
successful (adj)	ناجح	achievement (n)	إنجاز / تحقيق
successfully (adv.)	بنجاح	encourage (v)	يشجع
recommend (v)	يوصي / يرشح / يذكي	encouragement	تشجيع
recommendation	توصية / ترشيح	communicate (v)	يتواصل
compare (v)	يقارن	communication	الاتصال
comparison (n)	مقارنة	respect (n) (v)	يحترم
interest (n)	فائدة / اهتمام	respectable(adj)	محترم
interested (adj)	مهتم بـ	respectful (adj)	محترم للآخرين
interesting (adj)	مثير للاهتمام	importance (n)	اهمية
relate	يرتبط	important (adj)	هام
relation (n)	ارتباط / علاقة	collect (v)	يجمع
take turns(v)	ياخذ دورة	collection (n)	مجموعة





## 2 – Check Your Vocabulary :

steps (n)	خطوات	gentle (adj)	لطيف
paintings (n)	رسومات / نقوش	goals (n)	اهداف
author	مؤلف	introduction (n)	مقدمة
literature (n)	الادب	realize (v)	يدرك
department (n)	قسم	qualities (n)	صفات / سمات
conversation (n)	محادثة	another	(singular) آخر
move around (v)	يتحرك	other	(plural) آخر
discussion (n)	مناقشة	research (n) (v)	يبحث / بحث
dig (v)	يحفر	conduct (v)	يقود / يوصل
partner (n)	شريك	survey	الدراسة الاستقصائية
do a project	يقوم بمشروع	report (v)	يقرر / يكتب تقرير
archaeology (n)	علم الآثار	list (v)	يضع في قائمة
similar	يشبه	useful (adj)	مفيد
hobby	هواية	worthwhile	جدير بالاهتمام / يستحق الجهد المبذول
warm (n) (v)	دافئ / يدفى	vet	طبيب بيطرى
motherly (adj)	اموى	keep fit	يحافظ على لياقته
swimming pool	حمام السباحة	go swimming	يذهب للسباحة

## ✓ 3- Tapescript:

Interviewer	:	Many people have grown up reading the books of Abdel-Tawab Youssef. In fact, I have just finished one of his books, <b>called</b> <u>يسمى</u> My father, An Egyptian Teacher. With me today is Mrs. Abdul-Aziz, <b>She has written a book about why the writer became successful</b> , so, Mrs. Abdul-Aziz, Was Youssef from Cairo?
Mrs. Abdul-Aziz	:	No, he wasn't, although he lived all his life there, Abdel-Tawab Youssef was born in 1928 in a small village near BeniSuef, <b>When he was a child he loved to read children's books</b> and he also loved writing.
Interviewer	:	Did he go to university?
Mrs. Abdul-Aziz	:	Yes, in 1945 he started studying <b>political science</b> علم السياسة at Cairo university. <b>He graduated in</b> 1950 <b>and then he worked for the Egyptian Ministry of education</b> وزارة التربية و <b>التعليم</b> but six months later his father died.
Interviewer	:	That must have been a difficult time to him.
Mrs. Abdul-Aziz	:	That's right, He wanted to live in Cairo with his mother and his three younger sisters . His uncle did not think it was a good idea but he wanted to earn enough money to send his sisters to school, Which was unusual غير معتاد at that time.
Interviewer	:	When did he start writing children's books?
Mrs. Abdul-Aziz	:	He didn't start for many years, Youssef married Noaila Rashed in 1965 and they had three children. <b>Youssef set up</b> <b>the children's cultural association</b> <b>جمعية ثقافية للأطفال</b> in 1968 and he travelled to many countries to study children's culture but he didn't start writing until 1975



Interviewer	:	What happened then?
Mrs. Abdul-Aziz	:	Well, in 1975 he started writing children's stories for radio and television. The stories were very successful and so he started writing novels, poems and plays often about important events أحداث هامة and people in the world. <u>He won many awards for منح his writing.</u> الكثير من الجوائز
Interviewer	:	Are his books only famous in Egypt?
Mrs. Abdul-Aziz	:	No, Since he became famous in Egypt <u>people have translated his books into many languages</u> , including English, French and Chinese. Abdel-Tawab Youssef travelled a lot too. In fact, he lectured at the University of Ohio in the United States about writing for children and the importance of Arabic literature. He died in 2015, aged 87.
Interviewer	:	His books have influenced children for many years, and I am sure children will continue to enjoy his books in the future. Thank you!

#### ✓ 4- Reading:

### My Father, an Egyptian Teacher

For all those who have had the honour of الشرف being كونه called يسمى "teacher". The head teacher realized ادرك that the young teacher was worried about his first lesson at the school. "Don't worry, you have all the qualities صفات to be a good teacher!" he said. "You are very natural طبيعي with the students. You're serious جاد and responsible, مسئول warm but strict. صارم That is what I've learnt about you in the short time you've been here. You will need to discipline يضبط the students, but you'll be fatherly أبوي and gentle."

"Do you think so? I've always prepared my lessons well," said the teacher. "I give myself goals أهداف and plan يخطط how to achieve them. I plan an introduction and then use steps. And I like to use paintings and pictures," said the teacher that's good. You've come with fresh ideas أفكار جديدة answered the head. "I believe that a teacher mustn't silence يسكرت his students. He must inspire يلهم them and encourage يشجع them to communicate يتواصلوا and to take part in يشارك conversations." "You don't want to spoil يفسد the students," warned the head. "Oh, I won't. We should encourage them to move around the class. We can change the design تصميم of the classroom: if there's a discussion, the students can sit in a circle or semicircle نصف دائرة. We could even have the class outside, under the trees!" said the teacher. Good luck with your first class tomorrow," said the head. The head teacher left him dreaming about يحلم his new life as a teacher. He believed that his وظيفة التدريس was the most important job: he was society's engineer مهندس المجتمع helping to build it. A teacher is like the layers طبقات of the earth: whatever level المستوى you reach, you can dig deeper to find more layers that are even richer than before. His وظيفة التدريس was the best job in the world

#### ✓ 5-Main Points

- 1-Many people have grown up يكبر reading the books of Abdel-Tawab Youssef. (adj) قارئ
- 2-In fact, I have just finished reading one of his books, called My father, An Egyptian teacher. (adj) يسمى
- 3-Mrs. Abdul-Aziz has written a book about why the writer became successful. ناجح





- 4-When he was a child he loved to read children's books (past simple)  
 5-He graduated in 1950 and then he worked for the Egyptian Ministry of education.  
 6-Youssef set up the children's cultural association in 1968 جمعية ثقافية  
 7- He won many awards for writing. (win something for)  
 8-People have translated his books into many languages. (present perfect)

### ✓ 6- Important Sentences :

- 1-For all those who have had the honour of being called "teacher". الشرف  
 2-You are very natural طبيعي with the students. You're serious جدى and responsible, warm but strict. صارم  
 3-You will need to discipline يضبط the students, but you'll be fatherly and gentle . رقيق  
 4-You've come with fresh ideas افكار جديدة  
 5- I believe that a teacher mustn't silence يسكر his students. He must inspire them and encourage them to communicate and to take part in conversations. يشارك  
 6-You don't want to spoil the students يفسد  
 7-The teacher was society's engineer. مهندس للمجتمع  
 8-A teacher is like the layers of طبقات the earth: whatever level you reach, you can dig deeper to find more layers that are even richer than before.

### \*\*\*Practice(1)Test Your Vocabulary\*\*\*

#### \*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- 1-The interviewer has just read a book (of – at – by–from) Abdel-Tawab Youssef.  
 2-Abdel-Tawab Youssef studied (politically–policy–political–politician)science at Cairo University.  
 3-His father died when he was working for the Egyptian ministry of (culture– literature– education – civilization).  
 4- He wanted to live in Cairo so that he could send his sisters (some money–to school–to university–some explanation).  
 5- He travelled to many countries to study children's(Schools-Culture-Customs-Habits).  
 6- He first started writing (to – in – for – at) Radio magazines and television.  
 7- His books are famous (for – in – at – to) many countries.  
 8- Some students can (say – name – tell – set) who won the world cup 2018.  
 9- When I was young, Yehia Haqqi was my (fever–favour– favourite- favourable) author of short stories because he developed a new style of writing.  
 10-It's(favourable–favourite–undesirable–unthinkable)to give me another chance to express myself.  
 11-The dog (spilt–had spilt–has spilt–spills)the milk on the carpet so , it is dirty .  
 12- It is two weeks since we last (met–have met–had met–meet).  
 13-The people at the charity (asked–have asked–had asked–ask) me to work there three nights a week.  
 14-One of several levels of different materials that are on top of each other's is a (step–lawyer -layer–slice).  
 15-The teacher told us about the (important–importance– invasion–invention) of revising before exams.  
 16-Nawal's younger sister has studied the past tense but she hasn't studied the present perfect (already – just – yet – recently).  
 17- Bassel is not hungry because he ( ate–eats–has eaten–had eaten)a big lunch.  
 18-You are serious and (responsibility–response–responsible–irresponsible) warm but strict.



- 19- The head teacher believed that (he-him-his-himself) was the most important job.
- 20- The students should show (respected-respectable-respectful-respect) to their teachers.
- 21- I (plan - plane - play -discipline) an introduction and then use steps.
- 22- Oh! I (am losing - lost - had lost - have lost) my passport, what should I do?
- 23- I (didn't meet - hadn't met - haven't met - won't met) my pen-friend yet.
- 24- Importance is the (quantity-identity-quality-mentality) of being important.
- 25- A (writer-teacher-secretary-politician) is responsible for teaching students and also for discipline.
- 26- What is the (distinctive-difference-similar-meaning) between where and wear?
- 27- Michael Morpurgo (has started-started-had started-starts) writing stories for children when he was in a primary school teacher.
- 28- When Abdel-Tawab Youssef was a child he (had loved-loved-has loved-was loved) to read children's books.
- 29- I plan an introduction and then use (stops-stairs - steps - mix).
- 30- The head teacher left him dreaming about his new (live-life -system-rule) as a teacher.

### ✓ 7-Definitions:-

1-	association	:	<u>An organization with the same interests, or who do the same kind of work.</u> <b>جمعية</b>
2-	cultural	:	Relating to art, music, literature, etc. <b>ثقافى</b>
3-	ministry	:	A government department. <b>وزارة</b>
4-	political science	:	The study of the ideas and activities that are concerned with how a country is governed. <b>علوم سياسية</b>
5-	lectured	:	Talked to a group of people about a subject <b>حاضر</b>
6-	importance	:	The quality of being important. <b>اهمية</b>
7 -	influenced	:	Had an effect on the way someone or something develops or behaves. <b>مؤثر</b>
8-	discipline	:	<u>To teach someone to obey rules and control their own behaviour</u> <b>يضبط</b>
9-	honour	:	Something that makes you feel proud and happy <b>يكرم \ الشرف</b>
10-	layer	:	<u>One of the several levels of different materials that are on the top of each other.</u> <b>طبقة</b>
11-	responsible	:	Sensible and able to be trusted. <b>مسئول</b>
12-	semicircle	:	<u>A group arranged in a curved line.</u> <b>نصف دائرة</b>
13-	serious	:	Quiet and sensible. <b>جدى</b>
14-	silence	:	<u>Make someone stop giving their opinions.</u> <b>يسكت</b>
15-	spoil	:	<u>Let a child have or do whatever they want with the result that they behave badly.</u> <b>يفسد</b>
16-	strict	:	<u>Making sure that people always obey rules.</u> <b>صارم</b>
17-	a politician	:	Is responsible for the people he or she represents and sometimes for making new laws. <b>سياسى</b>
18-	a secretary	:	Is responsible for writing emails, answering phone calls and making arrangements for a business or organization. <b>سكرتير</b>
19-	a teacher	:	Is responsible for teaching students and also discipline <b>مدرس</b>
20-	a writer	:	Is responsible for giving interesting facts or telling interesting stories to his or her readers. <b>كاتب</b>
21-	fatherly	:	<u>Typical of a kind or concerned father.</u> <b>أبوى</b>
22-	plan	:	Think about something you want to do and how you will do it. <b>يخطط</b>





## ✓ 8- Phrases, Expressions and Idioms:

1) come with fresh ideas	يأتي بأفكار جديدة
2) conduct a survey among	يجري استبيان بين
3) do a project on/about	يقوم بدراسة عن/علي
4) go on a conducted tour	يقوم بجولة مع مرشد
5) have the qualities to be	لديه كل الصفات ليكون
6) a week-old moon	القمر في يومه السابع
7) able to be trusted	جدير بالثقة
8) discipline the students	يدرب الاطفال علي الانضباط
9) give myself goals	اضع لنفسي اهداف
10) government department	ديوان حكومي
11) for all those who	لكل اولئك الذين
12) the short time you have been here	الفترة القصيره التي كنت موجود هنا
13) move around the class	يتحرك في الفصل
14) have the class outside	تاخذ الحصه خارج الفصل الدراسي
15) like the layers of the earth	مثل طبقات الارض
16) have health problems	لديه مشكلات صحيه
17) have a successful future	لديه مستقبل ناجح
18) keep fit	يحافظ علي اللياقه البدنيه
19) make--worthwhile	يجعل - جدير بالاهتمام
20) show respect	يظهر الاحترام
21) sit in a circle	يجلس في دائره
22) write for children	يكتب للأطفال
23) set up an association to help children	ننشئ جمعيه
24) that must have been a difficult time	كان بالتأكيد وقتا صعبا
25) send his sisters to school	يرسل شقيقاته للدراسة
26) take turns	يتناوب/يتبادل الادوار
27) receive a reply	يتلقى رد
28) what flying is like	كيف يبدو الطيران
29) go on a cruise tour	يخرج في رحله نهريه
30) Egyptian Ministry of Education	وزاره التربيه و التعليم
31) on top of each other	فوق بعضها البعض
32) whatever level you reach	مهما كان المستوي الذي تصل اليه
33) do "job-work-revision"	يقوم بعمل /بمهمه/بمراجعه
34) make a plan	يقوم بعمل خطه
35) read a book called	يقرا كتاب يسمى
36) read a book by—about	يقرا كتاب من كتب بواسطه - عن
37) do research into/on	يقوم ببحث في -او علي
38) ask for advice	يطلب النصيح
39) be made into films	تتحول الي افلام
40) give/express an opinion	يعبر عن الراي
41) obey rules and orders	يطيع الاوامر و القوانين
42) have the honor of being	لديه الشرف /الفخر لكونه
43) study children's culture	يدرس ثقافه الاطفال



44) grow up reading	يشب علي قراءه
45) his was the best job	وظيفته كانت الافضل
46) how a country is governed	كيف تحكم البلد
47) in the shape of	علي شكل
48) people with the same interests	اشخاص لديهم نفس الاهتمامات
49) won many awards for	فاز بالعديد من الجوائز في
50) a teacher is like the layers of the earth	المعلم مثل طبقات الارض

### ✓ 9-Language Notes:

#### 1) \* discipline "v"

يهدب / يضبط / يدرب علي الالتزام بالنظام

eg: You will need to discipline the students.

#### discipline "n":

التربية / التهذيب / الالتزام / الانضباط

eg: You need a lot of self-discipline to be successful in life.

#### \* enforce discipline:

يفرض النظام

eg: There was a demonstration, that's why, the police enforce discipline.

#### 2) Verbs and Nouns:

verb	الفعل	Meaning	المعني	Noun	الاسم	Meaning	المعني
ache			يؤلم	ache			الم
chat			يدردش/يحادث	chat			محادثه/دردشه
face			يواجه/يقابل	face			وجه
plan			يخطط	plan			خطه
break			يكسر	break			راحه
demand			يطلب	demand			طلب
book			يحجز	book			كتاب
design			يصمم - يخطط	design			تصميم/مخطط
discipline			يضبط/يهدب	discipline			انضباط - انتظام
honour			يكرم	honour			شرف/مجد
influence			يؤثر علي	influence			اثر - تاثير
lecture			يحاضره	lecture			محاضره
silence			يسكت - يصمت	silence			صمت
step			يخطو - يدوس	step			خطوه

#### 3) \*\* reach – arrive at – arrive in

Reach

يصل الي "ياتي بعدها المكان ولا تاخذ حرف جر"

Arrive at

يصل الي مكان صغير

Arrive in

يصل الي مكان كبير

eg: We reached London on time.

- We arrived in London on time.

- We arrived at London airport on time.

#### 4) Adjectives and Nouns:

Adjective	الصفه	Meaning	المعني	Noun	الاسم	Meaning	المعني
intelligent			ذكي	intelligence			ذكاء
confident			واثق	confidence			ثقه
influential			مؤثر	influence			تاثير
important			هام	importance			اهميه





different	مختلف	difference	اختلاف
healthy	صحي	health	صحة
fatherly	ابوي	father	اب
cultural	ثقافي	culture	ثقافة
silent	صامت	silence	صمت/سكوت
wealthy	غني/ثرو	wealth	ثروه
brotherly	اخوي	brother	اخ
sisterly	اختوي	sister	اخت
friendly	محبوب	friend	صديق
cowardly	جبان		
elderly	كبير في السن		
early	مبكر		
ugly	قبيح		

### 5) \*\* earn – gain – win – beat

\*\* earn “v”

يكسب مالا من عمل/ يكسب معيشه – قوته

eg: He is a celebrity, he earns a lot of money.

\*\* Gain “v” experience/confidence/weight" عرض – طول – وزن – ثقه – خبره – معنوي "يكتسب شئ معنوي"

Gain height يكتسب ارتفاع - Gain weight يكتسب وزن - Gain speed يكتسب سرعه

While he was abroad, he gained a lot of experience.

\*\* Win “v” – won - won: a competition/ a race/ a prize/ a game/ a match/ a war

يفوز ب "مسابقه / سباق / جائزه / مباراه / حرب ----- الخ

\*\* Beat – beat – beaten

يهزم شخص او فريق

6) politics policy	Eg: Politicians should study politics. You should follow a kind policy.	علم السياسه سياسه
7) contact communicate connect	I'll contact you tomorrow. I communicate with her orally. Try to connect the printer to your computer.	يتصل تليفونيا يتواصل يوصل شئ
8) strict spoil serious	Everyone obeys him. He is strict She spoils her child. He behaves badly I'm serious about giving up teaching	صارم يفسد – يدلل جاد / خطير
9)silence “n” silence “v” silent “adj”	I like the silence I live in The teacher couldn't silence them She is always silent	صمت/سكوت يسكت/يجعله يصمت صامت
10)as like	She works as a nurse He works like a slave	يتبعها شئ حقيقي تعني مثل
11) abroad aboard board on board broad	She is going to travel abroad The flight attendant welcomed us aboard the plane I feel excited on board We were safely on board She has broad shoulders	في الخارج علي متن طائره لوح خشب علي متن واسع عريض
12) realize recognize	She realized the truth at last After ten years, I couldn't recognize them	يدرك يتعرف علي



### 13) contain – consist of – include – enclose

#### \* contain

We should make all efforts to contain corona Virus.

#### \* consist of

Our national team consists of 11 players.

#### \* include

eg: The list of the players includes Mohamed and Ali.

#### \* enclose

eg: He enclosed his farm with a fence.

#### \* Exclude

eg: He excluded the injured player.

### 14) \* Every day – each day "adv."

Every day, I do my homework early.

### \*\* Everyday "adj."

Everyday work is hard to be achieved in a short time.

### 15) \*\* Life a life the life

#### \* Life

Life is not always easy to live.

#### \* a life

Police officers lead a stressful life.

#### \* The life

eg: The life of Taha Hussein was full of struggle.

### 16) \* decide on + noun:

He decided on a tour to many countries.

### \*\* decide to + inf.

She decided to raise the driver's salary.

### \*\* decide that + sentence

He decided that he would rather tell Flevia the truth.

### 17) \*\* Need "Active" and passive

Active: subject need to + inf.

The manager needs to dictate some reports.

Passive:

Subject need "s" to be + P.P

Subject need "s" + V.ing

eg : The car needs to be repaired. - The car needs repairing.

### 18) \*\* Subject encourage/urge/inspire object + to + inf.

المصدر + to + مفعول يشجع فاعل

eg: My uncle encourages me to look for a better job.

### \*\* Subject discourage object from + V.ing

لا يشجع الفاعل from + V.ing مفعول

She was discouraged from being lazy all time.

### 19) along adv.

We have a walk along the beach.

### \* a long adj. + noun

It will take a long time to finish the dialogue.

### 20) discussion

#### debate

They will hold a debate to discuss many issues.

It is a useless discussion, you can't be convinced.

يحتوي علي " شئ بداخله " "محتويات"

يتكون من "اشياء او اشخاص"

يتضمن / يضم / يشمل علي

يرفق / يسيج "شئ منفصل"

يستبعد - يستثنى

يومي / معتاد / شائع

الحياه بشكل عام

حياه من نوع خاص يسبقها اداه نكره

حياه شخص او فئه من الناس يسبقها اداه

يختار / يحدد / يستقر علي

يقرر ان

يقرر ان

مبني للمعلوم

مبني للمجهول

بطول / بمحاذاة / الي الامام

طويل

مناقشه

مناظره / مجادله





## 21) Good at / to / for - bad at / for

**\*\* Good at = clever at = skilled at = wonderful at = intelligent at** جيد في مجال معين  
eg: He is very good at making up stories.

**\*\* Good for = useful for** مفيد لـ

Renewable energy is good for / useful for environment.

**\*\* good to = kind to** عطوف علي

Everyone of us must be good to their parents.

**\*\* bad at = hopeless at = terrible at** سيء في

She is very bad at typing

**\*\* Bad for = harmful to** ضار لـ

Smoking is bad for your health.

## 22) لكي

Present / future

Past

that  
so that  
in the hope that  
in order that

will, can, may + inf.

Would, could,  
Might + inf.

eg: The tourist speaks very slowly so that the tour-guide can understand his words.

eg: He did his homework fast so that he could watch the match.

## 23) do revision

make a revision plan

eg: You need to do revision regularly.

eg: Our teacher made us a reasonable revision plan.

يراجع - يجري مراجعة  
بعد خطه مراجعة

## ✓ 10- Confusing words for choices:

silent	صامت "بدون صوت"	quiet	هادئ
circle "v"	يدور في دائره	circulate "v"	يدور حول مكانه
dig	يحفر/يستخرج بالحفر	drill	يحفر بمثقاب
system	نظام "افكار/طريقه"	discipline	نظام "طاعه القواعد و الاوامر"
homework	واجب منزلي	housework	العمل المنزلي
between	بين اثنين	among	بين مجموعه
reward	يكافئ - مكافاه	award	منحه / يمنح
layer	طبقة	liar/lawyer	كذاب / محام
qualities	صفات	quantities	كميات
painting	لوحة مرسومه باليد	photograph	صور فوتوغرافيه
discipline	انضباط	system	نظام / منظومه
introduction	مقدمه	production	انتاج
inspire	يلهم	aspire	يطمح
warn	يحذر	warm	دافئ/ودود
recommend	يرشح - يوصي - يوعظ	advise	ينصح "الفعل شئ"
abroad	خارج البلاد	aboard	علي متن السفينه / الطائره
layers	طبقات الارض	classes	طبقات المجتمع
conversation	حوار مسموع	dialogue	محادثه مكتوبه
aged "at the age of"	في عمر/في سن	in the age of	في عهد/في عصر
remember	يتذكر من نفسه	remind	يذكر
later	فيما بعد	latter	الثاني/الاخير
take place in	يحدث	take part in	يشارك



realize	يدرك	recognize	يتعرف علي
manage to + inf.	يتمكن من	succeed in + v.ing	ينجح في
affect	يؤثر علي	effect	تأثير
gentle	لطيف/رفيق	gentle	انيق/حسن المظهر
successful "adj."	ناجح	succeed "v." success "n"	ينجح / النجاح
deep "adj."	عميقه	deeply "adv."	بشده/بدرجه كبيره
culture	ثقافه	cultural	ثقافي
lecture	محاضره	lecturer	محاضر "الشخص الذي يلقي المحاضره"

### ✓ 11- Words and their antonyms :

fatherly	ابوي/ودود	cruel	قاسي
responsible	مسئول	irresponsible	غير مسؤول
strict	صارم	flexible/lenient	مرن/متساهل
usual	معتاد/مألوف	unusual	غير معتاد/غير مألوف
important	هام/مهم	unimportant	غير مهم
encourage to	يشجع	discourage from	يهبط العزيمه
gentle	لطيف	cruel	قاسي
famous	مشهور	infamous	غير مشهور
sensible	عقلاني/حكيم	foolish	احمق
build	يبني	demolish	يهدم
result	نتيجه	cause	سبب
intelligent	ذكي	stupid	غبي
honour	شرف/فخر	shame/dishonour	خزي/عار
busy	مشغول	free	فاضي
win	يفوز	lose	يخسر
natural	طبيعي	unnatural/artificial	غير طبيعي/صناعي
recent	حالي	previous	سابق
send	يرسل	receive	يتسلم
serious	جاد	frivolous/flippant	غير جاد
wet	مبتل	dry	جاف

### \*\*\*Practice(2)Test Your Knowledge\*\*\*

\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- ✎ 31-My grandmother died last year ..... 80.  
a) old                      b) age                      c) aged                      d) year
- ✎ 32- .....is the greatest country in the world.  
a) We                      b) Us                      c) Our                      d) Ours
- ✎ 33- My father lectures his students ..... chemistry.  
a) for                      b) of                      c) with                      d) on
- ✎ 34- When I leave school, I want to set ..... my own business.  
a) up                      b) on                      c) with                      d) by
- ✎ 35- The secretary translated the report ..... English.  
a) on                      b) for                      c) into                      d) with
- ✎ 36- Salma looks ..... to studying medicine at university.  
a) forward                      b) backward                      c) in front                      d) behind
- ✎ 37- I need to ..... a survey about energy use in our town.  
a) make                      b) give                      c) take                      d) conduct





- 38- The famous writer ..... an award for his last novel.  
a) gave                      b) gained                      c) won                      d) delivered
- 39- What advice can you ..... me about my future?  
a) give                      b) take                      c) order                      d) enforce
- 40- .....sure that you have everything you need in your bag before leave for school.  
a) Do                      b) Make                      c) Take                      d) Give
- 41- The teacher let me ..... the paragraph again.  
a) writing                      b) to write                      c) write                      d) wrote
- 42- My father allowed my brother ..... on a picnic with his friends.  
a) go                      b) going                      c) went                      d) to go
- 43- I remember ..... that man at the party last week.  
a) to see                      b) seeing                      c) see                      d) saw
- 44- My father worked ..... the British Company for a long time.  
a) for                      b) on                      c) to                      d) into
- 45- Scientists are most worried ..... pollution problems.  
a) of                      b) with                      c) about                      d) at
- 46- Ali is excited ..... his new school  
a) about                      b) with                      c) in                      d) by
- 47- My father works ..... an international oil company.  
a) against                      b) for                      c) out                      d) to
- 48- Mo Salah is ready to take ..... in the finals  
a) part                      b) a part                      c) turn                      d) parts
- 49- Taha recommended me a book to read ..... Naguib Mahfouz  
a) with                      b) for                      c) by                      d) to
- 50- She writes ..... Al-Ahram arguing for women's rights  
a) as                      b) for                      c) like                      d) on
- 51- My brother graduated ..... law and became a lawyer.  
a) in                      b) at                      c) on                      d) by
- 52- Students are working ..... making a solar-powered car.  
a) for                      b) with                      c) by                      d) on
- 53- Nour looks ..... to meeting her old friends in her birthday party.  
a) after                      b) forward                      c) at                      d) for
- 54- Mother is busy ..... cooking lunch.  
a) with                      b) by                      c) at                      d) for
- 55- Dr. Farida teaches ..... the university on political sciences.  
a) in                      b) on                      c) through                      d) at
- 56- She is an expert ..... the history of ancient Egypt.  
a) at                      b) on                      c) with                      d) of
57. There's a ..... of dust on your desk. Clean it, please.  
a) player                      b) layer                      c) slayer                      d) prayer
58. Using ..... and pictures as educational aids in class helps students understand their lessons easily.  
a) pains                      b) pants                      c) paintings                      d) paints
59. To ..... is to exchange information with other people using words, letters, telephones, etc.  
a) communicate                      b) compensate                      c) complicate                      d) commute
60. You have all the ..... to be a good teacher.  
a) qualities                      b) questions                      c) students                      d) paintings



- ✎ 61-To ..... is to talk to people about a subject at the university.  
a) lecture                      b) discipline                      c) strict                      d) honour
- ✎ 62-Mr Ahmed is a good teacher; he behaves in a .....way  
a) cowardly                      b) motherly                      c) fatherly                      d) teacherly
- ✎ 63-When you teach someone ....., they learn to obey rules.  
a) lecture                      b) discipline                      c) honour                      d) strict
- ✎ 64-A..... is one of the government departments.  
a) ministry                      b) civilization                      c) society                      d) culture
- ✎ 65-If someone is ....., they are sensible and trusted  
a) influential                      b) dishonest                      c) responsible                      d) suspect
- ✎ 66-When you feel ..... in someone, you are proud of him.  
a) suspected                      b) honour                      c) shame                      d) responsible
- ✎ 67-We describe someone ....., if they make people obey the rules  
a) strict                      b) discipline                      c) fatherly                      d) honour
- ✎ 68-A(n) ..... is an organization for people who do the same work.  
a) finding                      b) charity                      c) company                      d) association
- ✎ 69-If something related to art, music, literature, it is .....  
a) fictional                      b) traditional                      c) cultural                      d) fashionable
- ✎ 70-A ..... is responsible for telling interesting stories  
a) minister                      b) writer                      c) diplomat                      d) lecturer
- ✎ 71) ..... means teaching someone to obey rules and control their own behavior  
a) Discipline                      b) Rule                      c) Qualities                      d) Quotations
- ✎ 72-.....is one of several levels of different materials that are on top of each others .  
a) Cover                      b) Layer                      c) Standard                      d) Over
- ✎ 73-..... is an organization for people with the same interests, or who do the same kind of work.  
a) Community                      b) Society                      c) Association                      d) Authority
- ✎ 74- ..... means making sure that people always obey rules.  
a) Tolerant                      b) Obedient                      c) Forgiving                      d) Strict
- ✎ 75-To.....means to have an effect on the way someone or something develops or behaves.  
a) influential                      b) influence                      c) influenced                      d) influent
- ✎ 76-..... is the quality of being important.  
a) Culture                      b) Cultural                      c) Importance                      d) Association
- ✎ 77- To ..... means to talk to a group of people about a subject.  
a) influence                      b) culture                      c) lecture                      d) associate
- ✎ 78-..... is the study of the ideas and activities that are concerned with how a country is governed.  
a) Physics                      b) Chemistry                      c) Biology                      d) Political science
- ✎ 79- A ..... is a government department that is responsible for one of the areas of government work, such as education or health  
a) Minister                      b) ministry                      c) monastery                      d) monster
- ✎ 80-..... is an organization for people with the same interests, or who do the same kind of work.  
a) Application                      b) Assignment                      c) Assimilation                      d) Association
- ✎ 81. A/An.....is an organization for people with the same interests, or who do the same kind of work.  
a. association                      b. ministry                      c) lecture                      d. discipline
- ✎ 82..... is the practice of making people obey rules and orders.  
a. Archaeology                      b. Responsibility                      c.Discipline                      d. Writing





83. To.....is to teach someone to obey rules and control their own behaviour.  
a. teach                      b. discipline                      c. plan                      d. order
84. ....means behaviour that is typical of a kind or concerned father  
a. Featherly                      b. Fatherly                      c. Cruelty                      d. Obedience
85. ....is something that makes you feel proud and happy.  
a. Ministry                      b. Discipline                      c. Silence                      d. Honour
86. To.....is to have an effect on the way someone or something develops or behaves.  
a. influence                      b. obey                      c. reward                      d. spoil
87. To.....is to talk to a group of people about a subject.  
a. say                      b. lecture                      c. tell                      d. scream
88. A/An..... is a government department.  
a. ministry                      b. office                      c. company                      d. association
89. To..... is to think about something you want to do, and how you will do it.  
a lecture                      b influence                      c. design                      d-plan
90. A..... person is someone who is sensible and able to be trusted.  
a. nervous                      b. strict                      c. responsible                      d-careless
- 91-A week-old moon looks like a .....  
a circle                      b- semicircle                      c-circular                      d- circulation
- 92- Abdel-Tawab Youssef started studying..... at Cairo University.  
a. police                      b- politician                      c -policy                      d- politics
- 93- Abdel-Tawab Youssef.....the Children's Cultural Association in 1968.  
a. built                      b- set up                      c -did                      d- made
- 94- Abdel-Tawab Youssef.....in 1950 and then worked for the Egyptian Ministry of Education.  
a. graduated                      b- taught                      c-learned                      d- studied
- 95- Abdel-Tawab Youssef wrote about important..... and people in the world.  
a. essays                      b- incidents                      c-events                      d- accidents
- 96- Abdel-Tawab Youssef won many.....for his works.  
a. records                      b- awards                      c-gifts                      d- presents
- 97- People have translated Youssef's books into many languages,..... English, French and Chinese.  
a. including                      b- containing                      c-consisting                      d- taking
- 98- Abdel-Tawab Youssef.....at the University of Ohio in the United States about writing for children and the importance of Arab literature,  
a. studied                      b- educated                      c-lectured                      d- learnt
- 99- Abdel-Tawab Youssef died in 2015,..... 87.  
a. aged                      b- age                      c-teenage                      d- aging
- 100- Our teacher deals with us in a..... way; we all respect him.  
a. fatherless                      b fatherhood                      c father                      d fatherly
- 101- A teacher is like the.....of the earth: whatever level you reach, you can dig deeper to find richer ones.  
a. layers                      b. lawyers                      c.lies                      d leads
- 102- Don't give your children all that they want so as not to..... them.  
a- spear                      b. spare                      c.spoil                      d spell
- 103- A good teacher should ,.....his students in a friendly way.  
a. talk                      b. silence                      c.depress                      d speak
- 104- To achieve greater results, a teacher should..... his students.  
a discourage                      b. bully                      c.stop                      d discipline
- 105- Shakespeare's plays have been very.....  
a influence                      b. influencer                      c.influential                      d influenced



## ✓ 11- Prepositions:

grow up	يكبر- ينمو	translate into	يترجم الي
set up	يؤسس/يقيم	divide into	يقسم الي
write about	يكتب عن	take part in	يشارك في
at cairo university	في جامعه القاهرة	graduated in	يتخرج في مجال
be worried about	قلق بشأن	in fact	في الواقع/الحقيقه
learn about	يعلم/يعرف عن	at a university	في الجامعه
dream about/of	يحلم بـ	at the weekend	في عطله نهايه الاسبوع
lecture about	محاضره عن	communicate in	يتواصل بلغه
tell about	يخبر عن	famous in	مشهور في
report about	يبلغ عن	difficult—for—to	صعب لـ
compare with	يقارن بـ	responsible for	مسئول عن
luck with	حظ في	write for	يكتب لـ
communicate with	يتواصل مع شخص	famous for	مشهور بـ
natural with	بطبيعته مع	in the honour of	علي شرف
an answer to	اجاب بـ / لـ	work for	يعمل لـ
concerned with	يهتم بـ	ask for	يطلب
go with	يتماشى مع	good for	مفيد لـ
busy with	مشغول بـ	look for	يبحث عن
help with	يساعد في	important for	هام لـ
come with	يبتكر	at a university	في الجامعه
come up with	يقترح شئ ما	went on a tour	يذهب في جوله
agree with	يتفق مع	design of	تصميم
export on/in/at	خبير في	lecture about/on	يلقي محاضره عن
the importance of	اهميه	good at	جيد في/ماهر في
way of + v.ing	طريقه لـ	good to	عطوف مع
way to + inf.	طريقه لـ	kind/sort/type of	نوع من
part of	جزء من	take part in	يشارك

### \*\*\*Practice(3):(Test Your Prepositions)\*\*\*

#### \*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- ❖\* 106- This baby's very attached (on-at-with-to)his mother. He follows her wherever she goes.
- ❖\* 107- Welcome (for-to-at-with) the Book Programme.
- ❖\* 108- He became very interested (on-at-in-of) archaeology.
- ❖\* 109- Some of her books are based (of-in-at-on) her travels to these countries, aren't they?
- ❖\* 110- Many of Abdel-Tawab Youssef's stories were turned (out-into-off- down) films or theatre plays.
- ❖\* 111- The old man is thought (to – that -if - when) have suffered from amnesia.
- ❖\* 112- He was deeply affected (at-by-with-in) his mother.
- ❖\* 113- She was suffering (from-of- in-at) poverty.
- ❖\* 114- (In-At-On-Over) my way home, I met an old friend.
- ❖\* 115- Innocent means not guilty (on-of-at-with) a crime.
- ❖\* 116- You may never have read any (to-in-for-of) his books.
- ❖\* 117- Abdel-Tawab Youssef was an active writer who was very close (to-with-of -for) his family.
- ❖\* 118- He started writing (by-at-in-into) a very young age and wrote all his life.





- \* 119- He worked (like-as-as if-such) a children's stories writer for radio and television.
- \* 120- He was looking (after-like-at-for) his sisters.
- \* 121- Could you tell us something( on – of – about – in ) his early life ?
- \* 122- He wrote his first novel, a Man of Mark, in 1890, but had to pay (at –for –on –to) the publication himself.
- \* 123- Michael is popular( of – with – to – on) some of the people of Ruritania
- \* 124- It's a very exciting adventure story which takes ( off – part – place –down) in a fictional European country.
- \* 125- He has been elected as a parliament member as he is popular(with–for–on–to) people in his area.
- \* 126- If you haven't read The Prisoner of Zenda yet, borrow it from your local library. It' one of those books you just can't put (of - out -down – up)
- \* 127- A lot of films have been based (of– at – on in)the story, and the public still enjoy reading it today.
- \* 128- Our company is based(at-in-from-by)Tanta.
- \* 129- My little sister doesn't have the right(in-with-to-of)vote in the presidential elections.
- \* 130- In today's programme, we are going to hear(for-to-from-about)the life and work of Antony Hope.

## ✓ 12 – Language Focus:

### The present perfect tense

#### A) The Active Voice: في المبني للمعلوم

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
He/She/It/singular+has+ P.P. My car has broken down. I/We/You/They/plural+have +P.P. They have just finished reading.	He/She/It/singular+has+not+ P.P. Has his car broken down? I/We/You/They/plural+have+not +P.P. They haven't finished reading yet	Has } subject +P.P? Have } Has his car broken ? Have they finished ?

#### B) The Passive Voice: في المبني للمجهول

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
He/She/It/singular+has+been+ P.P. The job has been done. I/We/You/They/plural+have+been +P.P. The letters have been written.	He/She/It/singular+has+not+been+ P.P. The job hasn't been done. I/We/You/They/plural+have+not +P.P. The letters haven't been written.	Has/have+subject been P.P? Has the job been done?

### 2) Usage: يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن:

1- We use the present perfect to talk about past actions that affect the present:

1- حدث تم في الماضي ولا يزال له تأثير في الحاضر :

-My car has broken down. = I have to go to work by bus.

-Ahmed has hurt his leg, so he can't play football today

2- We often use the present perfect to talk about an action that started in the past and continues until, the present often with for (a time period) or since (a date or a starting point in the past)

2- حدث تم في الماضي و ما زال مستمر في الحاضر :

- I have done this job for many years. = I still do this job.

- Mona has studied English for ten years. -We have been at this school since 2012.



3)-We also use the present perfect to talk about past experiences or events (without saying when) often with ever or never.

3 - لاحظ استخدام ever في السؤال و never في الإجابة :

- Have you ever travelled by plane?
- No, I have never travelled by plane.
- I have never eaten Chinese food.
- Have you ever ridden a camel?

4)-We also use the present perfect to talk about very recent events (often with just)  
لاحظ أن ever/never/just/ already تأتي بين have/has والتصريف الثالث P.P :

- I have just written the letter.
- Leila isn't here. She's just gone out.

يمكن أن تأتي already في نهاية الجملة :-

- Twenty million people have seen the film already.
- They left the building a minute ago. (Just) = They have just left the building

5)-We also use the present perfect to talk about events that have not happened up to now (often with yet).

- He hasn't finished writing the report yet.
- I haven't received a reply to my email yet.

6) For an action which happened at an unknown time in the past:

يعبر عن حدث انتهى في وقت غير معروف في الماضي (التركيز يكون على الحدث وليس وقت الحدث)

- e.g. I have read 200 pages of that book.
- e.g. Mona has been to London twice before.
- e.g. My daughter has learned to speak Spanish.

7) Repeated events or actions which could be repeated

للتعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف قابلة للتكرار و يمكن استخدام تعبيرات زمنية مثل :

today /this morning /week/month / year / in the last 10 years

e.g. I have drunk three cups of coffee today.

8)To narrate news, reports, letters, and conversations

لسرد الاخبار و التقارير و الرسائل و المحادثات

e.g. Fire has broken down.

e.g. I'm happy to tell you that you have passed the test.

9)To emphasize the number of repetition of the action. للتأكيد على عدد مرات تكرار الحدث

e.g. I have sent her five letters so far.

e.g. How many pages of this novel have you already read?

### 3)Key-markers:

for	لمدة	so far	حتى الان
since / ever since	منذ	just	توا / حالا
since then	منذ ذلك الحين	throughout ages	عبر العصور
lately	مؤخرا	how long	كم للمدة
recently	حديثا	it's the "first / second" time	انها أول مرة (ثاني)
already	بالفعل	in the last "period of time"	خلال الفترة الماضية
yet	بعد	over the days/weeks/months /years /ages	عبر / على مدى
up till now	حتى الان	up to now /till now /until now	حتى الان
ever	من قبل	the recent hours / days /weeks /months / years	الفترة الحديثة
never	أبدا / مطلقا	throughout history	عبر التاريخ





note the following :

for	a long time	وقت طويل	since	date 2003	تاريخ في الماضي
فترة زمنية	so long	وقت طويل	بداية فترة زمنية	time 5 o'clock	الوقت
	ages , years , days	عصور / سنين		saturday , sunday	ايام الاسبوع
	two days , three weeks	يومان		morning	اوقات اليوم
	ever	للابد		breakfast , lunch	اسماء الوجبات
	a second, a moment	ثانية / لحظة		may , june , july	اسماء الشهور
	a while , a month , a year	فترة		winter , summer	الفصول
	a season , an hour	موسم / ساعة		last , yesterday	امس / السابق
	the last week	طوال الاسبوع الماضي		then	منذ ذلك الحين
	more than	لاكثر من		this morning	هذا الصباح
	a short time	لفترة قصيرة		his birth , death	ميلاده / موته
	several hours	عدة ساعات		the age of	عمر / سن

Synopsis

1- Since → Past Simple ماضى بسيط → Present Perfect. مضارع تام  
→ Present Perfect Continuous. مضارع تام مستمر

Present Perfect ← since → Past Simple ماضى بسيط

Perfect Continuous Present مضارع تام مستمر

Present Perfect ← since + past date. تاريخ من الماضي مضارع تام

It's + period of time + since → Past Simple. ماضى بسيط فترة زمنية

eg : She has been working in this school since she returned from abroad.

eg : He hasn't received any letters from her since she travelled abroad.

eg : It's a long time since we last met . It's five years since he visited us .

2- يمكن استخدام مدة زمنية بعد Since بشرط استخدام "ago" بعد المدة الزمنية:

eg: Since 5 years ago, we have founded our company.

We have founded our company since 5 years ago.

3-Since = because (فى المعنى)

He is tired since he has run all the way home

He is tired because he has been running for two hours.

4-Past Simple since then → Present Perfect. مضارع تام ماضى بسيط

→ Present Perfect Continuous مضارع تام مستمر

Mariam went to work in Alexandria since then I haven't received any letters from her.

نستخدم زمن المضارع التام مع This week/month/year مع المضارع التام و يستخدم الماضى البسيط مع This morning

5 - lately → negative → He hasn't visited me lately .  
→ Question → Has he visited you lately / recently?  
recently → affirmative → He has visited me recently.

نستخدم Lately فى حالتى النفى والسؤال بينما تستخدم recently مع الاثبات والسؤال .

6 - Ever → interrogative → Have you ever met her?  
Never → negative → I have never met her.



She is the most beautiful girl I have ever seen.  
I have never seen such a beautiful girl like her.

- 7- yet  $\begin{cases} \rightarrow \text{interrogative} & \rightarrow \text{has he arrived yet?} \\ & \rightarrow \text{Hasn't he arrived yet?} \\ \rightarrow \text{Negative} & \rightarrow \text{He hasn't arrived yet?} \end{cases}$

- 8 - It's + period of time since  $\rightarrow$  past simple  
e.g.: It's a long time since we last met. It's five years since he visited us.

- 9-  $\begin{cases} \text{has} \\ \text{have} \end{cases} \rightarrow \text{been to} = \text{visited and came back}$

e.g.: He has been to France = He visited France and came back.

$\begin{cases} \text{has} \\ \text{have} \end{cases} \rightarrow \text{gone to} = \text{went and hasn't come back yet or he is on his way to.}$

e.g.: He has gone to France = He is now in France.

10- نستخدم "for" مع الماض البسيط لتدل على فترة زمنية منتهية في الماضي.

eg: He wrote short stories for five years. Now he writes novels.

eg: I worked as a bus driver for ten years. Now I work as a salesman.

11- نستخدم المضارع التام مع التعبيرات الآتية

**It's the first time/This is the first time/It's the only**

eg: It's the first time I have met a celebrity.

It's the only occasion I have ever attended.

7- We use "Present Perfect" with time-expressions the (moment/minute/second) to express future.

بعد تعبيرات الزمن ليشير الى المستقبل.

eg: I'll contact you the minute I have reached a solution.

eg: I'll buy you a new dress the second I have got my salary.

8- نستخدم "already" في نهاية السؤال اذا كان المعنى دهشة.

Have you done your homework already? You can watch TV.

9- We use : just + Present Perfect.

but We use : just now + Past Simple.

A minute ago/ a short time ago/ a moment ago + Past Simple.

eg: He has just left for London.

eg: He left for London just now.

## زمن المضارع التام المستمر: The present perfect continuous tense

### 1) Form:

The active voice : has/have + been + v.ing.

The passive voice : has/have + been + p.p.

### 2) Usage:

\*يستخدم لوصف احداث بدأت في الماض و مازالت مستمرة في الوقت الحاضر و من المحتمل ان تبقى مستمرة في المستقبل.

eg: He has been working in this company for ten years now.

eg: She has been watching silly films all morning.

### 3) Key-markers:

All morning/Day/Evening/Night/Week/Month/Year.

Since,for + period of time now + still + all haven't finished yet.

eg: She has been cooking for three hours now and hasn't finished yet.

و لا يصح استخدامه مع افعال الحواس و افعال التفكير و افعال التواصل و افعال العاطفة و افعال الملكية و "be" مثل:

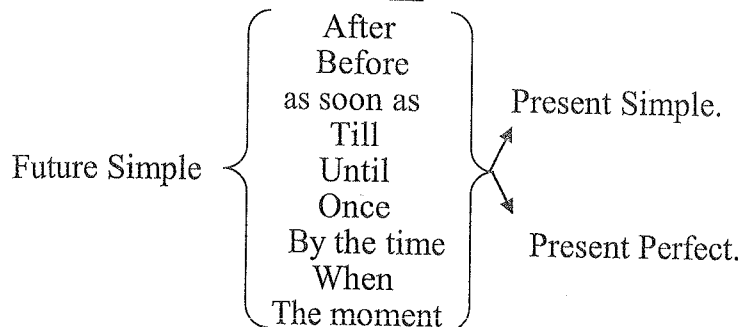




Surprise, like, dislike, have, enjoy, love, prefer, need, owe, cost, appear, mean, want, own, belong, include, fit, contain, be, sound, smell, look, taste, feel, hear, see, know, seem, realize, understand, remember, notice, think, believe.

eg : I have had this gadget since I got married      الماضى البسيط حدث تم فى وقت محدد فى الماضى

### In brief : how to choose:



eg: After they have left their work, they will watch the final match in the stadium.  
Once you have attended the conference, you will report your boss.

### \*\*\*Practice(5): ( Open Book Exercises: )\*\*\*

#### \*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- 1 - We haven't met since we ..... students at the same school.  
a) have been      b) are      c) were      d) had been
- 2 - How long ..... the guitar? - Since 5 o'clock.  
a) did you play      b) have you played      c) are you playing      d) were you playing
- 3 - Hany went out but he ..... yet?  
a) has returned      b) didn't return      c) hasn't returned      d) doesn't return
- 4 - I have already ..... my lessons.  
a) revise      b) revised      c) revising      d) was revising
- 5 - I have never ..... to the Egyptian museum.  
a) am      b) has      c) was      d) been
- 6 - We haven't gone to the club ..... the last winter.  
a) for      b) since      c) ago      d) ever
- 7 - He ..... me since he travelled to Jordan.  
a) hasn't phoned      b) phoned      c) doesn't phone      d) won't phone
- 8 - I ..... this tall man for seven days.  
a) have known      b) am knowing      c) know      d) knew
- 9 - She has ..... a new washing machine lately.  
a) bought      b) buys      c) had bought      d) was buying
- 10 - I ..... football since I was on holiday.  
a) didn't playing      b) haven't played      c) hadn't played      d) don't play
- 11 - He hasn't contacted me since he ..... abroad.  
a) travels      b) was traveling      c) had traveled      d) travelled
- 12 - ..... a mountain yet?  
a) Did you climb      b) Had you climbed      c) Do you climb      d) Have you climbed
- 13 - Samir ..... to Aswan and he is still there.  
a) has been      b) has gone      c) has done      d) is going
- 14 - Omar and Khalid ..... to Gamasa. Now, they are at home.  
a) have gone      b) went      c) have been      d) were
- 15 - Have you watched the match .....?  
a) yet      b) already      c) just      d) since



- 16 – I have..... seen such an amazing film.  
a) ever                      b) yet                      c) never                      d) for
- 17 – This is the most fantastic car I have..... seen.  
a) never                      b) ever                      c) yet                      d) since
- 18 – Mother hasn't finished preparing lunch.....  
a) ago                      b) yet                      c) already                      d) before
- 19 – They have..... played the semi – final.  
a) yet                      b) just                      c) before                      d) until
- 20 – Rady has gone fishing ..... two o'clock.  
a) since                      b) already                      c) never                      d) for
- 21 – We haven't visited Alex ..... three years.  
a) for                      b) already                      c) since                      d) ago
- 22 – They have stayed in Luxor ..... a month.  
a) since                      b) yet                      c) already                      d) for
- 23 – Have you ..... seen an exciting movie?  
a) never                      b) still                      c) ever                      d) since
- 24 – They have lived in Cairo..... 1995.  
a) ago                      b) since                      c) for                      d) already
- 25 – The plane has ..... taken off.  
a) yet                      b) ago                      c) already                      d) after
- 26-I ran ten kilometers and now my legs.....  
a) ache                      b-pains                      c-suffers                      d-hardens
- 27-You need a two-hour.....  
a-breaks                      b-break                      c-broke                      d-broken
- 28-There was a cruel..... between the policeman and the car owner.  
a-chatting                      b-chat                      c-chatted                      d-chats
- 29-The two friends hadn't seen each other for a long time and..... for hours.  
a-chatted                      b-cheating                      c-telling                      d-saying
- 30-There is a big.....for that new sports car.  
a-demand                      b-scarcity                      c-denote                      d-demolish
- 31-The teacher must encourage his students to communicate and to(take place–take-turns–take part–take after) in conversations.
- 32-I think what makes a job worthwhile if it is a (reward-rewarding-award-awarding) one.
- 33-He (did-made-explored-form) a plan for the lesson.
- 34-Adel hasn't contacted me since he (left-has left-had left-leaving) Cairo.
- 35-I haven't finished my work (already-recently-yet-just) .
- 36-(Association-Organization-Ministry-Corporation) is a government department.
- 37-A(lawyer-politician-diplomat-magician) is responsible for the people he or she represents and sometimes for making laws.
- 38-The football team are playing with a lot of (confident- confidence- laziness - carelessness) I think they are going to win !
- 39- Michael Morpurgo is a famous English writer. He(writes-wrote-has written-had written) many books for children.
- 40-I(had been studying-had studied-studied-have studied)English for five years.
- 41-I gave my self goals and plan how to(achieve – deal – feel – mean)them.
- 42-We could even have the lessons(indoors-inside-outside-indoor), under the trees.
- 43-I think to(system-discipline-order-deny) the students is the most important quality for a teacher.
- 44-I think doing something I enjoy is the(least-most-less-more)important in a job.





- 45-Tamer(had-had had-has had-is having)a lot of health problems since he started living in that polluted city.
- 46-We haven't travelled by train (since – for – all – whole ) years.
- 47-Ministry is a government ( apartment – sector – department – section ) .
- 48-To be(punctual-lazy-strict-active)is to make sure that people always obey rules.
- 49- Shakespeare's plays have been very (influence-influential-affect-impact) many writers have used his stories
- 50- Many of today's great writers (have also worked-had also worked-had also been working – also working) as teachers .
- 51- I have never(gone-done-made-played)Judo but I would like to do it , to defend my self.
- 52-Do you think so ?I have always prepared my lessons (well-bad-badly-good).
- 53-The students can sit in a circle or (diameter-semicircle – line – queue).
- 54-To plan is to think about (something-nothing-someone-some place)you want to do and how you will do it.
- 55- I completely agree that the teacher has to have all the qualities to be a good teacher to (reccive – achieve – believe – deceive) his goals.
- 56- I have(ever-still-nevertheless-never )been to the zoo before
- 57- Political science is the study of (laws-ideas –responsibilities-principles)and activities that are concerned with how a country is governed.
- 58-To teach someone to obey rules and control their behaviour is a(system-law-discipline-rule).
- 59-(Honour-Honoured-Honourable-Honouring)is something that makes you feel proud and happy.
- 60-Ali's grandfather was a doctor and later worked for the (department –sector – ministry-mission) of health.
- 61-It's two weeks since we last.....
- a) met                      b) had met                      c) meet                      d) are meeting
- 62-This is the most interesting book I have..... read.
- a) never                      b) ever                      c) yet                      d) already
- 63-Oh! I..... my passport. What should I do?
- a) lost                      b) lose                      c) have lost                      d) am losing
- 64-Tamer..... a lot of health problems since he started living
- a) had                      b) has                      c) had had                      d) has had
- 65-Adel hasn't contacted me since he..... Cairo.
- a) left                      b) leaves                      c) has left                      d) had left
- 66- I have..... been to the zoo before.
- a) ever                      b) never                      c) yet                      d) lately
- 67- My cousin..... abroad since his childhood.
- a) lives                      b) lived                      c) has lived                      d) had lived
- 68- Belal is not here. He.....to the dentist's.
- a) has been                      b) was going                      c) went                      d) has gone
- 69- Mona has studied English..... ten years.
- a) since                      b)for                      c)from                      d) ago
- 70- We have been at this school.....2012.
- a) for                      b) ago                      c) since                      d) before
71. ....means to make someone stop giving their opinions.
- a-Silence                      b-Serious                      c-Responsible                      d-Influential
72. ....is to make people obey rules and orders.
- a- Importance                      b- Injustice                      c- Disciplinc                      d- Ignorance



73. To.....a child is to let him have or do whatever they want.  
a-discipline      b-spoil      c-strict      d- modify
74. A teacher is like the.....of the earth.  
a-mountains      b-lays      c- pillars      d-layers
75. Omar is sensible and can be trusted. He is .....  
a-greedy      b-serious      c- responsible      d- irresponsible
76. Zahra is quiet and does not often laugh. She is .....  
a-serious      b- careless      c- humorous      d- delighted
- 77- The interviewer has just..... Abdel-Tawab Youssef.  
a-spoken to      b-seen by      c-asked by      d-read a book by
78. Abdel-Tawab Youssef studied.....science at Cairo University  
a- policy      b- political      c- social      d- literature
79. Teachers work for the Ministry of.....  
a-Education      b-Agriculture      c-Information      d-Culture
80. He wanted to live in Cairo so that he could send his sisters.....  
a-school      b-to school      c-a school      d-to the school
- 81- I've..... eaten Chinese food.  
a) ever      b) yet      c) ago      d) never
- 82- Have you..... ridden a camel?  
a) ever      b) yet      c) ago      d) never
- 83- Leila isn't here. She..... out.  
a) has gone just      b)has just gone      c)just goes      d) just gone
- 84- I..... a reply to my email yet.  
a) didn't receive      b)hadn't received      c) haven't received      d) don't receive
- 85- a. Many of today's great writers.....as teachers.  
a-have worked      b- had worked      c-also work      d-have been worked
- 86- He.....writing stories when he was a school teacher  
a-start      b- starting      c-is starting      d-started
- 87- He..... many awards for his stories.  
a-win      b-has won      c-has been won      d-was winning
- 88- When he was a teacher, he decided that he.....to become a writer.  
a- want      b- wants      c- wanted      d- has wanted
- 89- He.....many poems and plays.  
a-has written      b- has been written      c- write      d- had written
- 90-The War Horse..... into a successful film.  
a- be made      b-has made      c-had made      d has been made
- 91- The government.....a lot of fly-over bridges recently.  
a. has built      b. had built      c.was building      d. build
- 92- Ali is very happy. He.....a medal for writing poetry.  
a is winning      b. won      c.has won      d. had won
- 93- You needn't make food. I .....a good meal already.  
a. was cooking      b. have cooked      c.cooked      d. had cooked
- 94- I haven't met the minister..... It's the first time to meet him.  
a. ever      b. before      c.already      d never
- 95- My friend ..... a health problem since he started to smoke.  
a. has had      b. had had      c. had      d. has been
- 96-Have you finished doing the research? - Not .....  
a. ever      b. had had      c. had      d yet
- 97- My uncle .....as a taxi driver for ten years. Now, he is a worker in a big clothes factory.  
a. works      b.was working      c.has worked      d.worked





- 98- Ali has lived in Giza for 5 years. This means that he.....  
 a- lived there for 5 years only      b- started living there 5 years ago  
 c- hasn't lived there before      d- no longer lives there
- 99- Marwa hasn't bought the new clothes.....  
 a. yet      b. already      c. ago      d. since
- 100- A bad accident..... place on Cairo- Alex desert road.  
 a. took      b. has taken      c. has been taking      d. had taken
- 101- My pen friend arrived at Cairo Airport a moment ago. This means that he.....  
 a. has just arrived      b. just has arrived      c. hasn't arrived      d. will arrive
- 102- I haven't seen Mazen..... the last time we met in Alexandria.  
 a. while      b. when      c. for      d. since
- 103- My cousin has lived abroad ..... his childhood.  
 a since      b. for      c. while      d. when
- 104- It's two months since we..... our uncle in the village  
 a had visited      b. visited      c. have visited      d. visit
- 105- Sorry for being late, Sir. Please, let me in. I..... to the library.  
 a have been      b. have gone      c. was      d. had

**\*\*\*Practice(5): (Previous Exams Egypt, Sudan and Azhar:)\*\*\***

**\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\***

- 106- He..... the piano since he was eight  
 a. plays      b. is playing      c. has played      d. had played
- 107) We..... our old friends for a year They are too busy.  
 a. hadn't met      b. didn't meet      c. haven't met      d. haven't been met
- 108) After they..... the match, they will celebrate.  
 a. would win      b. have won      c. won      d. had won
- 109) We haven't seen him..... over a year.  
 a. since      b. for      c. from      d. in
- 110) It is a very trivial problem. You had better not attach great..... to this matter  
 a. importantly      b. import      c. importance      d. important
- 111)..... been to Aswan?  
 a. Had you ever      b. Have you ever      c. have you never      d. you have never
- 112) A long time has passed..... I saw him.  
 a. as long as      b. because      c. since      d. until
- 113) It ..... for the past three hours.  
 a. has rained      b. had rained      c. was raining      d. has been raining
- 114) They..... what to do for the holidays yet  
 a. hadn't decided      b. haven't decided      c. don't decide      d. You have never
- 115) This professor isn't popular. Very few students attend his..... at university.  
 a. lectures      b. wedding      c. funeral      d. birthday
- 116) How long..... studying English?  
 a. are you      b. were you      c. have you been      d. had you be
- 117) I..... to Alex. I came back.  
 a. was      b. have been      c. have gone      d. went
- 118) Seif isn't here. He..... to the club.  
 a. has been      b. has gone      c. had been      d. had gone
- 119) My grandmother..... to France lately.  
 a. is      b. will be      c. has been      d. is being
- 120) There is no doubt that the president has a great..... on the Egyptian society  
 a. effectively      b. influence      c. affect      d. lucky
- 121- I cannot ..... walking home in this hot weather.  
 a. afford      b. face      c. fine      d. fees



- 122- The shape of a week-old moon is (circle-diameter-square-semicircle).
- 123- The practice of making people obey rules and orders is called (order-command-Conduct-discipline).
- 124- Behaviour that is typical of a kind or concerned father is (fatherhood-fatherly- cruel- father).
- 125- One of several levels of different materials that are on top of each other is known as a (lawyer-layer-slice-piece of).
- 126- A (principle-responsible-irresponsible-irritable) is someone who is responsible and can be trusted.
- 127- The (ache-relief-relax-pain) in my legs is getting better since I have rested.
- 128- To make this cake, you must (be broken-break-broke-are broken) two eggs into the bowl.
- 129- We have a (broke-break-broken-breaks) after this English lesson.
- 130- Call me on the phone and we can have a (cheat-check-chat-cheap).
- 131- The teacher (demanded-demolished-demonstrated-deleted) that the students stopped talking.
- 132- The baby has a beautiful (faced-face-fees-feed).
- 133- The verb to make someone stop giving their opinions is to (quit-silence-silent-quiet).
- 134- When you let a child do whatever they want, with the result that they behave badly is to (spill-spoil-corrupt-conduct) them.
- 135- To be (serious-punctual-respectable-respectful) is to be quiet and does not often laugh

### **Homework: Open Book Practice**

**1) \*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\***

- ❖ 1- Leaving lights always on is an /a (respectable-responsible-irresponsible-irritable) behaviour.
- ❖ 2- A (vitae-votes-vet-vote) is a doctor who treats animals.
- ❖ 3- The (demand-asking-inquiry-request) on the new mobile was out of expectation.
- ❖ 4- Young people spend a lot of time (cheating-chatting-shutting-shouting) on the internet.
- ❖ 5- The earth consists of many ( layers-liars-lawyers-lowers)
- ❖ 6- I (want-have wanted-wanted-was wanting) to be a doctor since I was ten.
- ❖ 7- Many people (studied-had studied-were studying-have studied) it since it was written in the 1980s.
- ❖ 8- What is the (difference -same-safety-different) in meaning between where and wear?
- ❖ 9- Hala used her new camera yesterday. She (had already taken-has already taken-already takes-already took) 300 photos with it.
- ❖ 10- Fawzi (has been-is-was-is being) to Luxor but he has never been to Aswan.
- ❖ 11- I'm trying to be healthy. I (didn't eat-hadn't eaten-haven't eaten-don't eat ) ice cream for one month.
- ❖ 12- Have you ( never been-yet been-always been-ever been) in a plane?
- ❖ 13- Since I started the job, I (have met-had met -met-meeting) important people from all over the world.
- ❖ 14- You look pale. (Has anything happened-Will anything happen- Had anything happened-Was anything happening) to you?
- ❖ 15- It's years since we (played-have played-play-have been playing) football together.
- ❖ 16- This is the first time we ( had been-have been-went-was going) to a theatre.
- ❖ 17- We haven't seen him (late-later-already-lately).





- ❖ 18- We haven't seen him ( since-for-from-in) over a year.
- ❖ 19- A long time has passed ( as long as-because-since-until) I saw him.
- ❖ 20-They ( hadn't decided-haven't decided -don't decide-won't decide) what to do for the holidays yet.
- ❖ 21-Mr Youssef set up an(association-bookshop-library-opera) to help children in 1968.
- ❖ 22-Ali's grandfather was a doctor and worked for the (ministry-trade-embassy-factory)of health.
- ❖ 23-The teacher told us about the( ugliness-importance-uselessness-worthless)of revising before the exam.
- ❖ 24-The tourists went on a(industrial-tiny-agricultural-cultural)tour of Egypt, visiting all the sites.
- ❖ 25-My history teacher(influence-influencing -influenced-influential)my decision to become a teacher, too.
- ❖ 26-Mona's uncle is an expert on science and often(lectures-structures -attracts-attaches) at the university.
- ❖ 27-Shakespeare's plays have been very (furless-bitter-useless-influential) many writers have used his stories.
- ❖ 28-The football team are playing with a lot of (inconfidence-confident-confidential-confidence)I think they are going to win!
- ❖ 29-Don't lose those forms. They are very (bad-unimportant-useless-important).
- ❖ 30.Since he.....famous in Egypt, people have translated his books into many languages.  
a) becomes                      b) has become                      c) became                      d) was becoming
- ❖ 31-Teaching is the profession of prophets, a teacher has the.....of being called"so".  
a) shame                      b) blame                      c) honour                      d) degradation
- ❖ 32-A traffic policeman should be ..... with law breakers.  
a) strict                      b) flexible                      c) kind                      d) forgivable
- ❖ 33-Nana has lived in this villa ..... many years.  
a) since                      b) for                      c) in                      d) ago
- ❖ 34- Life in the countryside is enjoyable, it is really .....  
a) quite                      b) silent                      c) quiet                      d) quietness
- ❖ 35- After the rain, water ..... in the river rises.  
a) level                      b) standard                      c) top                      d) cover
- ❖ 36- I've ..... met such a careful driver like him .  
a) never                      b) ever                      c) already                      d) just
- ❖ 37- A successful leader ..... his fellows goals to achieve.  
a) forms                      b) gives                      c) gifts                      d) makes
- ❖ 38- It's the fastest plane man has ..... invented  
a) ever                      b) yet                      c) already                      d) never
- ❖ 39- I suggested ..... an association to defend our rights  
a) giving up                      b) waking                      c) setting up                      d) getting up
- ❖ 40- We should ..... something to keep our town clean and beautiful  
a) have                      b) give                      c) make                      d) do
- ❖ 41) Martial arts teach young men respect..... and co-operation.  
a. honest                      b. system                      c. discipline                      d. selfishness
- ❖ 42) The moon was shining through a thin..... of cloud.  
a. liar                      b. layer                      c. lawyer                      d. lower
- ❖ 43) The police believe that the same man is..... for three other murders.  
a. suitable                      b. responsibility                      c. cause                      d. responsible
- ❖ 44) I have terrible news but I don't want to.....your joy.  
a. spell                      b. pull                      c. soil                      d. spoil



- ❖ 45) Parents should be flexible with children. They shouldn't be so.....
  - a. co-operative      b. strict      c. respected      d. helpful
- ❖ 46) I always give my students..... advice.
  - a. feather      b. father      c. fatherly      d. grandfather
- ❖ 47) I don't know the.....of "Oliver Twist" but I am sure he will be a great writer.
  - a. author      b. publisher      c. producer      d. director
- ❖ 48) To win the next match, we need someone who can.....our team.
  - a. hinder      b. inspire      c. discourage      d. prevent
- ❖ 49) The two groups are almost the same but the only..... is their age.
  - a. differ      b. differently      c. difference      d. different
- ❖ 50) Ali is not here. He..... to the baker's,
  - a. went      b. gone      c. has gone      d. has be

### ***B Reading Comprehension:***

#### ✓ ***1-Read the passage and answer the questions below***

Dolphins have become a popular attraction at zoos in recent years. They are more interesting than lions and tigers because they are livelier حيوية and perform tricks, like circus animals. But although they are more willing to cooperate with the trainer than other mammals in captivity, they get bored if they are asked to do the same trick twice. This is one reason for believing that they are very intelligent.

Dolphins are regarded as the friendliest creatures in the sea and stories of them helping drowning sailors have been common since Roman times. We now have more reliable evidence of their usefulness than sailors' tales. In South Africa, two dolphins have been trained to help swimmers in difficulties and drive sharks away from the beach. The more we learn about dolphins, the more we realize that they are better organized and their society is more complex than people previously imagined.

They look after other dolphins when they are ill, care for pregnant mothers and protect the weakest in the community, as we do. Some scientists have suggested that dolphins have a language but it is much more probable that they communicate with each other without words. They have an echo-location system which is similar to a bat's and much more sensitive than our hearing, so the most important task of a dolphin's brain is to transmit and receive sound.

#### ✓ ***1-Choose the correct answer***

1. Dolphins understand each other.....
  - a) using words      b) using signals      c) using dances      d) using echo
2. In their community, dolphins behave like.....
  - a) other fish      b) sharks      c) human-beings      d) fierce animals
3. A dolphin is a friend to.....
  - a) sailors      b) whales      c) hunters      d) environment)
- 4- Dolphins are helpful because .....
  - a) They help drwoning sailors.      b) help swimmers in difficulties.
  - c) drive sharks away from the beach.      d) they do the three all.
- 5-Using echo-location system Dolphins:.....
  - a) connect with each other.      b) communicate with each other.
  - c) send they emails.      d) participate in human-beings life.
- 6- Dolphins are :..... lions and tigers.
  - a) more interesting than.      b) less interesting then.
  - c) as interesting as      d) so interesting as





✓ **2-Answer Two of the following questions :**

- 7-Paraphrase this sentence : Dolphins have become a popular attraction at zoos in recent years. They are more interesting than lions and tigers because they are livelier and perform tricks, like circus animals.
- 8 - In one sentence of your own, give the main idea of the third paragraph.
- 9 - Why do people, at zoos, like to see dolphins?
- 10-What makes a dolphin feel bored?

**3) Translation: A) Translate into Arabic :**

- 1-The internet has been the most outstanding innovation in the field of communication in the history of mankind. It has brought the globe in a single unit. Right from news across the corners of the world, wealth of knowledge to shopping is at your finger tips.
- 2-Co-operation among nations of the world will result in spreading peace and security.They should help each other to improve the living conditions of their people.
- 3.Learning foreign languages needs never stop. One should not learn a foreign language merely to achieve an immediate professional or academic aim and then give it up. He should carry on learning, as it is a valuable experience that enriches his life.

**B) Translate into English:**

- 1- يعتبر محمد ابو تريكة مثل طيب للشباب بسبب تواضعه و أخلاقه الحميدة.
- 2- إن الشخص المتفائل غالبا ما يلتزم بعملة على عكس الشخص المتشائم.
- 3- ليست الحرية أن تعمل ما تحب و إنما أن تعمل ما يجب عمله.
- 4- استغل المصريون القدماء التخطيط للحفاظ على أجساد ملوكهم بحالة جيدة.
- 5- التعلم مدى الحياة شعار تبنته كل دول العالم بما فيها مصر.

**4) Write a reply to the following email in 180 words:**

Advise your friend about where to look for information, places in Egypt that archaeologists have worked on recently, similar projects and books or magazines that you have studied that might be useful. We are doing a project about archaeology in Egypt and I'd really like to know more about your country's history. I may be able to visit Egypt later in the year, but at the moment I'm too busy with school work. Is there anywhere you would advise me to look for information? Are there any good websites that you know about, or maybe books? I'm especially interested in any recent findings.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Best wishes,



# Unit 3

## Women in history

### 1 – Important vocabulary & derivatives:

appreciate (v)	يقدر / يقيم	positive (adj)	إيجابي
appreciative (adj)	شاكر / ممتن	positively (adv)	بإيجابية
appreciatively(adv)	بامتنان	licence (n)	رخصة / تصريح
award	يمنح جائزة	license (d) (v)	يرخص / يجيز
nursing (n)	التمريض	licensed (adj)	مرخص له
nurse (d) (v),(n)	تمرض / ممرضة	inspector (n)	مفتش / معاين
Nursing school	مدرسة تمريض	inspection (n)	تفتيش / معاينة
encourage (d) (v)	يشجع	inspect (ed) (v)	يفتش / يعاين
encouragement	تشجيع	career	حياة مهنية أو عملية
encouraging (adj)	مشجع	director	مدير / مخرج
popular with(adj)	محبوب من	degree	درجة علمية
impressive (adj)	مؤثر / مثير للأعجاب	Research assistant	باحث مساعد / معيد
impression (n)	انطباع / تأثير	Respected teacher	مدرس محترم
impressively (adv)	بصورة مؤثرة	Respectful	محترم للآخرين
Impressed (adj)	متأثر / مؤثر فيه	respectable	محترم لمكانته
Impress (v)	يبهر / يعجب	argue (d) for (v)	يجادل من أجل
suitable (adj)	مناسب / ملائم	argument (n)	جدال / مناقشة
suit (ed) (v)	يناسب / يلائم	argumentative (adj)	جدلي / محب للجدل
suitably (adv)	بصورة ملائمة	government	حكومة
suitability	ملائمة	solo	مفرد
role	دور	solo flight (n)	رحلات طيران فردية
rule (d) (v)	يحكم	personal (adj)	شخصي
ruler (n)	حاكم	personally (adv)	على نحو شخصي
effect	تأثير	personnel	خاص بشئون الموظفين
effective (adj)	مؤثر / فعال	(be) in charge of	مسئول عن
effectively (adv)	بفاعلية	cleanliness	النظافة
compassion	عطف	hygiene (n)	نظافة شخصية
effectiveness	فاعلية	reference	مرجع
flight	رحلة طيران	interpret	يفسر
staff	طاقم – فريق	equipment	معدات
qualification (n)	تأهيل	interpret (ed) (v)	يفسر
qualified (adj)	مؤهل	interpretation (n)	تفسير
wounded (adj)	مصاب / مجروح	interpreter (n)	مترجم فوري
wound (ed) (v), (n)	يجرح / جرح	train (ed) (v)	يتدرب
inspire (v)	يحث / يلهم	training (n)	تدريب
inspiration (n)	الهام	social (adj)	اجتماعي (للمجتمع)
practice (n)	تدريب / ممارسة	sociable (adj)	اجتماعي (للشخص)
practise (d)	يتدرب / يمارس	apologize (d)	يعتذر
are shipwrecked(adj)	تخطمت سفينتهم	apology (n)	اعتذار





## 2 – Check Your Vocabulary :

break the record(v)	يحطم الرقم القياسي	(be) in charge of(v)	مسئول عن
degree (n)	درجة علمية	treatment (n)	علاج
well-known(adj)	معروف	determined (adj)	عائد العزم ، مصمم
questionnaire (n)	استفتاء	grow up (v)	ينمو ، يكبر
admire (v)	يعجب بـ	role (n)	دور
interrupt (v)	يقاطع	literature (n)	الأدب
take up (v)	يشغل	graduation (n)	التخرج
responsibility (n)	مسئولية	certificate (n)	شهادة
cruel (adj)	قاسي	research (n)	بحث
flying (n)	طيران	permission (n)	إذن تصريح
staff (n)	هيئة الموظفين	private (adj)	خاص ، خصوصي
the pacific ocean(n)	المحيط الهادي	educate (v)	يُعلم
cleanliness (n)	النظافة	a long distance (n)	مسافة طويلة
position (n)	مكانة ، منزلة	wealthy (adj)	ثري ، غني
the second world war	الحرب العالمية الثانية	flight (n)	رحلة طيران
island (n)	جزيرة	qualities (n)	صفات
articles (n)	مقالات	occupation (n)	مهنة ، وظيفة
equipment (n)	معدات	nationality (n)	جنسية
suitable (adj)	مناسب ، ملائم	introduce (v)	يقدم ، يدخل

## ✓ 3-Tapescript (Text A):-

**Narrator:** Dr Aisha Abd El-Rahman, who is known **as Bint El-Shatei**, is one of the most famous people in Egyptian and Arab culture. **الثقافة** As well as **بالإضافة الى** writing books on society and culture, she also wrote poems and for fifty years **wrote for** the newspaper Al Ahram. During her life, **she helped to improve** women's position in Egyptian society. Dr Aisha was born in 1913. Her father was an important man and Dr Aisha used to go with him to meetings, at which **اللي** she learned to read and write. At a time when many girls didn't go to school, Aisha's mother encouraged **شجعت** her daughter to get a good education and, as a result, Aisha started school at the age of **في سن** five.

**Dr Aisha was successful at school and went to Cairo University, where she studied Arabic language and literature.** **الادب** **She was awarded** **منحت** **her degree** **درجتها العلمية** **in 1939 and then joined the university staff** **هيئة العاملين** **as a research assistant.** **معيدة** **In 1942, she was employed** **وظفت** **as a government inspector** **مفتشة حكومية** **for the teaching of Arabic literature.** Using the name Bint El-Shatei, Dr Aisha wrote many books and articles **مقالات** in which **اللي** **she argued** **جادلت** **for** **من اجل** a more positive role **دور ايجابي** for women in the modern world. Dr Aisha **was a respected teacher** **معلمة محترمة** and taught at **درست في** many universities across the Arab world. With her husband professor Amin El-Kholy, Dr Aisha spent holidays visiting European museums, universities and libraries. Dr Aisha died in 1998 at the age of eighty-five. Her work, which had taken up **شغل** much of her personal life, **حياتها الشخصية** is still appreciated today. **مازال يقدر الى اليوم.**



### ✓ 4-Tapescript (Text B):-

Girl 1	:	There's a report in the newspaper which says that it is easier for women to get good jobs now.
Girl 2	:	That's really good news, رائعة! isn't it? I'm sure that we can get a really good job when we finish studying.
Boy 1	:	I was very worried about the exam last week, but I've just found out that I did very well. I was first in the class.
Boy 2	:	Wow! That's brilliant! هذا رائع Well done. حسنا فعلت
Boy 3	:	I'm starting a new sport at the sports club next week . I'm learning karate. I'm really looking forward to it. اتطلع لذلك
Boy 4	:	What a great idea! فكرة عظيمة! May be I'll learn karate too.
Woman	:	Hi, Nadia. You're going to have a new cousin. I have just heard that I'm going to have a baby! تلد طفلا! I'm over the moon! سعيدة جدا!
Girl 3	:	Wonderful news! رائعة! I can't tell you how happy that makes me.
Girl 4	:	Look! I've been accepted قبلت at Cairo University. I can study English there! I can't wait to start! لا استطيع الانتظار
Girl 5	:	That's fantastic! هذا رائع

### ✓ 5- Reading

#### Florence Nightingale

Florence Nightingale was born in 1820 into a wealthy family في اسرة غنية and grew up كبرت in Italy, but went to school in England. When she was 17, she decided that she wanted to be a nurse, although her family did not think that this was a suitable job for their young daughter. However, Florence's work in a London hospital was so effective مؤثر that the British government asked her to be in charge of the nursing of wounded soldiers الجرحى abroad. في الخارج After working in Europe, she returned to England and opened the Nightingale School of Nursing in London, the first school of this kind.

#### Lotfia El Nadi

In 1932, Lotfia El Nadi was the first and only woman to join a new school for pilots at Almaza airport. Her parents did not want her to be a pilot, so El Nadi worked as a secretary at the airport to pay for her lessons. When she was only 26, El Nadi became the first woman in Egypt to have a pilot's licence. رخصة قيادة In December 1933, she became famous when she flew solo منفردة in an international race, which went from Cairo to Alexandria. في سباق دولي

She was only the second woman ever to fly like this. El Nadi, who had to stop flying after an accident, died in 2002 aged 94. However, her achievements انجازاتها encouraged شجعت other women to have a career المهنة in flying. For example, in 1944, Linda Masoud became the first woman teacher at the flying school مدرسة الطيران and Aziza Moharam later became a director مديرة there.

### ✓ 6- Main Points :

- 1-Florence Nightingale was born in 1820 into في a wealthy family in Italy, but grew up and went to school in England.
- 2-Florence's work in a London hospital was so effective that the British government asked her to be in charge of the nursing of wounded مجروح soldiers abroad.





- 3-At a time when many girls didn't go to school, Aisha's mother encouraged her daughter to get a good education تعليم جيد and , as a result, Aisha started school بدأت دراسته at the age of five.
- 4-Using the name Bint El-Shatei , Dr Aisha wrote many books and articles in which she argued for يجادل من أجل a more positive role for women in the modern world.
- 5-Dr Aisha died in 1998 at the age of eighty-five . Her work, which had taken up يشغل وقت أو مكان (حيز) much of her personal life , is still appreciated today.

### \*\*\*Practice(1)Test Your Vocabulary\*\*\*

\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

1. Father put Bilal in ..... of fixing the car.  
a) role                                      b) licence                                      c) responsibility                                      d) charge
2. Salma thought this was a .....gift for her teacher.  
a) suitable                                      b) effective                                      c) charge                                      d) solo
3. Hesham has just got his driving ....., and already he wants to buy a car.  
a) flight                                      b) role                                      c) licence                                      d) degree
4. Rania is optimistic. She always has a .....attitude and thinks everything will turn out well.  
a) impressive                                      b) personal                                      c) encouraging                                      d) positive
5. Mr Selim is an.....manager because he is a good listener.  
a) observing                                      b) effective                                      c) admissions                                      d) enjoyable
6. Mr Maged .....all his students to do the best that they can do.  
a) argues for                                      b) effects                                      c) encourages                                      d) impresses
7. Farouk is flying..... for the first time tomorrow. He'll have no co-pilot.  
a) role                                      b) suits                                      c) licence                                      d) solo
8. For my own ..... satisfaction, I paint or read in my spare time.  
a) positive                                      b) personal                                      c) degree                                      d) role
9. Omar has received a master's..... in conservation management.  
a) effect                                      b) flight                                      c) degree                                      d) licence
- 10 Yusuf's ability to speak French and German is very ..... Many companies will want to hire him.  
a) impressive                                      b) personal                                      c) suitable                                      d) solo

### Student's Book & Workbook

\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- ❏ 11-We were (wanted- encouraged- practiced- discouraged) to learn foreign languages at school.
- ❏ 12-The government has(argued-discussed-rule-complained) for its right to restore the smuggled funds.
- ❏ 13-The media play a major(role-rule-function-roller) in influencing people's opinions.
- ❏ 14-My brother has a(grade-style-degree-mark)in Biochemistry from Alex University.
- ❏ 15-A school(delegation-representation-student-inspector)is visiting our school to evaluate the standard of educational process.
- ❏ 16-Advocating women's rights took up much of Dr. Aisha's (private- special- personal- personnel) life.
- ❏ 17-Queen Victoria(ruled-argued-rolled-run) England for more than 63 years.
- ❏ 18-She joined the faculty of Arts to study English(letters-literature- novels-stories) and language.
- ❏ 19-Women play a(positive-optimistic-efficient-impressed) role in deciding the future of their country.



- ✂ 20-He is working as a(search-exploring-research-risking)scientist in the field of bacteriology.
- ✂ 21-Florence was asked to be in charge of(wounded-wind-wound- wounding) soldiers abroad.
- ✂ 22-Florence opened the Nightingale (nursery-nurse-nursing-nursed) school in England.
- ✂ 23-Once Nightingale was born into a(colourful-influence-bountiful-wealthy) family.
- ✂ 24-When she was 17 . She was (determined-decided-wanted-intended)to be a nurse.
- ✂ 25-Amy Johnson tried to break the(document-number-record-award)for a solo flight.
- ✂ 26-Amy Johnson became very (popular -talented-interested-common)with the British people.
- ✂ 27-Amy was killed in a plane(launch-destruction -crash-crunch) in 1941.
- ✂ 28-She was so(effective-impressed-affective-impressive)at the interview that she was accepted immediately.
- ✂ 29-Hospitals have greatly(cleaned-proved-improved-installed)since the days when Florence was living.
- ✂ 30-Everybody must concern about their personal(cleaning-cleanliness-clearance-cleansing).
- ✂ 31-Poor standards of(cleaning-salutation-sanitation-hygiene)mean that diseases spread fast.
- ✂ 32-The efforts of Dr. Aisha are still(expected-appreciated-demanding-applied) today.
- ✂ 33-The government must adopt a sound economic policy to (improve -provide -supply-improvise) people's standard of living.
- ✂ 34-I won't take(down-in-over-up) any more of your time. Just two questions.
- ✂ 35-Nightingale(introduced -produced-induced- reduced) new ideas into hospitals

### ✓ 7-Definitions :-

1-	<b>argue for</b>	:	explain why something should be done	يؤيد فكرة
2-	<b>appreciate</b>	:	like the good qualities or value of something	يقدّر - يَفْقَهُم
3-	<b>award</b>	:	give a prize to someone who has achieved something	يمنح - جائزة
4-	<b>government</b>	:	the group of people who control a country or state	الحكومة
5-	<b>positive</b>	:	have a good effect	إيجابي
6-	<b>role</b>	:	the position that someone has in an activity or situation	دور
7-	<b>respected</b>	:	admired by many people because of achievements, skills etc.	متميز
8-	<b>career</b>	:	a job or profession you have trained for and intend to do for a long time	الحياة المهنية
9-	<b>(be in) charge of</b>	:	be the person who is responsible for something or someone	مسئول عن
10	<b>director</b>	:	someone who controls or manages a company, organization or activity.	مدير - مخرج
11	<b>impressive</b>	:	making you admire something	مثير للإعجاب
12	<b>licence</b>	:	official document that gives permission to do something	رخصة
13	<b>nursing</b>	:	a job of looking after people who are ill	تمريض
14	<b>solo</b>	:	done on your own, without help from another person	منفرد
15	<b>suitable</b>	:	right in a particular situation	ملائم - مناسب





## ✓ 8- Phrases, Expressions and Idioms:

1) Get/have a good education	يحصل علي تعليم جيد
2) be well educated	يحصل علي تعليم جيد
3) make you happy	تجعلك سعيدا
4) The person in charge	الشخص المسئول
5) joined the university staff as a research assistant	انضمت الي هيئة التدريس كمعيد
6) Fly solo	يقوم برحلات جويه فرديه
7) do a survey	يجري استطلاع رأي
8) was born into a wealthy family	ولد في عائله ثريه
9) pioneering spirit	روح قياديه
10) well-training nursing staff	هيئه تمريض مدربه جيدا
11) ship wrecked	تخطمت سفينتهم
12) in detail	بالتفصيل
13) have a bad effect on	له تاثير سيئ علي
14) be over the moon=very happy	سعيد جدا
15) spend time	يقضي الوقت في
16) across the Arab world	عبر العالم العربي
17) Introduce new ideas	يقدم افكارا جديده
18) appreciative of	مقدر لـ
19) be awarded a degree	منح درجه علميه
20) famous crime writer	كاتب مشهور في قصص الجريمه
21) political matters	موضوعات سياسيه
22) have a career in flying	تعمل بمهنه الطيران
23) write books on	يؤلف كتب عن
24) be better known to – as	معروفه جيدا لـ
25) mark an important event	يميز حدث هام
26) Introduced new ideas into hospitals	ادخلت افكار جديده للمستشفيات
27) do most of the cooking	تقوم بمعظم اعمال الطبخ
28) find information about	يجد معلومات عن
29) make solo flights	يقوم برحلات جويه فرديه
30) Improve woman's position in society	تحسين وضع المراه في المجتمع
31) be in control of	متحكم في/مسيطر علي
32) For a particular purpose	بغرض معين
33) Take a risk	يقوم بمخاطره
34) dangerous war zone	منطقه ضرب خطيره
35) be awarded her pilot's license	منحت رخصه الطيران
36) lose her life	تفقد حياتها
37) have the same ability to + inf.	لهم نفس القدره علي
38) Explain why something is true	يوضح لماذا شئ ما صح
39) taken up much of	استنفذ وقت كبير من
40) at a time	في وقت ما
41) be done on your own	تفعله بمفردك
42) as well as=besides=in addition to	بالاضافه الي
43) nursing soldiers abroad	تمريض الجنود بالخارج



44) Positive role	دور ايجابي
45) have access to	يكون علي اتصال بـ
46) stop flying	تعزل الطيران
47) well – behaved children	اطفال سلوكهم جيد
48) care for woman's rights	تهتم بحقوق المرأة
49) get on well	يتوافق مع/ينسجم مع

## ✓ 9-Language Notes :

### [1] Expressions with "get"

- 1) get = catch يصاب بـ eg: she was in bed because she got a cold.
- 2) get = obtain يحصل على eg: The police must get an answer to all questions by Friday.
- 3) Get = buy يشتري eg: My car is very old. I need to get a new one
- 4) Get = understand يفهم eg: I got your words clearly
- 5) Get = become يصبح eg: put your cat on, it's getting very cold outside
- 6) Get = reach يصل الى eg: He got home in time. She was about to leave
- 7) Get = hit يضرب eg: The thief got the door strongly to open it
- 8) Get = have يمتلك eg: He got a very nice villa
- 9) Get = receive يستقبل eg: She got a letter from him yesterday.
- 10) Get = hear يسمع eg: Would you raise your voice, I can't get a word
- 11) Get = prepare يجهز eg: What a nice smell! My mother is getting lunch
- 12) Get = fetch يذهب ويحضّر eg: She fainted. I'll get a doctor
- 13) Get = achieve يحقق / ينجح eg: She got the best mark in the exam.
- 14) Get = persuade يقنع eg: I got her to change her mind.

### [2] \*\* Degree - grade - licence

- \*\* Degree درجة الحرارة/درجة علمية/مؤهل جامعي  
eg: Water freezes at 32 degrees Fahrenheit. -He got a university degree.
- \*\* Grade: مستوي / صف دراسي / درجة امتحان  
eg: My sister is in the fourth grade. -Your grade in math is impressive.
- \*\* Graded "adj." مدرج  
The standard of students is graded.
- \*\* Licence "n" رخصة  
My son could get a pilot's licence.

### [3] \*\* Respect - respected - respectful - respectable

- \*\* Respect "n" "v" يحترم - احترام  
eg: You must respect your elders.
- \*\* respected محترم "لأعماله/إنجازاته"  
eg: Dr. Aisha was a respected teacher and taught at many universities.
- \*\* respectable محترم "لسلوكه/لمكانته/لعائلته"  
eg: All my friends come from respectable families.
- \*\* respectful "adj." يتصرف باحترامه تجاه الآخرين  
eg: Students should always be respectful towards their teachers.

### [4] \*\* Arab - Arabic - Arabian

- \*\* Arabian عربي منسوب الي العرب/جنسيته عربي  
eg: Arabian camel / shield الطراز العربي / الدرع العربي  
The Arabian gulf / coffee بحر العرب / الخليج العربي / القهوة العربي
- \*\* Arabic "language/literature/culture" تصف الادب و اللغة و الثقافة
- \*\* Arab: "Person/people/country/region" المنطقة/ الامه/ الدول/ الشعوب/ تصف الاشخاص العرب





## [5] Inspector - investigator - conductor - detective

**Inspector** مفتش/مراقب "التأكد من القيام بالعمل"

Dr. Aisha was employed as a government inspector for the teaching of Arabic literature.

**\* Investigator** محقق/مفتش "يحقق في الجرائم و الحوادث"

eg: The investigator can't get to a clue to solve the mystery of the crime.

**\* Conductor** كمساري "مفتش القطار/الاتوبيس"

eg: I lost my ticket so, the conductor asked me to pay in cash.

**\*\* Defective**

مخبر سري

## [6] argue/for/about/with/against

**\*\* Argue**

He argued me a lot to convince me.

يجادل/يناقش بشده

**\*\* Argue for**

Dr. Aisha argued for "advocated/supported/promoted" a good position for women in society.

يجادل من اجل/مجادل مؤيدا

**\*\* Argue about:**

eg: All the players argue about the style of playing.

يجادل بخصوص

**\*\* Argue with**

eg: You always argue with me, I hate you.

تجادل مع

**\*\* Argue against**

Many people argue against the project as a whole.

تجادل معارضا

## [7] \*\* Permission - permit - license - allowance

**\*\* Permission**

The manager gave her permission to leave early.

اذن - تصريح "موافقه/رضا" "لا يعد"

**\*\* Permit**

eg: Rassendyll needs a permit to leave the city.

تصريح مكتوب رسمي "يعد"

**\*\* Licence**

eg: You need a driving license to drive a car.

رخصه "تصريح بالقيادة"

**\*\* Allowance**

eg: He got a weekly allowance for his great efforts in this field.

علاوه/مصرف/سماح

## [8] work as - work for - work out - work on

**\*\* work as**

eg: He works in this bank as the director.

يعمل كـ "وظيفة/منصب"

**\*\* work for**

eg: He works for an established company.

يعمل لحساب/لدي

**\*\* work out**

eg: It needs a lot of effort and time to work the mystery out.

يحل/يجد الحل/يحسب/يتدرب بانتظام

**\*\* Work on**

eg: My father is abroad, he works on a new business.

يحسن/يطور/يصلح/يقنع شخص

## [9] \*\* Solo "adj."

eg: Lotfia El Nadi made a solo flight from Cairo to Alexandria.

منفرد "تستخدم قبل الاسم فقط"

**\*\* Solo "adv."**

eg: She flew solo in an international race.

بمفرده "تستخدم بعد الفعل"

**\*\* Solo "n"**

eg: Her first solo will be next Friday

عمل او مقطوعه يؤديها الشخص بمفرده

**\*\* Soloist "n"**

eg: He is a talented soloist. He is the best to play the piano.

عازف يقوم بالعزف منفردا

**\*\* Solo → Soloed → soloed "v"**

The musician soloed fantastically

يقود منفردا  
يعزف منفردا



**[10] alone = on his own "adj." "adv."**

بمفرده

eg: He lives in this big flat alone.

**\*\* Lonely**

يشعر بالوحده

eg: He felt lonely after his wife's death.

**[11] Tour – picnic – flight – trip – journey, voyage, cruise**

**\*\* Tour**

جوله "سياحيه – تعليميه"

eg: He went on a tour round the world.

**\*\* Picnic**

نزهه خلويه

He took his family to a picnic.

**\*\* Flight**

رحله جويه

The flight from Cairo to Paris took four hours.

**\*\* Cruise**

رحله بحريه للترفيه

My last cruise cost me a lot of money.

**\*\* Voyage**

رحله بحريه

It will be a nice voyage. The sea is calm.

**\*\* Trip**

رحله قصيره

Our school arranged a trip to Cairo tower.

**\*\* journey**

رحله بريه / رحله فضائيه / رحله طويله

He went on a journey to the moon.

**[12] \*\* Wear – put on – dress – dress in**

**\*\* Wear → object**

يرتدي / يلبس "مرتديا بالفعل"

She was wearing a red dress when I met her

**\*\* Put on + object**

يقوم بارتداء

Put on your clothes, we need to hurry.

**\*\* Dress**

يلبس / يرتدي / يلبس شخص اخر

eg: He dressed his son the school uniform.

**\*\* Dress in**

يرتدي / يلبس

eg: The woman dressed in black, is my mother.

**[13] \*\* sail / drive / fly / ride**

\* sail – يبحر – A ship / a boat / a steamer

\* drive – يقود – A car / a train / an underground train / an ambulance

\* fly – يطير – A plane / a rocket

\* ride a bike / a horse / a camel

**[14] Adverbs + sentence**

Personally بصفه شخصيه

Interestingly بشكل مثير للاهتمام

Undoubtedly يقينا بلا شك

Unfortunately لسوء الحظ

+ Sentence

eg: Personally, I think you are quite mistaken.

eg: Undoubtedly, we all owe to our country.

**[15] On time:**

في الوقت المحدد بالضبط She came on time

in time: تشير الى

قبل الوقت المحدد She came in time

at a time:

الماضي في ذلك الوقت – ذات مره

**[16] \* On my own**

وحيد / بمفرده

He cleaned the flat on his own.

**\*\* of his "my" own**

تدل علي الملكيه

The flat was of his own.





## [17] \*\* Appreciative "v" + noun or V-ing

يقدر / يدرك قيمه / يعرف قدر

You must appreciate the great efforts he made.

### \*\* Appreciation "of" "n"

تقدير / امتنان

eg: He showed his appreciation of their help.

### \*\* Appreciative "adj."

مقدر / ممتن

eg: She was appreciative of the role he played to rescue her.

### \*\* Appreciatively

بتقدير / بامتنان

eg: All the audience clapped appreciatively when the play was over.

## [18]

فعل + فاعل

Subject + Verb

The last

The first

The second

The only

The oldest

The youngest

Object + to + inf.

eg: Lotfia El Nadi was the first and only woman to join a new school for pilots, she was the only woman ever to fly like this.

## [19]- ♦ Encourage to +inf يشجع على

♦ encourage + n يشجع (شيء)

♦ discourage from + v+ing يمنع من

♦ discourage + n يعوق (حدوث شيء)

- We should encourage our children to read.
- Violent TV programmes encourage anti-social behaviour.
- We should discourage people from polluting the environment.
- Aspirin may discourage tumour growth in some types of cancer.
- You'd better put your coat on your body. It's cold.

## ✓ 10- Confusing words for choices:

solo	منفرد / فردي	duo	ثنائي
staff	هيئة العاملين	crew	طاقم في طائرة/سفينة
famous	مشهور	notorious	سئ السمعة
lisense	يرخص	licence	رخصة
suitable	مناسب	comfortable	ملائم/مريح
in charge of	مسئول عن	in the charge of	تحت رعاية
fly a plane	يطير طيارة	drive a car	يقود سيارة
on time	في الموعد بالضبط	in time	قبل او في الوقت المحدد
nursing	التمريض	nursery	الحضانة
flight	رحله جويه	fright	خوف
personal	شخص	personnel	شئون العاملين
impressed	متاثر-منبهر	impressive	مبهر لغير العاقل
at the age of	في عمر-في سن	in the age of	في عصر
a patient	مريض	patient	صبور
award	منحه/يمنح	ward	عنبر في مستشفى
role	دور	rule	قاعده/قانون/حكم
practice	يمارس	practice	ممارسه/تدريب
advice	نصح	advise	ينصح
degree	درجة/شهادة علميه	decree	حكم قضائي
society	مجتمع كبير	community	مجتمع صغير
encourage to +inf.	يشجع	discourage from +v.ing	يمنع من



appreciate	يقدر "يعجب بشئ"	estimate	يخمن قيمه الشئ
discuss	يناقش موضوع/مشكله	argue	يجادل مع او ضد
improve	يحسن	prove	يثبت
licence	رخصه	permission	اذن/تصريح
certificate	شهاده	degree	درجه علميه
staff	هيئه الموظفين	stuff	يحشو
accept	يقبل	except	ما عدا - باستثناء
on his own	بمفرده	of his own	ملكه
outdoor adj.	خارجي	indoor adj.	داخلي

### ✓ 11- Words and their antonyms :

positive	ايجابي	negative	سلبي
appreciate	يقدر	depreciate	يستنكر
clearly	بوضوح	unclearly	بشكل غير واضح
appreciative	مقدر/شاكر	inappreciative	غير مقدر
		unappreciative	غير مدرك لقيمه
solo	فردى	duo	ثنائي
determined	مصر/عائد العزم	indecisive	غير حازم
suitable	مناسب	unsuitable	غير مناسب
effective	فعال	ineffective	غير فعال
successfully	بنجاح	unsuccessfully	بفشل
bravely	بشجاعه	cowardly	بجبن
respectful	يظهر الاحترام	disrespectful	محقر/مهين
acceptable	مقبول	rejected	مرفوض
impressive	مثير للاعجاب	unimpressive	غير مثير للاعجاب
wealthy	ثري	poor	فقير
obey	يطيع	disobey	يخالف
trained	مدرب	unskilled	غير مدرب
well-known	معروف جيدا	unknown	غير معروف
special	خاص	general	عام
respect	يحترم	disrespect	لا يحترم
predictable	يمكن التنبؤ به	unpredictable	لا يمكن التنبؤ به

### \*\*\*Practice(2)Test Your Knowledge\*\*\*

#### \*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- 36- You'd love Alex. It's an (amazed-amazing-amazingly-amaze) place . You should go.
- 37- Can you(tell-say- explain-teach) us why you were late for school ?
- 38- That man could complete a(lonely-alone-solo-double)voyage across the Pacific Ocean . He did it on his own , without help from another person .
- 39- Do you know that Mother's(Year-Week-Season-Day) is on March 21 ?
- 40- To(arrange-argue-encourage-quarrel)for means to explain why something should be done.
- 41- The runner was puzzled and sad because he(missed-broke-setup-won)the record by just two seconds .
- 42- The pilot was killed in a plane (making-landing-crash-flying) two years ago .
- 43- Dr Aisha died(at-from-for- in)the age of 89 .
- 44- I found university work difficult, but my friends were very(encouraged-encouraging-disappointing - disapproving).





- ✎ 45-Some students need more (encouraging-employment-development -encouragement) than others at school.
- ✎ 46-(Individually-Privately-Personally-individually)I believe that everyone should study science at school.
- ✎ 47-She would be a good nurse. She has a very kind (personality-persuasion-personally - personification).
- ✎ 48-It was a great football match. Both teams played very(effectively-absolutely-negatively- positively).
- ✎ 49-He is trying to improve his (suitability-fitting-fitness-qualifications) by jogging around the track.
- ✎ 50-My uncle is in(regard-charge-recharge-responsible)of teaching science in a secondary school
- ✎ 51-Before you can fly alone, you need to have a pilot's (license-degree-qualification-licence).
- ✎ 52-The(flight-flying-voyage-departure)from London to Cairo takes about four hours by air.
- ✎ 53-In the past, it wasn't(responsible-right-suitable-unsuitable)for a woman to be a nurse.
- ✎ 54-Doctors are always trying to find(affect-effective-helpful-impressive)new treatments for diseases.
- ✎ 55-Our journey to the UAE was(impressive-impress-impressed-impression)We will remember it forever.
- ✎ 56-The pilot was still young, however he(did-formed-made-said) a long distance flight.
- ✎ 57- Jomana(who - whose -what - which) is good friend with my sister, is really good at tennis.
- ✎ 58-The police asked the witness to mention everything in(detail-details-detailed-detained).
- ✎ 59-He felt desperate when he(broke-lost-missed-dropped)the record.
- ✎ 60-Our teacher doesn't allow us to answer haphazardly. He asks us to take(turns- notes- away-action).
- ✎ 61-He didn't decide to work as a photographer until he had grown(on-off-down-up).
- ✎ 62-She tried to explain, but he(rushed-interrupted-interfered- interpreted) her in mid-sentence.
- ✎ 63-What made you take(after-in-up-to) engineering ?
- ✎ 64-She wanted an evening job that would allow her to look(after-up-for-like) her son during the day.
- ✎ 65-Dr.Aisha was one of the most famous people in the Arab(novels-cultural-books- culture).
- ✎ 66- Aisha's mother encouraged her daughter(to-for-up-down) get a good education and, as a result, Aisha started school at the age of five.
- ✎ 67- During her life, she helped improve women's(location-position -situation-degree) in our society.
- ✎ 68- Dr Aisha was a respected teacher and taught (through-at-in-for)many universities across the Arab world.
- ✎ 69-A(charge-grade-degree -term)is a qualification given to someone who has successfully finished a university course.
- ✎ 70-"(Useless-Positive-Negative -Harmful)" means to have a good effect.
- ✎ 71-A(roll-rule-role-style)is a position that someone has in an activity or situation.
- ✎ 72-Nurses have an important(roll-rule-role-style)in looking after patients in a hospital.
- ✎ 73-Dr. Aisha is(better-good-the best-much) known to some people as Bint El-Shatei.
- ✎ 74-I'd prefer not to talk about that. It's something very (personal- public- personnel - personality).



- ✎ 75–Florence nightingale has strength of character in(acting-taking-making-doing) work that was dangerous and hard with few medicines.
- ✎ 76–We are not free today. We have a lot of jobs to (make–present–do–introduce).
- ✎ 77–She specialized in nineteenth century ( literary-literature-literate –literal) at university.
- ✎ 78–If you want to become an engineer, you will have to get a(degree –debate–referee–mark) in engineering.
- ✎ 79–His parents have always (moved-encouraged-pushed–benefited) him to study hard in order to become a successful doctor.
- ✎ 80–Exercise can have a (negative–passive–positive–active)effect on our health and fitness.
- ✎ 81–It's unwise to let your(person–personal–personally–personality)problems affect your work.
- ✎ 82–Many of the junior staff feel they are not properly(appreciated-appointed–applied–abbreviated).
- ✎ 83–He has written several( particles – items – articles – devices)for Al Akhbar.
- ✎ 84–Her(achieves-disadvantages-results-achievements ) are encouraging to other women to succeed in life.
- ✎ 85–Linda Masoud became the first woman teacher at the (flying-flight - fly- pilot) school.
- ✎ 86–Dr. Aisha was(won-employed-taken-awarded) her degree in 1939.
- ✎ 87–Dr. Aisha joined the university(staff-pack-group-crew) as a research assistant.
- ✎ 88–After a storm at sea, the crew were (crashed – broken- shipwrecked –founded) on an exotic island.
- ✎ 89–I think it is(cruel-violent-cruelty-important) to put animals in a cage.
- ✎ 90–I can't remember exactly the day(when-which-that-whose) I met Hala's father.
- ✎ 91–A team of medical experts test the(massiveness-weightlessness-reflections-effectiveness) of the new drug.
- ✎ 92–The new drug has not yet been(represented-licensed-degreed-encouraged) for the public use.
- ✎ 93–You need to(practise–listen-play- practice)English to improve your level.
- ✎ 94–Dr. Aisha was a(pride-respectful- respected- respecting) teacher and taught at many universities.
- ✎ 95–Florence (collapsed- founded-joined-found) the first nursing school.
- ✎ 96–She is in charge of current(offerts-affairs-accidents-infects) in Al Ahram paper.
- ✎ 97–She likes to sail solo, "solo' means(alone-with others-unique-with a team).
- ✎ 98–All the teachers in my school have got(qualifies-positions-degrees-studies) from universities which are famous.
- ✎ 99–(Solo-Lonely-Dangerous-Personally) ,I think that flying a plane should be associated with men only.
- ✎ 100–I'd really like to take the children out for a picnic, but the weather is not very (useful -improving -unusual -encouraging).
- ✎ 101–A widow is a woman(who-that-whose-which) husband has died and who has not married again.
- ✎ 102–Dr Aisha started to work as(responsible-an inspector-in charge- a writer) for the teaching of Arabic literature in 1942.





- ✎ 103—It's very important for a hospital to have well-trained(nursery- nurse-nursing-nurses)staff.
- ✎ 104—Exercise can have a(suitable-personal-much more-positive)effect on your health and fitness.
- ✎ 105—If you have a job interview, good(solo-personal-degree-subjunctive)qualities work in your favour.
- ✎ 106—He has been(licensed-accused-apologised –excused) to carry a gun to defend himself against thieves and criminals.
- ✎ 107—(Medicine-Nursery-Nurse-Nursing)schools provide hospitals with a lot of efficient nurses.
- ✎ 108—People who work in the(teach- teaches-teacher-teaching) profession need a lot of experience and patience.
- ✎ 109—As soon as the accident had taken place, an ambulance appeared and carried the (wounds-wound-wounded-wounding)people to hospital.
- ✎ 110—Mazen was born(from-in-into-on)a wealthy family and he lived in a luxurious home.
- ✎ 111—(Beside-As well as-As soon As -As far as) writing books on society and culture, she also wrote poems.
- ✎ 112—After she had got her degree in 1939, Dr Aisha joined the university (staff-crew- stuff- flock) as a research assistant.
- ✎ 113—Dr Ahmed Zewail became popular(for –to-with-at) the Arab people after winning the Nobel Prize for chemistry.
- ✎ 114—The performance was so(impressed-impress-impression- impressive) that we decided to watch it again.
- ✎ 115.El-Nadi worked as a secretary at the airport to (send-buy-pay-play)for her lessons.

## ✓12- Prepositions:

grow up	يكبر/ينمو	worried about	قلق علي
take up	يشغل "وقت/مكان"	special about	خاص لـ
allow to	تسمح لـ	enthusiastic about	متحمس لـ
return-to	تعود الي	idea about	فكره عن
fly-from-to	يطير-من-الي	write on/about	يكتب عن
appeal to	يروق لـ – يعجب	care about	يهتم بـ
be determined to	مصمم علي	argue for	يدافع عن/يويد/يجادل
reply-to	رد – علي	pay for	يدفع لـ
known-to	معروف لـ	write for	يكتب لحساب
access to	مدخل لـ	care for	يعتني بـ
refer to	يشير الي	late for	متاخر علي
effect on	تأثير علي	suitable for	ملائم/مناسب لـ
help-with	يساعد في	good for	مفيد لـ
introduce-into	يقدم – الي	responsible for	مسئول عن
successful in/at	ناجح في	reason for	سبب لـ
look after	يعتني بـ	apologize for	يعتذر علي
think of	يفكر في	a cure for	علاج لـ
find out	يكشف	remembered for	يذكر لـ
popular with	محبوب من	fight for	يحارب لاجل
value of	قيمه لـ	known for	معروف بـ
at the age of	في عمر/في سن	inspector for	فتش علي
as a result	كنتيجة لـ	easy for	سهل بالنسبه لـ



known as	معروف كـ	in detail	بالتفصيل
be born into-a family	يولد في اسره	work as	يعمل كـ
have a career	يحصل علي وظيفه	start with	يبدأ بـ
at meeting	في اجتماع	write in	يكتب بلغه
mean by	يقصد بـ	fight against	يحارب ضد

### \*\*\*Practice(3):(Test Your Prepositions)\*\*\*

\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- ✎ 116-Dr Aisha was born (at-on-in-into) 1913.
- ✎ 117-Her father was an important man and Dr Aisha used to go with him to meetings, (with-by-to-at) which she learned to read and write.
- ✎ 118- She joined the university staff (as-like-such as-such) a research assistant.
- ✎ 119- In 1942, she was employed as a government inspector (in-on-for-into) the teaching of Arabic literature.
- ✎ 120-Using the name Bint El-Shatei, Dr Aisha wrote many books and articles in which She argued(into-for-of-against)a more positive role for women in the modern world.
- ✎ 121-Her work, which had taken(up for-up with-up-in) much of her personal life, is still appreciated today.
- ✎ 122-Florence Nightingale was born in 1820 (into-in-at to) a wealthy family in Italy.
- ✎ 123-Her family did not think that nursing was a suitable job(to-for-with-at)their young daughter.
- ✎ 124-The British government asked her to be(in the charge of-at charge of-with the charge of- in charge of) the nursing of wounded soldiers abroad.
- ✎ 125-Amy Johnson broke the record(to-for-at-in)a solo flight from London to South Africa.
- ✎ 126- Nothing can live ( by – with – without - in case ) energy.
- ✎ 127-Other countries depend( at – with – on – in ) nuclear power.
- ✎ 128-Geothermal energy is produced by hot rocks( above-over-on-below) the earth's surface.
- ✎ 129-Huge quantities of water go through the High Dam at Aswan(to-from-into-out) Lake Nasser.
- ✎ 130-Energy from the sun is probably the best form(of-with-to-off) renewable energy.
- ✎ 131-I've heard that we get energy from rocks( over – beside – under – besides ) the earth.Could you explain how for our listeners ?
- ✎ 132-We are going to (have-do-make-produce) a survey into people's use of energy.
- ✎ 133-Could you explain how we get energy from rocks under the earth(for-in-over-from)our listeners?
- ✎ 134-When the hot water comes(for-in-up-from)through a hole in the earth's surface, that's when we get geysers.
- ✎ 135-Today,most of the energy we use still comes(of-in-up-from)fossil fuels like coal, oil and gas.

### 13- Language Focus :

#### Relative pronouns الضمائر الوصل

"Who, Whom, Which, "That" Whose, Where, When

- 1- Why: For reasons يمكن استخدامها لذكر الأسباب
- 2- What: The thing which الشيء الذي
- 3- Whenever =Persons or things that are unknown أيهم
- 4- Whatever = It doesn't matter what مهما
- 5- Whoever = The person who الشخص الذي





## ✓ 1-Types of relative pronouns

A) Type one "essential" "The information in the relative clause is necessary to the meaning of the sentence: "Defining relative clauses"

جمل الوصل الأساسية: وهي الجمل التي تعطي معلومات ضرورية عن الناس أو الأشياء أو الأماكن وبدون جملة الوصل يظل الشخص أو الشيء أو المكان غير معروف ونستخدم في هذا النوع: "Who-Whom-Which-That" ولا نستخدم "Comma" قبل أو بعد عبارته الوصل ولا يمكن الاستغناء عنها

1-Defining a person's job using "who"

تستخدم أيضا للتعريف بمهنة الشخص

eg: A director is someone who controls or manages a company, organization or activity.

2-We can omit the relative pronoun if it replaces an object.

يمكن الاستغناء عن ضمير الوصل إذا حل محل مفعول

eg: I met the man you knew very well.

B)Type two "not-essential" = Non-defining relative clauses أي الجمل الغير تعريفية

The information in the relative clause is not necessary to the meaning of the sentence. It simply gives us extra information:

أي تعطي معلومات اضافية غير ضرورية عن الاسم الذي يحل محل الضمير أي ان المعنى لا يتأثر إذا حذفنا هذه الجملة وشروطها:

١- أنها تكون محصورة بين فواصل "Comma" إذا جاءت في نهاية الجملة

eg: Queen Victoria, who was born in 1819, was educated in London alone, without meeting other children

eg: She spent a few hours with her friends, who came from respectable families.

٢- لا يمكن استخدام "That" نهائيا كبديل لضمائر الوصل في هذا النوع

eg: My students, whom I love so much, are very successful.

## ✓ 2) Relative pronouns:

### 1- Who "That" + verb محل الفاعل العاقل

1- Defining: He is the teacher who / that gave two lectures

وهنا لا يمكن حذف الجملة الوصفية لأنها جزء أساسي من المعنى

2-Non-defining: Mohamed, who works with us in the same company, is very rich.

هنا يمكن حذف الجملة الوصفية المحصورة بين "Commas" لأنها ليس ليست جزء من معنى الجملة

ولا يمكن استخدام that في هذا النوع

### 2- Who "that" + subject الذي - التي - الذين

تحل محل مفعول عاقل ويأتي بعدها فاعل ويمكن حذفها

eg: The man, who you knew very well, bought a new villa.

4-We usually use "who" after "someone-anyone-everyone-somebody-anybody-everybody"

eg: She was taught by someone who helped her to pass her driving test.

### 3- Whom / who / that

١- تحل محل مفعول به عاقل "اسم أو ضمير"

eg: Mohamed who / whom / that the teacher always punishes, is my cousin.

٢- عند وجود حرف جر مع المفعول العاقل يستخدم كالاتي:

1- Subject whom / who / that + sentence + preposition

eg: Is this the man whom / who / that you play chess with?

2- Subject + preposition + whom .....

eg: Is this the man with whom you play chess?

إذا لا يصح استخدام حرف الجر مع who/ that



٢- ضمير الوصل whom يحل محله who وليس العكس

eg: The player who / whom / that I talked about is the winner.

= The player I talked about, is the winner.

#### 4- Which = that تستخدم لغير العاقل

##### 1- Defining:

١- يمكن ان تحل محل الفاعل وفي هذه الحالة يأتي بعدها فعل وهنا لا يمكن حذفها

eg: She works in a factory which / that makes spare parts for cars

##### 2- Non-Defining:

٢- يمكن ان تحل محل المفعول وفي هذه الحالة يأتي بعدهما فاعل وفي هذه الحالة يمكن حذفها

eg: The shirt, which / that I have just bought, is expensive

٣- يمكن لـ which ان تحل محل فكره او جملة كاملة ويمكن حذفها

(The idea + which + subject + verb)

eg: Mariam got the best marks which pleased the whole family.

#### 5 Whose = تستخدم لغير العاقل و العاقل

١- تأتي بمعنى الذي يملك / الذين يملكون وتستخدم لتحل محل صفات او صيغ الملكية ويأتي بعدها اسم مملوك لما قبلها و لا يمكن استخدام بدلا منها ولا يأتي بعدها فعل مطلقا وتحل محل:

“s , my, his, her, their, our, your”

eg: Leila whose bag is in the classroom, is feeling ill

2- Who's → Who is or who has

eg: This is the teacher who's responsible for teaching here. “Who is”

eg: This is the applicant who's been waiting for being interviewed since morning “who has”

٣- يمكن استخدام حرف جر قبل whose او بعدها في الجملة

eg: My aunt in whose house we take our dinner, is a generous woman.

eg: My aunt whose house we take our dinner in, is a generous woman.

#### For Places:

##### 6- Where = which + preposition: مع المكان "حيث/حيثما"

That + Preposition: المكان الذي

١- يأتي قبلها مباشرة في مكان

٢- لا يأتي في جملتها حرف جر

لا يأتي بعدها فعل مطلقا اي لابد ان يأتي بعدها جملة كاملة

Place + where + subject + verb =

Place + which + subject + verb + preposition “in or at”

Place + in/at/preposition + which + subject + verb

eg: This is the bank in which my brother works.

eg: This is the bank which my brother works in.

eg: This is the bank where my brother works.

٤- عند التعامل مع المكان كشيء غير عاقل "الذي-التي" نستخدم which/that وليس where

eg: My uncle lives in Tanta which is a big city.

eg: Alexandria which is my home town is lovely.

##### 7- When: For time: O'clock time, day, week, month, year, date

بمعنى حين - حينما - الوقت الذي

١- لا يأتي في جملتها حرف جر

٢- لا يأتي بعدها فعلا مطلقا اي لابد ان يأتي بعدها جملة كاملة





**Time + when / that + subject + verb**

= Time + "in-on-at" Preposition which subject verb

= Time + which / that ..... Subject + verb + preposition

eg: May is the month when we take our exams.

eg: May is the month in which we take our exams.

eg: May is the month which we take our exams in.

٣- عند التعامل مع الزمان كشيء غير عاقل اي بمعنى "الذي-التي" نستخدم **Which / that** وليس **when**

eg: Friday is the day which/that I love most of all.

### **8- What = That**

١- تأتي بمعنى "الشيء الذي"

٢- يأتي قبلها فاعل او مفعول او مجرور ولا يأتي قبلها اسم

٣- يصح ان تأتي في اول الجملة

eg: We'd better decide what we need to buy.

eg: I know what she needs.

eg: What annoyed me was the noise.

eg: The thing that annoyed me was the noise.

**9- Why / What** بمعنى السبب الذي من اجله ويأتي بعدها جملة ولا يمكن استخدام حرف جر قبلها

كضمير وصل وحيانا يمكن حذفها

eg: Your bad behaviour is the reason why/that your father is angry with you.

eg: Your late arrival is the reason the manager is angry with you.

يمكن استخدام "that.....for" "which.....for" بدلا من **that**

eg: Your late arrival is the reason which the manager is angry with you for.

### **10- That "who - whom - which"**

تحل **that** محل "who-whom-which" في غيابهم ولا يأتي قبلها حرف جر مطلقا

eg: I met the man that you knew very well

٢- لا تستخدم **that** في الجمل الاعتراضية اي بعد (.....)

### **Non-Defining**

eg: Alexandria, which is my home town, has many districts.

٣- لا يمكن استخدام **that** بدلا من **which** الا اذا وضعنا حرف جر قبل الفعل

eg: This is the knife. He had killed his wife by.

eg: This is the knife by which he had killed his wife.

eg: Dr Aisha wrote many books and articles in which she argued for a more positive role for women in the modern world.

eg: Aisha wrote many articles in which she discussed women and society.

eg: Queen Victoria's husband, prince Albert died in 1861, after which Victoria always wore black clothes.

eg: Lord of the flies is a story in which a group of school boys are shipwrecked on an island.

eg: She asked me where I had been, to which I replied "it's a secret"

eg: Tomorrow, I'm going to a meeting at which we're going to discuss women's role in society.

eg: He says he's busy, by which he really means he doesn't want to go out this evening.

eg: They said something very cruel, for which I think they should apologize.

eg: The train that come by arrived late.

٤- تسبق **that** صفة من الدرجة الثالثة

eg: This is the best wedding that I have ever attended.



٥- يفضل استخدام "that" وليس "who, whom, which" بعد "It + verb to be....."  
eg: It's Mariam that we want to meet at once.  
eg: It was coffee that I asked the waiter for.

٦- يفضل استخدام that اذا سبقتها واحده من الكلمات الاتية:  
All / Any / No / None / Much / The first / The last / The only / Little / Few / Only.  
eg: 100 Pounds is all that I have right now.

٧- يمكن استخدام that اذا كانت تعود علي عاقل وغير عاقل في نفس الوقت  
eg: My teacher asked me about the leaders and the places that I admired.

٨- تستخدم That بدلا من When مع التعبيرات الدالة علي الوقت الغير محدد ويمكن حذفها ولذلك التي تحتوي علي:  
Somewhere / Anywhere / Everywhere / Nowhere / Place  
eg: You must come and see her anytime you are in town.  
eg: I'll never forget the day that we met.

### 3- Prepositions with relative pronouns

#### حروف الجر مع ضمائر الوصل

- ١- ممنوع استخدام حرف جر مع او قبل "who / when / where / that" و تستخدم بصفه خاصه مع Which لغير العاقل و whom للعاقل ولكن يصح استخدام حروف الجر مع whose وهناك أسلوبان  
1- Place: in/at/to/on + which  
2- Time: in/at/to/on + which  
eg: Dr. Aisha went to many meetings at which she could learn how to write and read.

واختيار حرف الجر مع which / Whom يعتمد علي:

- ١- المعني الذي تقصده
- ٢- اعاده الجملة الي اصلها قبل استخدام ضمير الوصل
- ٣- تحديد حرف الجر المناسب للكلمة " اسم - صفه - فعل "
- ٤- الفعل الموجود بالجملة يتحكم احيانا في حرف الجر الذي يسبقه او يأتي بعد ضمير الوصل

#### Examples:

- 1- This is the music I would like to listen to  
This is the music "for which-at which-to which-in which" I would like to listen.
- 2- The teacher had insulted her he had to apologize for.  
The teacher had insulted her "for which - about which - over which - on which"  
he had to apologize.
- 3- This is the knife which he had killed his wife by/with.  
This is the knife "for which-to which-with which-in which" he had killed his wife

### 3- The omission of "relative pronouns"

#### قواعد حذف ضمائر الوصل

- ١- يمكن حذف "who-which-whom-that" اذا كانت محل الفاعل " اي اذا جاء بعدها فعل " بالطريقة الاتية:  
١- اذا جاء بعدهم "مبني للمجهول" تحذفهم و verb to be ويبقى التصريف الثالث فقط  
eg: The girl was rewarded last week got the best marks in the class.  
= The girl, rewarded last week, got the best marks in the class.
- ٢- اذا جاء بعدهم "مبني للمعلوم" تحذف who وتستخدم V.ing  
eg: The man who works on our project, is very clever.  
= The man working on our project is very clever
- ٣- اذا جاء بعدهم Adjective ، verb to be تحذف Who + verb to be و توضع الصفة قبل الاسم





eg: The students who are respectable, can gain respect  
= Respectable students can gain respect

٤- إذا جاء بعد "who" ، verb to be as a main verb حذف

eg: The girl who is ahead of you, is my fiancée  
= the girl ahead of you is my fiancée

٥- يتم حذفهم إذا جاء بعدهم فاعل

eg: This is the book which I lent Ali = This is the book I lent Ali

٦- إذا جاء بعدهم زمن مستمر في هذه الحالة تحذف الضمير و verb to be و يتبقى V.ing

g: The student who is sitting beside me is my cousin.  
= The student sitting beside me is my cousin

وإذا كان مبني للمجهول نستخدم "being + pp"

eg: The players being chosen for the team are matures.

٧- يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا حل محل المفعول في الجملة

eg: The book which you lent me yesterday is fantastic.  
= The book you lent me yesterday, is fantastic

٨- يمكن استخدام "to + inf" بدلا من عبارته الوصل إذا حل محل الفاعل مع كلمات مثل: The first / second / Last

eg: I was the first student who got the results.  
= I was the first student to get the results.

٩- يحذف ضمير الوصل إذا اتبع بعبارته جار ومجرور

eg: The man who is in the house, is my father.  
= The man in the house, is my father.

١٠- إذا جاء بعد ضمير الوصل اسم أو اسم موصوف نحذف Who/which + verb to be ولا تضع شيء

eg: Hassan Shehata who was a famous footballer and coach, won many awards.  
= Hassan Shehata, a famous footballer and coach, won many awards

#### 4- Synopsis الخلاصة

١- يمكن استخدام who / that بعد التعبير الآتي للتأكيد:

- It is / was + subject عاقل + who / that + verb

eg: It was Dr. Ahmed Zewail who/that discovered the femto second.

٢- نستخدم "Whom" لتحل محل المفعول العاقل و نستخدم "Which" لتحل محل المفعول الغير عاقل ولا يمكن استخدام "That" مع الآتي:

All of / Some of / Either of / Most of / Any of / Both of / Many of / None of / Neither of / One of

eg: I have three brothers, all of them are players of football.

eg: There were many cars, most of which I couldn't afford.

٣- نستخدم who / that فقط بعد أسماء العلم

eg: It was Hala who/that persuaded him.

٤- لا تكرر الضمائر داخل جملة الوصل

eg: The camera which I lent you is very expensive.  
= The camera which I lent, is very expensive.

٥- جملة الوصل تأتي بعد الاسم الذي تصفه وليس قبله

eg: The man who you deceived, was an idiot.

٦- لابد من تحديد علي ما يعود ضمير الوصل مثل

I went shopping with my mother which made me tired.

رغم وجود عاقل قبل ضمير الوصل الا ان الضمير يعود علي التسوق

eg: Yesterday, I played a long game of tennis with my brother, which made me very tired.  
أيضا رغم أنها عاقل بينما يعود ضمير الوصل علي المباراة



٧- عند استخدام **That** في بداية الجملة يمكن وضع "Which" بعدها لتقديم باقي الجملة  
eg: That which doesn't kill you, makes you stronger.

٨- يمكن استخدام **why** "for which" كضمير وصل  
eg: I would like to know the reason why "for which" he left the school earlier than usual

٩- هناك بعض الكلمات تستخدم كاسم وفعل فإذا جاء استخدمت كاسم تسبقه بـ "Whose" مثل:

Hopes, stay, end, dream, dislike, work, like, play  
eg: Tourists whose stay ended should renew it.

### **Student's book : " Grammar "**

- 1-Dr Aisha Abd El-Rahman, who is better known to some people as Bint El-Shatei , is one of the most famous people in Egyptian and Arab literature .  
(تحل محل فاعل ويليهما فعل)
- 2-Dr Aisha used to go with him up to meetings at which she learned to read and write.  
(تحل محل مفعول غير عاقل ويليهما فاعل وفعل وقد يسبقها حرف جر)
- 3-She went to Cairo University , where she studied Arabic language and literature .  
تحل محل مكان قبله حرف جر ويليهما فاعل وفعل وتساوى in which =
- 4-Dr Aisha wrote many books and articles in which she argued for a more positive role for women in the modern world .  
(تحل محل مفعول غير عاقل ويليهما فاعل وفعل وقد يسبقها حرف جر)
- 5-Her work , women had taken up much of her personal life , is still appreciated today .  
(تحل محل فاعل غير عاقل ويليهما فعل)
- 6-Dr Aisha, whose father was an important man, was born in Damietta in 1913  
(تحل محل ملكية ويليهما فاعل وفعل)
- 7-Aisha wrote many articles in which she discussed women and society.  
(تحل محل مفعول غير عاقل ويليهما فاعل وفعل وقد يسبقها حرف جر)
- 8-Queen Victoria , who was born in 1819 , was educated in London alone, without meeting other children  
(تحل محل فاعل ويليهما فعل)
- 9-Queen Victoria, who died in January 1901 , was queen of Britain for most of the nineteenth century.  
(تحل محل فاعل ويليهما فعل)
- 10-Queen Victoria, who ruled for more than 63 years , was queen for longer than any other British ruler.  
(تحل محل فاعل ويليهما فعل)
- 11-Queen Victoria's husband , Prince Albert died in 1861, after which Victoria always wore black clothes.  
(تحل محل جملة وقد يسبقها حرف جر)
- 12-Yesterday , I played a long game of tennis with my brother, which made me very tired.  
(تحل محل الجملة التي تسبقها)
- 13-The nurse , whose responsibility is to look after young children , has worked at the hospital for ten years .  
(تحل محل ملكية ويليهما فاعل وفعل)
- 14 -The person who does most of the cooking in our family is my mother.  
(تحل محل فاعل ويليهما فعل)
- 15 -1837 was the year when Victoria became queen of Britain.  
(تحل محل زمان قبله حرف جر ويليهما فاعل وفعل وتساوى in which)
- 16 - I've just read a newspaper article in which the life of a famous woman is described in detail  
(تحل محل مفعول غير عاقل ويليهما فاعل وفعل وقد يسبقها حرف جر)
- 17 - My sister went to London University , where she studied history  
(تحل محل مكان قبله حرف جر ويليهما فاعل وفعل وتساوى in which)
- 18 -Lord of the Flies is a story in which a group of school boys are shipwrecked on an island.  
(تحل محل مفعول غير عاقل ويليهما فاعل وفعل وقد يسبقها حرف جر)
- 19-She asked me where I had been , to which I replied , " It's a secret".  
(تحل محل الجملة التي تسبقها ، ومعناها " وعليها " ، لاحظ أن "replied" تأخذ حرف جر "to")





- ♣ 52. He's already finished a novel.....the main character is a 60-year-old man.  
a) whom                      b) where                      c) in which                      d) whose
- ♣ 53. Yesterday, I played a long game of tennis with my brother,.....made me so tired.  
a) who                      b) whose                      c) which                      d) when
- ♣ 54. The nurse .....responsibility is to look after young children, has worked at the hospital for 10 years.  
a) whose                      b) whom                      c) which                      d) who
- ♣ 55. The person,.....does most of the cooking in our family, is my mother.  
a) which                      b) that                      c) whom                      d) who
- ♣ 56. I've just read a newspaper article..... the life of a famous woman is described in detail  
a) where                      b) which                      c) when                      d) whose
- ♣ 57. 1973 was the year..... we won the war against Israel.  
a) where                      b) when                      c) which                      d) whose
- ♣ 58. My sister went to London University..... she studied history at  
a) when                      b) which                      c) where                      d) who
- ♣ 59. The girl,..... sits in front of me, is my cousin  
a) who                      b) whose                      c) where                      d) which
- ♣ 60- Dr Aisha..... father was an important man, was born in 1913  
a) whose                      b) who                      c) whom                      d) which
- ♣ 61-14-year-old Japanese boy has become the youngest person to complete a..... voyage across the Pacific Ocean.  
a. lonely                      b. solo                      c. loneliness                      d. weary
- ♣ 62- Before you can fly alone, you need to have a pilot's.....  
a. licence                      b. qualification                      c. certificate                      d. grade
- ♣ 63- My father spent all his.....working in a bank.  
a. money                      b. position                      c. career                      d. carer
- ♣ 64- Some films are not..... for young children.  
a. right                      b. bright                      c. sure                      d. suitable
- ♣ 65- That film was made by a famous.....  
a. conductor                      b. directions                      c. director                      d. instructor
- ♣ 66- My uncle is in..... of the Science Department in a secondary school.  
a. charge                      b. controller                      c. recharge                      d. charger
- ♣ 67- The..... staff at the hospital work very hard to look after the patients.  
a. office                      b. nursing                      c. teaching                      d.
- ♣ 68- To be in.....is to be responsible for or in control of something-  
a. charge of                      b. responsible                      c. charged with                      d. recharge
- ♣ 69- An.....thing makes you admire it because it is very good and important.  
a. impossible                      b. impressive                      c. positive                      d. suitable
- ♣ 70. A..... is an official document that gives permission to do something.  
a. degree                      b. grade                      c. licence                      d. license
- ♣ 71 ..... is a job of looking after people who are ill.  
a. Nursing                      b. Nursery                      c. Engineering                      d. Carpentry
- ♣ 72 .....means that you have done something on your own, without help from another person.  
a. Individual                      b. Soloist                      c. Lonely                      d. Solo
- ♣ 73. Your grades are..... Jena.  
a. disappointed                      b. achieve                      c. impress                      d. impressive
- ♣ 74. To.....means to understand and enjoy the good qualities of something.  
a. award                      b. appreciate                      c. dislike                      d. reject



- ♣ 75. To be.....means to be admired by many people because of your achievements, skills etc.  
a. impressed      b. rewarded      c. disliked      d. respected
- ♣ 76. The..... are the group of people who control a country or state.  
a. government      b. staff      c. crew      d. soloist
- ♣ 77. To.....means to give a prize to someone who has achieved something.  
a. appreciate      b. respect      c. award      d. impress
- ♣ 78. A.....is a job or profession you have trained for and intend to do for a long time.  
a. degree      b. practice      c. suitability      d. career
- ♣ 79. A/ An.....is someone who controls or manages a company organization or activity.  
a. director      b. pilot      c. assistant      d. workman
- ♣ 80 To ..... is to clearly explain why something is true or must be done  
a. take up      b. look for      c. argue with      d. argue for
- ♣ 81- To be .....means to have a good effect or to be hopeful and confidence  
a. pessimistic      b. positive      c. serious      d. furious
- ♣ 82- A..... is the position that someone has in a job or activity.  
a. career      b. job      c. role      d. rule
- ♣ 83. To be.....means to be responsible for something or someone.  
a. recharged with      b. hopeful of      c. charged with      d. in charge of
- ♣ 84.....means making you admire something.  
a. Impressive      b. Respected      c. Negative      d. Solo
- ♣ 85. A / An..... is an official document that allows you to do something  
a. license      b. licence      c. permission      d. allowance
- ♣ 86. To be .....means to be right or acceptable in a particular situation.  
a. solo      b. impressive      c. suitable      d. official
- ♣ 87. I want to ..... sure that the project is going to finish on time.  
a) do      b) go      c) make      d) have
- ♣ 88. I was..... my degree from Oxford in England.  
a) rewarded      b) reward      c) award      d) awarded
- ♣ 89. Walking , playing and going on trips can give you.....energy.  
a) organic      b) positive      c) negative      d) non-renewable
- ♣ 90. Old people should be.....  
a) inspected      b) rewarded      c) respected      d) reflected
- ♣ 91..... » means explain why something should be done.  
a) Fighting      b) A war      c) Argue for      d) Appreciate
- ♣ 92. My wife is teaching my daughter how to .....the cooking.  
a) make      b) do      c) advise      d) have
- ♣ 93- ..... writing political articles, I also write poems.  
a) In addition      b) Beside      c) As well as      d) Because of
- ♣ 94 . Can you tell me the reason .....coming?  
a) for      b) to      c) about      d) in
- ♣ 95 . Famous singers always are popular.....some people.  
a) to      b) in      c) about      d) with
- ♣ 96 ....., he will earn much money if he becomes a doctor.  
a) Unusually      b) Undoubtedly      c) Personally      d) Unfortunately
- ♣ 97 . I am determined.....travel abroad.  
a) on      b) about      c) to      d) at





- ♣ 98 . Have you decided.....a name for the baby?  
a) to                      b) that                      c) at                      d) on
- ♣ 99 . My sister is..... in a school. She wants to work on a hospital.  
a) nursery                      b) nurse                      c) nursing                      d) teaching
- ♣ 100. No one can ignore women's..... in society.  
a) rule                      b) role                      c)roll                      d)road
- ♣ 101- After Dr Aisha was awarded her degree in 1939, she.....the university staff  
as a research assistant  
a) shared                      b) participated                      c) took part                      d) joined
- ♣ 102- Novels, plays and poetry are referred to as.....  
a) literacy                      b) illiteracy                      c) literature                      d) literary
- ♣ 103- Remember that exams never start late, they always start.....  
a) ahead of time                      b) on time                      c) in time                      d)at the last moment
- ♣ 104- the camera has a cover.....is made of leather.  
a) which                      b) who                      c) whose                      d) whom
- ♣ 105- A..... performance is done by one person.  
a) duo                      b) triple                      c) multi                      d) solo
- ♣ 106- A broom is a thing.....is used for sweeping floors.  
a) who                      b) that                      c) whom                      d) whose
- ♣ 107- That's the knife.....he was killed.  
a) at which                      b) for which                      c) with which                      d) in which
- ♣ 108- I'd like to speak to the person in.....  
a) charged                      b) charge                      c) charging                      d) charger
- ♣ 109- He never admits his mistakes..... are extremely annoying.  
a) whose                      b) where                      c) which                      d) what
- ♣ 110- A shop needs a.....to sell tobacco.  
a) tax                      b)fine                      c) ransom                      d) licence
- ♣ 111- In 1988, Naguib Mahfouz was..... The Nobel Prize for literature.  
a) awarded                      b) rewarded                      c) won                      d) earned
- ♣ 112- Ronaldo.....is the best footballer in the world, is from Brazil.  
a) which                      b)whom                      c)who                      d) that
- ♣ 113- The club in..... I play is in the city Centre.  
a) where                      b)that                      c) whom                      d) which
- ♣ 114- Florence Nightingale.....new ideas into hospitals.  
a) produced                      b) introduced                      c) induced                      d) deduced
- ♣ 115- What jobs can be.....by women today?  
a) done                      b) made                      c) played                      d) carried
- ♣ 116- During her lifetime, Dr Aisha did her best to.....women's position in  
Egyptian society.  
a) prove                      b) improve                      c) neglect                      d) downgrade
- ♣ 117- My friends, two of..... will be coming tonight, are lovely people.  
a) who                      b) which                      c) whom                      d) whose
- ♣ 118-The man..... you wanted to see is on the phone.  
a) that                      b) which                      c) what                      d) whose
- ♣ 119-The students.....cheated on the exam were dismissed.  
a) whom                      b) who                      c) whose                      d) what
- ♣ 120-Some people enjoy.....sports such as table tennis.  
a) outdoors                      b) outdoor                      c) in doors                      d) indoor



**\*\*\*Practice(5):( Previous Exams Egypt, Sudan and Azhar:)\*\*\***

**\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\***

- ♣ 121-A good director is the one who(neglects-communicates-degrades-appreciates) his employees' efforts. (2011)
- ♣ 122-A healthy diet can have a( negative-positive- primitive-relative)effect on your fitness. (2014)
- ♣ 123-I (examine-heal -cure-admire)people who can turn a negative situation into a positive one. (2014)
- ♣ 124-Don't be easily defeated. Keep(discouraging-encouraging-demotivating-appointing) yourself (2014)
- ♣ 125-A 14-year old japanese boy has become the youngest person to complete a (solo-lonely-deserted-bilingual) voyage across the pacific Ocean. (2015)
- ♣ 126-One cannot drive a car without a driving (seatbelt-licence-leisure-safe-guards). (2013)
- ♣ 127- Dr Aisha Abd el Rahman wrote many books on matters related to( cultured – culturally – cultural – culture) and religion . (2007)
- ♣ 128-She spent many years fighting for women's( opinions-rights-votes-protests). (2006)
- ♣ 129-Dr Aisha Abd el Rahman has (promoted – argued – defended – supported ) powerfully for women's rights. (2002)
- ♣ 130-Have you heard? They 've discovered a/an (effective-useless-real-cruel) new treatment for flu. (Workbook test 5)
- ♣ 131-Violence films are popular(with-to-by-about)a great number of children. (2006)
- ♣ 132-Ramy got (licence-degree-roller-role) in medicine from Cairo University. (Longman test E)
- ♣ 133-Most famous people don't like to talk a lot about their (personal-positive suitable- impressive) lives. (Longman test E)
- ♣ 134-Umm Kulthum always sang (spontaneously-folk-gradually-solo). She never joined another singer in a song. (Longman test E)
- ♣ 135-Luxor (where -when- that- which) is my hometown,has a lot of ancient monuments. (2014)
- ♣ 136-We'll give a prize to the company (who-which-who's-whose)exports are good. (2015)
- ♣ 137-I don't know with (who I should speak– whom I should speak– who should I speak– whom should I speak) about the loin. (2014)
- ♣ 138-I met the doctor(whom-whose-who-which)car was stolen last week . (2013)
- ♣ 139-Dr Aisha used to go to meeting at (whom-where-which-that)she learned to read and write . (2013)
- ♣ 140-It is said he was a man(who appeared-he appeared-that appears-and appears) to have the sight of an eagle and courage of the lion. (2012)
- ♣ 141-Name the actor (which -whose-whom-who) plays Salah El din. (2011)
- ♣ 142-Sham el nassim is a day(in which-which-who-whose )marks the beginning of spring . (2004)
- ♣ 143-That is the school in (which-where-whose-when) I had my primary education. (2014 May)
- ♣ 144-My brother and I have just had a phone conversation (which-in which-what-to which) we discussed our holiday plans. (Workbook test 6)





- ♣ 145-Mohamed Nagy, (which-that-whom-who) is known as "Gedo", is a famous Footballer. (Longman test E)
- ♣ 146-Samir's house, (which-who-in which-where) had consumed all his savings, left him with very little money. (Longman test E)
- ♣ 147-Can you please repeat the name of the medicine (in which-where-that-who) you just took? (Longman test E)
- ♣ 148-He lost the book (which lent-which I lent it -who lent - I lent) him last week.
- ♣ 149-He's already finished a novel (which- who- in which -whose) the main character is a 60-year old man.
- ♣ 150-This is the man (whom-which-who-whose) helped me carry my luggage.

### Homework: Open Book Practice

**I) \*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\***

- ⌘ 1-Father put Belal in.....of fixing the car.  
a) role                      b) licence                      c) responsibility                      d) charge
- ⌘ 2-Salma thought this was a.....gift for her teacher.  
a) suitable                      b) effective                      c) charge                      d) solo
- ⌘ 3-Hesham has just got his driving...., and already he wants to buy a car.  
a) flight                      b) role                      c) licence                      d) degree
- ⌘ 4-Rania is optimistic. She always has a.....attitude and thinks everything will turn out well.  
a) impressive                      b) personal                      c) encouraging                      d) positive
- ⌘ 5-Mr. Selim is an.....manager because he is a good listener.  
a) observe                      b) effective                      c) admissions                      d) enjoyable
- ⌘ 6-Mr. Maged.....all his students to do the best that they can do.  
a) argues for                      b) effects                      c) encourages                      d) impresses
- ⌘ 7-Farouk is flying.....for the first time tomorrow. He'll have no co-pilot.  
a) role                      b) suits                      c) licence                      d) solo
- ⌘ 8-For my own.....satisfaction, I paint or read in my spare time.  
a) positive                      b) personal                      c) degree                      d) role
- ⌘ 9-Omar has received a master's.....in conservation management.  
a) effect                      b) flight                      c) degree                      d) licence
- ⌘ 10-Yusuf's ability to speak French and German is very.....Many companies will want to hire him.  
a) impressive                      b) personal                      c) suitable                      d) solo
- ⌘ 11-A 14 year- old Japanese boy has made a/an.....voyage across the Pacific Ocean.  
a) only                      b) alone                      c) lonely                      d) solo
- ⌘ 12-Technology has great effects on all members of the..... especially the youth.  
a) sociology                      b) social                      c) society                      d) socialism
- ⌘ 13-.....means having a good and useful effect.  
a) Expensive                      b) Passive                      c) Positive                      d) Negative
- ⌘ 14-Our school teaching.....are excellent and helpful.  
a) staff                      b) queue                      c) crew                      d) row
- ⌘ 15-He was in a good.....in the company he was working for.  
a) competition                      b) position                      c) work                      d) career
- ⌘ 16-After he graduated from the university, he worked as....assistant.  
a) researching                      b) research                      c) researcher                      d) search
- ⌘ 17-Jailan,....lives on my street, said there was a problem with the water.  
a) whom                      b) who                      c) which                      d) whose
- ⌘ 18-Yunis was ill last year and had to take a lot of time..... work.  
a) from                      b) in                      c) on                      d) off



- ⌘ 19 – These are the fields.....we grow corn.  
a) in which      b) for which      c) that      d) at which
- ⌘ 20 – Hani,.....car I borrowed last night, is from Holland.  
a) whom      b) whose      c) who      d) that
- ⌘ 21 – Five of the girls,...names I don't remember, won awards in maths.  
a) those      b) which      c) whom      d) whose
- ⌘ 22 – The brother.....lives in Moscow is coming home on Friday.  
a) whom      b) where      c) that      d) whose
- ⌘ 23 – This is the hotel..... I stayed when I was young.  
a) which      b) what      c) where      d) when
- ⌘ 24 – The meetings.....I attended today were long and boring.  
a) to which      b) where      c) in where      d) which
- ⌘ 25 – I have no idea.....was at the door.  
a) who      b) which      c) where      d) that
- ⌘ 26 – The restaurant.....Fady is having dinner has a great salad bar.  
a) for which      b) which      c) where      d) that
- ⌘ 27 – Dr Aisha,.....is better known as Bint El-Shatei, is one of the most famous people in Egyptian and Arab culture .  
a) whose      b) who      c) that      d) which
- ⌘ 28 – He asked me where I had been,.....I replied, "It's a secret".  
a) at which      b) by which      c) for why      d) to which
- ⌘ 29 – This is the waiter.....serves food in this restaurant.  
a) which      b) who      c) who's      d) whose
- ⌘ 30 – The meeting.....I went was very boring.  
a) for which      b) to which      c) at which      d) on which
- ⌘ 31 – The game of tennis.....I played with my friend was very exciting.  
a) where      b) who      c) which      d) whose
- ⌘ 32 – Who is the woman.....is talking to the postman ?  
a) which      b) whose      c) who      d) where
- ⌘ 33. I came first in the English exam last week! I'm over the.....  
a- moon      b- earth      c- sun      d- star
- ⌘ 34. I've started playing tennis at the sports club. I'm really ..... about it.  
a-impressive      b effective      c-positive      d-enthusiastic
- ⌘ 35. We're going to start a book club at school. I can't.....  
a- hurry      b- wait      c- calm      d. forget
- ⌘ 36. "Do you like this picture? I drew it myself." "Hey, that's.....  
a- terrific      b- awful      c- terrifying      d- amazed
- ⌘ 37. I got an email from my friend this morning. Got here means....  
a-posted      b-sent      c-received      d-delivered
- ⌘ 38. We got a new TV from the shops. Got here means.....  
a- became      b- bought      c- brought      d- received
- ⌘ 39. How are you getting home this evening? Getting here means.....  
a-receiving      b-buying      c-bringing      d-arriving
- ⌘ 40. It's getting very hot outside. Getting here means.....  
a-becoming      b-bringing      c-having      d-receiving
- ⌘ 41. I need to talk to someone.....I can trust  
a-whose      b-who      c-what      d- who's
- ⌘ 42. She is the woman.....wrote two books.  
a-that      b-whom      c- whose      d- when
- ⌘ 43. Ahmed is the boy.....father is a teacher.  
a-who      b-whom      c-that      d- whose
- ⌘ 44. This is the place.....we often have picnics.  
a-which      b-where      c- at where      d- whom





- ⌘ 45. Friday is the day.....I visit my relatives in our village.  
a-that b-which c-when d-where
- ⌘ 46. We'd better decide..... we need to buy.  
a-who b-that c-whom d- what
- ⌘ 47. That's the book.....is a best seller.  
a-that b-who c-where d- whom
- ⌘ 48. Mr Samir,.....teaches us science, is always friendly.  
a-that b-who c-whom d-whose
- ⌘ 49. The book,.....I bought last week, is really interesting.  
a-what b-that c-which d-whom
- ⌘ 50-This is the article ..... she writes about science.  
a- in which b- which c- in that d- where

## 2) Reading Comprehension:

✓ Read the passage and answer the questions below:

Video and television are responsible for the declining interest in reading among the young. While they may be harmless in themselves, they do nothing to build up reading skills. If some of the hours children spend watching television were devoted to reading, the population would be better educated. Watching a story is a totally passive pastime. Someone else has made the decisions about everything in the story. Reading a story is an active partnership between writer and reader. Ideas are sketched and the mind of the reader creates the rest. Watching something is easier. The problem is that many children read very slowly. They decode a page or two in a class and about the same again for homework. It is hardly surprising that such children then declare that they find reading boring and prefer to watch television. Their difficulty is not reading the words-it is interpreting them. They need to be able to read fast enough to feed the mind's hunger for a story. That means practice. Only by reading daily will a child become a strong and independent reader. Parents need to be convinced of the importance of preventing their children from wasting their hours in inert viewing. Without the television the child is likely to turn to books for entertainment.

### a) Choose the best answer :

- ◆ 1-The underlined pronoun "they" refers to (the young-video&Television- children-reading skills)
- ◆ 2-The writer says that the population would be better educated if children (do their homework - watch TV - read much - read slowly)
- ◆ 3-According to the writer's view, TV is (not an effective - an encouraging - an effective - not a cheap) means of entertainment .
- ◆ 4-Video and television may be(harmless -harmful -careless-careful)in themselves.
- ◆ 5-Watching a story is a totally (active-passive-positive-negative) pastime.
- ◆ 6-Parents need to be (encouraged-discouraged-convinced-worked hard) of the importance of preventing their children from wasting their hours in inert viewing.

### b) Answer the following questions:

- ◆ 7-What is the writer's main objection to video and TV?
- ◆ 8-Why is watching a story easier than reading it?
- ◆ 9-How can children be good readers?
- ◆ 10-The writer believes that visual images , such as watching television, spoil the imagination. Do you agree? Why?



### 3) Translation: A) Translate into Arabic :

1. Celebrating the new millennium at the foot of the Pyramids of Giza was marvellous. That was the best place from which we could pass to the new century. The celebration aimed at combining the ancient and the modern and reviewing the history of human civilization.
2. To be interested in something is a golden rule in life. If a person is always chained to his office, he will grow physically and mentally weak. If such a person has a hobby, his daily work will no longer be tiring.
- 3-The government is trying to solve the transport problem by constructing new roads and flyovers. The number of vehicles is increasing everyday. Roads are becoming too crowded for drivers to use.

### B) Translate into English:

- 1- تلعب المدرسة دورا فعالا و مؤثرا في خلق جيل واع بتحديات المستقبل .
- 2- يجب على المواطنين معرفة واجباتهم قبل المطالبة بحقوقهم في ظل الديمقراطية .
- 3- عليك أن تتخلص من مخاوفك التي ليس لها تبرير مقنع .
- 4- الزراعة العضوية يمكن أن تحل مشكلة نقص الغذاء في العالم.
- 5- يمكنك شراء ما تريد و أنت جالس في منزلك عبر شبكة الانترنت.

### 4) Write an essay of about one hundred and eighty (180) words on :

- a) You have just come back from a school trip. Write an essay describing how you spent time there.
- b) Describe what you would like a tourist to see in your country.

## Unit Four

### Emily Dickinson : "If I can stop"

#### 1 – Important vocabulary & derivatives:

traditional	تقليدي / عرفى	break the law	لا يلتزم بالقانون
traditionally	على نحو تقليدي	break rules	يعصى الأوامر
conscious	واعي	break the record	يحطم رقم قياسي
unconscious	فاقد الوعي	break a promise	لا يفي بوعده
fellow	رفيق / صديق / شخص	break someone's heart	يكسر بخاطر شخص
challenge	يتحدى - تحدي	halves	أنصاف
challenging	شاق - مجهد	in halves	نصفين
along	بطول - على طول	moving	مُحرَّك للمشاعر
alive	على قيد الحياة	awake	مستيقظ
ashore	على الشاطئ	ache / pain	ألم، وجع - يؤلم
raw	غير مطبوخ - ني	aching	مؤلم - ألم
publish	ينشر	robin	طائر أبو الحناء
publisher	ناشر - دار نشر	verse	بيت - فقرة شعرية
poet	شاعر - شاعرة	faint	يُصاب بإغماء
poetess	شاعرة	fainting	إغماء
poem	قصيدة	worm	دودة
poetry	شعر	angleworm	دودة الأرض
ahead	أمام	earthworm	دودة الأرض





asleep	نائم	cool the pain	يهدأ - يهدئ الألم
sandstorm	عاصفة رملية	painful	مؤلم
bite	يقضم - يعض	in vain	دون جدوى - بدون فائدة
partner	زميل - شريك	vain	تافه - مختال
focus on	يركز علي	ease	يخفف، / ييسر / يهديء
distribute	يوزع	rhyme	قافية - يُقفي
separate	منفصل - مستقل	rhythm	وزن - إيقاع
creature	مخلوق	touching	مؤثر
nest	عش الطائر	record	رقم قياسي
tips	نصائح	alike	متشابه
tolerant	متسامح	emotions	مشاعر
lighten	يُخفف	emotional	مؤثر - عاطفي
concern	اهتمام	selfless	مؤثر - ناكِر للذات - غير اناني
rescue	ينقذ	selflessness	الإيثار - انكار الذات
rescuer	منقذ - مُخلص	selfish	أناني
safe	أمن	selfishness	الأنانية
safety	الأمان	colourful	ملون
skill	مهارة	colourless	عديم اللون - باهت
skillful	ماهر	pain	الألم
review	مقالة نقدية	painful	مؤلم
reviewer	ناقد	weak	ضعيف
hopeless	يائس	weakness	الضعف
hopelessness	اليأس	depressed	مُحبط
hopeful	متفائل	depression	إحباط

## 2- Check Your Vocabulary :

record	رقم قياسي	glossary	فهرس مصطلحات
partly	جزئياً - بشكل جزئي	compare to	يقارن - يُشَبِّه
helpful	نافع، مفيد	humans	البشر
useless	عديم النفع	go down	يقبل - ينخفض
blond(e) hair	شعر أشقر	emphasize	يؤكد
burdens	أعباء	scene	مشهد - منظر
members	أعضاء	despair	اليأس
perfect	مثالي - ممتاز	summarise	يلخص
similar	متشابه	paraphrase	يعيد صياغة
theme	موضوع - فكرة	sadness	الحزن
veil	حجاب - طرحة	waste	يضيع - يبذر
useless	غير مفيد	somewhere	في مكان ما
fresh	طازج	simple	بسيط
law	قانون	literally	حرفياً
staff	هيئة عاملين	break	يكسر
lawful	قانوني	heart	القلب



regret	يندم - ندم	rules	قواعد
shame	خزي - عار	unhappy	حزين
pale	شاحب - باهت	blond(e)	اشقر

### ✓ 3 - Tapescript:-

Interviewer	:	In today's programme, we are looking at the poet الشاعرة Emily Dickinson. With me is the author المؤلفة <b>Clare Lovell who has written a book which calls</b> يسمى <b>Emily the first modern poet.</b> أول شاعرة حديثة <b>Clare, Emily Dickinson was born in 1830,</b> so why do you call her modern?
Clare Lovell	:	Well <b>traditionally</b> , تقليديا poems usually have three or more verses قافية and in every verse, there are words that rhyme at the end of some of the lines. الابيات Today, <b>modern poems do not always follow these rules.</b> تتبع They may have either no words that rhyme, or words that partly rhyme, مقفى جزئيا for example young and song. Many modern poets do not really follow any rules at all! But their poems work very well.
Interviewer	:	<b>So did Emily Dickinson's poems break the usual rules?</b> خالفت القواعد المعتادة
Clare Lovell	:	Well they were certainly different to بالتأكيد مختلفة عن most poems at that time. Many of her poems had very short lines, no titles, بلا ولا علامات ترقيم and sometimes no punctuation! عناوين
Interviewer	:	So are her poems <b>challenging to read?</b> صعبة كي تقرأ
Clare Lovell	:	No, they aren't. <b>Most of them were changed by her publishers</b> تغيرت by her so that they are more like normal poems. الناشرين
Interviewer	:	Tell me about her life.
Clare Lovell	:	When she was a child, she was good at جيدة في both writing and playing the piano. But she was an unusual adult. شابة غير عادية She always wore white clothes and she spent nearly all her life at home, where she wrote her poems. She spent about half of her time writing poems, and the other half helping with the housework, as her mother was very ill. She had a few friends but she didn't like to see them often. She preferred to write long letters to each friend instead. بدلا من She wrote a lot of poems, but most of them were not published until after she died in 1886.
Interviewer	:	Did she marry?
Clare Lovell	:	No. We think that two men might have asked her to marry them but she accepted neither of their offers.
Interviewer	:	Which of her poems is most famous?
Clare Lovell	:	That is difficult to say! Only a few of her poems were published when she was alive, but you can read all of her 1,800 poems today. My favourite المفضلة poem is called <b>If I can stop. It is about how important it is to help people in life. It's very moving.</b> مؤثر
Interviewer	:	That sounds lovely, هذا يبدو جميل I'm going to read that poem next. Thank you for your time.





## ✓ 4 - Reading :-

If I can stop

By: Emily Dickinson

If I can stop يمنع one heart from breaking, القلب من ان ينفطر

I shall not live in vain; بلا جدوى

If I can ease يخفف one life the aching, الألم

Or cool يخفف one pain, الألم

Or help one fainting robin طائر أبو الحناء الضعيف

Unto his nest again, يعود الى العش مرة ثانية

I shall not live in vain. بلا جدوى

### About Emily Dickinson:

Dickinson was born in 1830 in the United States and lived alone for most of her life while taking care of her parents. She is known for her poetry that tells of complex ideas افكار معقدة (such as power and life/death) and bright scenes of nature. مشاهد الطبيعة المضيئة She wrote thousands of poems, though many were published نشرت بعد after her death in 1886.

THEME: We should live selflessly بلا أنانية and care about others. ونهتم بالآخرين.

### Summary

Emily Dickinson wants to do everything she can to help people, she does not want to live in vain but in selflessness. الانثار The message of the poem رسالة القصيدة is how to live selflessly, helping and caring about others is always the right thing to do. In this poem, Emily Dickinson talks about if she was able to stop تمنع or ease تخفف someone's pain, she would not live being selfish. أنانية In the poem, she talks about how if she could ease تخفف someone's life the aching الألم or cool تخفف someone's pain and make them feel painless. An example of this would be in line 1, "If I can stop one heart from breaking, I shall not live in vain" The poet here is saying that she would not be selfish, and that she would go and help someone before their heart was to break. ينفطر This emphasizes يؤكد that when someone is to get a broken heart, she would do all that she could to help someone's pain go down. Another evidence برهان would be in line 5 "or help one fainting robin unto his nest again" this is comparing يشبه the robin to humans, explaining that when we fall, we feel pain. How the author would want to help the robin and put it back into its nest. العش

## ✓ 5 - Main Points:

- ◆ 1-Emily Dickinson was born in 1830. ولدت في
- ◆ 2-Emily Dickinson's poems were certainly different to most poems at that time. بالتأكيد مختلفة
- ◆ 3-Many of her poems had very short lines, no titles, and sometimes no punctuation!
- ◆ 4-Her poems aren't challenging to read. قصائدها لم تكن من الصعب ان تقرأ
- ◆ 5-Most of them were changed by her publishers so that they are more like normal poems.
- ◆ 6-When she was a child, she was good at both writing and playing the piano. But she was an unusual adult. شابة غير عادية
- ◆ 7-She always wore white clothes and she spent nearly all her life at home, where she wrote her poems.
- ◆ 8-She spent about half of her time writing poems, and the other half helping with the housework, as her mother was very ill.
- ◆ 9-She had a few friends but she didn't like to see them often. She preferred to write long letters to each friend instead.
- ◆ 10-She wrote a lot of poems, but most of them were not published until after she died in 1886.



- ♦ 11-Two men might have asked her to marry them but she accepted neither of their offers.
- ♦ 12-You can read all of her 1,800 poems today.
- ♦ 13-"If I can stop".It is about how important it is to help people in life. It's very **moving**. **تشير المشاعر**

### ✓ 6- Important Sentences :

- 1-She is known for her poetry that tells of **complex ideas** (such as power and life/death) and bright scenes of nature. **افكار معقدة**
- 2-We should live **selflessly** and care about others. **بدون انانية**
- 3-Emily Dickinson wants to do everything she can to help people, she does not want to live in vain but in selflessness.
- 4-The **message** of the poem is how to live selflessly , helping and caring about others is always the right thing to do. **الرسالة او المعنى**
- 5-Emily Dickinson talks about if she was able to stop or **ease** someone's pain, she would not live being selfish. **تخفف**
- 6-She talks about how if she could ease someone's life the **aching or cool** someone's pain and make them feel painless. **الم او تهدى**
- 7-Help one fainting robin unto his nest again "this is **comparing the robin to humans**, explaining that when we fall, we feel pain. **مقارنة بين الطائر و البشر**

### \*\*\*Practice(1)Test Your Vocabulary\*\*\*

#### \*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- ♣ 1-With me is the author Clare Lovell who (had written-wrote-writes-has written) a book which calls Emily the first modern poet.
- ♣ 2-Emily Dickinson was born (in-on-into-onto) 1830, so why do you call her modern?
- ♣ 3-Well (customary-traditionally-habitually-generally), poems usually have three or more verses and in every verse, there are words that rhyme at the end of some of the lines.
- ♣ 4-(Moving-Playing -Removing-Move)is to make you feel strong emotions, especially sadness.
- ♣ 5-A(butcher-polisher-publisher-filcher)a person or company that produces books for people to buy.
- ♣ 6-(A life-Life-Live-Alive) is the opposite of dead.
- ♣ 7-(Changing-Challenging-Charging-Charming)is something interesting but difficult to do.
- ♣ 8-My cousin wrote a novel but hasn't found a (publish- publisher- publishing - published)yet.
- ♣ 9-The film about the war was very(funny-moving- removing- joking) a lot of people cried at the end!
- ♣ 10-Though the plane crashed, rescuers were pleased to find that all the passengers were (dead-killed-murdered-alive) .
- ♣ 11-The walk across the mountains was beautiful but very(nice-fantastic-challenging-fine).
- ♣ 12-I knew that Ahmed would not be late because he never breaks a(promise-record-heart-vase) .
- ♣ 13-If you drive too fast, you will( break-brake-obey-lose)the law. The police might fine you.
- ♣ 14-It broke Amira's(liver-lungs-heart-head) when her best friend moved to Dubai.
- ♣ 15-The football team did not lose for 50 matches and they managed to(miss-lose-win-break)the record .





- ♣ 16-Do you know anyone who has broken(a car-a bus-a record-a recorder)at swimming?
- ♣ 17-In what ways can people break the(law-low-row-row)?
- ♣ 18-Would you ever (broke-breaking-broken-break)a promise? Why/Why not?
- ♣ 19-What do you usually do in your school ( brake-breaking – bark – break) ?
- ♣ 20-(Novels – Stories – Plays - Poems ) usually have three or more verses.
- ♣ 21-Many modern poems do not follow the (roles-rules-rulers-rollers)of traditional poems.
- ♣ 22-Emily Dickinson was a ( storyteller – novelist – poet – playwright )
- ♣ 23-My little sister liked to wear ( calories –colouring-colour-colourful ) clothes.
- ♣ 24-She spent a lot of her time(travelling-to travel-traveled-travel)around the country.
- ♣ 25-I like to watch this actor because he makes me(to laugh-laugh-laughing-laughed).
- ♣ 26- In winter, we often see (rabbits-turtles-rattles-robins)in the trees in the park.
- ♣ 27-Hassan went to the dentist as the(aching-aging-ash-rash) of his teeth didn't stop .
- ♣ 28-It was very hot and busy in the market today and one tourist (faded-fall-fainted-fed).
- ♣ 29-It hurt when I hit my head on the shelf, but the pain soon(ended-finish-begun-starts).
- ♣ 30-The tourists left the boat and went (beach-shore-coast-ashore)for the afternoon.

### ✓ 7-Definitions :

1	alive	:	living, not dead	علي قيد الحياة
2	challenging	:	interesting but difficult to do	شاق - مُجْهَد
3	moving	:	making you feel strong emotions, especially sadness	مثير للمشاعر
4	publisher	:	a person or company that produces books for people to buy	ناشر - دار نشر
5	robin	:	a small brown bird with an orange front	طائر أبو الحناء
6	aching	:	pain	مؤلم - مَوْجَع
7	fainting	:	becoming unconscious for a short time	إغماء
8	angle worm	:	a long, thin animal, with no bones and no legs, that lives in soil	دودة الأرض
	in vain	:	without success	دون جدوى
10	ease	:	make something less difficult	يخفف - يقلل - يخف
11	break someone's heart	:	make someone very unhappy	يسأم شخص
12	break rules	:	not follow the rules // not do what you should	يخالف القواعد
13	break the law	:	disobey the law // not follow the law	يخالف القانون
14	break a record.	:	to achieve a new record in a sport	يحطم رقم قياسي
15	break a promise	:	The person who doesn't fulfill or keep his promise	ينقض الوعد

### ✓ 8- Phrases, Expressions and Idioms:

1- with all my heart "completely"	تماما
2- at heart "in fact"	حقا / في الحقيقة
3- break for lunch	استراحة لتناول الغذاء
4- break of day "dawn"	الفجر " ظهور أول نور في الصباح"
5- make somebody laugh	يضحك شخص ما
6- make somebody feel	يجعل شخص ما يشعر
7- make people's life better	يحسن حياة الناس



8- a ten-minute break	راحه لمدته عشر دقائق
9- in other words	بمعني اخر
10- the day is over	انتهى اليوم
11- take turns	يتناوب الأدوار
12- follow the rules	يتبع التعليمات
13- cool/ease the pain	يخفف الألم
14- have a headache	لديه صداع
15- lighten the burdens of another	يخفف الأعباء للآخر
16- have a role in society	له دور في المجتمع
17- the rules of traditional poems	قواعد القصائد التقليدية
18- play the piano	يعزف علي البيانو
19- in every verse	في كل بيت شعري
20- spent about half of her time writing poems	امضت نصف حياتها في كتابه القصائد
21- it is difficult to say	انه لشئ من الصعب قوله
22- travel around the country	يسافر حول
23- be given a separate job to do	يمنح وظيفه منفصله لأدائها
24- walk up the castle	يصعد اعلي القلعة
25- break the usual rules	يخالف القواعد المألوفة
26- challenging to readers	تمثل تحديا للقراء
27- get to somewhere safe	يصل الي مكان امن
28- in other words	بعبارة اخري
29- in your own words	بتعبيرك الخاص
30- sound lovely	يبدو رائعا
31- words that rhyme	كلمات بينها قافيه/ سجع
32- in pairs	في ثنائيات
33- positive comments	تعليقات ايجابية
34- with ease	بسهولة
35- need a lot of skill to	يحتاج للكثير من المهارة لكي
36- feel faint	يشعر بالإغماء
37- become unconscious	يصبح فاقد الوعي
38- on the shelf	علي الرف
39- wear colourful clothes	يرتدي ملابس ملونه
40- publish a poem	ينشر قصيده
41- stop one heart from breaking	يزيل الهم من النفس
42- need help into its nest	يحتاج مساعده للوصول الي عشها
43- eat it raw	تاكلها نيئه
44- cannot be seen or even touched	لا يمكن رؤيتها او حتي لمسها
45- on the internet	علي الانترنت
46- members of the group	أعضاء المجموعة
47- feel strong emotions	لديه مشاعر قويه
48- do something illegal	يفعل شيء غير قانوني
49- accepted neither of their offers	لم تقبل أيا من عروضهم
50- spent nearly all her life at home	امضت حياتها بالمنزل





## ✓ 9-Language Notes :

### 1- Phrases with "break":

- 1-Break the rules: disobey or don't follow the usual rules يخالف القواعد والتعليمات المعتادة  
eg: Emily Dickinson's poems often broke the rules
- 2- break my heart: Makes someone very unhappy يحطم قلبه  
eg: It broke my heart to hear about the earthquake
- 3- Break the law: do something that is illegal يخالف القانون  
eg: You may go to the prison if you break the law
- 4- break a record: do better or be greater than an existing record يحطم رقم قياسي جديد  
eg: He walked up the mountain so quickly that he broke a record
- 5-Break a promise: not do what you promised to do : not keep your promise: يخلف الوعد  
eg: I never break a promise. I said I'd help you, so I will help you
- 6- A break for lunch: rest to have lunch يأخذ استراحة  
eg: We need to break for lunch. I'm hungry
- 7- A school break: rest between lessons at school فسحة المدرسة  
eg: We always take/have a ten-minute break at school
- 8- A breakthrough: انجاز علمي في اي مجال
- \*\* An important discovery or event that helps to improve a situation or provide an answer to a problem  
eg: His discovery of the femto-second was a distinguished breakthrough
- 9- Break a habit: do something against his habit يخالف عادته  
eg: He always gets up early, he never breaks his habit
- 10- Break the silence: to start talking يكسر / ينهي الصمت  
eg: King Elphberg broke the silence and asked Sapt about Rassendyll
- 11- Break the ice: يكسر جمود الموقف  
eg: He broke the ice, he told her the truth
- 12- Break a link/connection: to cut a relation يقطع العلاقات  
eg: I can't stand her anymore, I must break link
- 13- Take/have a break يأخذ فتره راحه  
eg: I didn't use to such heavy work, I need to take/have a break

### 2- Moving – Movable – Unmoved

- \*\*Moving "adj" مؤثر / محرك للمشاعر  
eg: Emily Dickinson's "if I can stop" is very moving
- \*\* Movable "adj" متحرك / غير ثابت  
eg: A movable target cannot be captured
- \*\*Unmoved: "adj" متحجر المشاعر / غير متأثر  
eg: When he lost his wealth, he was unmoved

### 3- Adjectives and Adverbs starting with "a"

\*\*تتحول بعض الأسماء والصفات الى ظرف بإضافة "a" في بدايتها كذلك تتحول بعض الأفعال الى صفات بإضافة "a" في بدايتها:

الفعل Verb	الاسم Noun	الصفة Adjective	الظرف Adverb
live يحيى / يعيش		alive حي	
sleep ينام		asleep نائم	



wake	يستيقظ		awake	مستيقظ	
	head	راس		ahead	للامام
			long	طويل	علي طول
	shore	شاطي		ashore	باتجاه الشاطئ
	side	جانب	aside	جانبا / الي جانب	
	board	متن	aboard	علي متن	
part	ينفصل عن		apart	بعيد عن	
float	يطفو		afloat	طافي	

#### 4- Love – Loving – Lovely – Beloved

- \*\* Love** يحب  
eg: He loved his late parents very much
- \*\* Loving** محبوب  
eg: The politician was loving by all members of parliament
- \*\* Lovely** جميل  
eg: What a lovely dress! It must be so expensive
- \*\* Beloved** حبيب / عزيز  
eg: Mahshi is the most beloved dish to the great majority of Egyptians.

#### 5- Subject make object + inf "Active" مبنى للمعلوم

- eg: He makes her keep her promise
- \*\* Subject "is-are-was-were" made + to + inf "Passive" مبنى للمجهول**  
eg: She was made to keep her promise
- \*\* Subject make object + adjective**  
eg: The results of my exams made me happy

#### 6- Spend time + verb + ing يقضي الوقت في

- eg: She spent half of her time writing poems
- \*\* Subject help object + inf or to + inf**  
eg: The teacher helped his students "answer/to answer" all difficult questions.
- \*\* Subject + find + it + adjective to + inf**  
eg: I found it difficult to save all this money

#### 7- Pain / Ache – suffering – twinge – agony

- \*\* Pain:** ألم عضوي او معنوي  
eg: He might have broken his arm. He is crying out of pain
- \*\* Ache:** ألم مستمر / وجع  
eg: He is working as a builder, he always feels ache in his back
- \*\* Suffering:** معاناه  
eg: You are my destiny, there is no end to my suffering
- \*\* Twinge** شكه / وخزه / طعنه  
eg: When I ate too much fat, I felt a twinge in my stomach
- \*\* Agony:** ألم مبرح / سكره الموت / ألم شديد  
eg: He suffers from corona virus, he was in so much agony

#### 8- Go to prison "as a prisoner" يسجن لانه مذنب

- eg: The police could arrest the criminal and was sent to prison.
- \*\* Go to the prison "as a visitor" يذهب للسجن كزائر**  
eg: Every year, he goes to the prison to see his wife

#### 9- Would rather يفضل

- \*\* Subject would rather + inf**  
eg: I'd rather send her a letter instead of visiting her





**\*\* Subject would rather subject + past simple** نلاحظ ان الفاعلين لابد ان يكونا مختلفين  
eg: I'd rather you went home earlier

**\*\* Subject + would rather subject + past perfect**

نلاحظ ان الفاعلين مختلفين وهناك كلمه تدل علي الماضي

eg: I'd rather you had gone home earlier last night

**\*\* Subject would rather + inf + than + inf or noun** عند تفضيل شخص او شيء علي اخر

eg: I'd rather drink tea than drink coffee

eg: I'd rather drink tea than coffee

### **10- challenge "V.N"** يتحدى / تحدى

eg: I challenge you to prove that

**\*\* challenging "adj"** صعب لكن مثير

eg: So are her poems challenging to read?

**\*\* challenged "adj"** مغامر

eg: There will be a competition for physically challenged athletes.

**\*\* unchallenged "adj"** مقبول / متعارف عليه / متفق عليه

eg: We all agree that his opinion is unchallenged

**\*\* unchallengeable "adj"** مطلق / راسخ / ثابت / غير قابل

eg: This issue is an unchallengeable one. You cannot deny that

### **11- \*\* marry be "get" married**

**\*\* marry** يتزوج " بدون مفعول "

eg: He is still single. He doesn't want to marry

**\*\* marry someone to someone** يزوج شخص لآخر

eg: All members in my family hope to marry my sister to a famous player

**\*\* be "get" married to + object** يتزوج / متزوج من

eg: I got married to her at the age of thirty

**\*\* be "get" married with** متزوج ومعه أطفال "يعول"

eg: She is married with three children

### **12- lose - miss**

**\*\* lose** يخسر / يفقد شيء

lose: time / money / his mind / patience / weight / hair / blood / sight / memory / a match / a job / someone / keys / interest / wallet / book / pen

eg: He tried hard to lose weight but in vain.

**\*\* miss** يوحشه / يفتقد شخص / يفوته "مواصلات / فرصة"

miss: Her / Mona / Ali / him / A train / A bus / A plane / Breakfast / Someone / A chance

eg: She missed her late husband so much

### **13- A / An "اسم مفرد + رقم" adjective → بين الرقم والاسم المفرد يحول الى صفة**

eg: A ten-minute = ten minutes' break

eg: An eight-week tour = eight weeks' tour

eg: A two-month holiday = two months' holiday

eg: A 500-year old tree = Five hundreds' old year tree

eg: A five-star hotel = Five stars' hotel



#### 14- Subject verb adjective + preposition + v.ing = Subject verb adjective + to + inf

eg: He was astonished at seeing the real king

eg: He was astonished to see the real king

#### 15- \*spend + ( object )+ (v+ ing )

eg. She spent a lot of her time travelling around the state

#### \* make + object + inf

eg. He made me prepare the dinner

#### \*Stop+ (object) +from+ (ing)

eg. If I can stop one heart from breaking, I shall not live in vain.

#### 16- الأسماء الآتية لا تسبق بصفة و لكن تأتي الصفة دائما بعدها مباشرة.

something	everything	nothing	anything
someone	everyone	no one	anyone
somebody	everybody	nobody	anybody
somewhere	everywhere	nowhere	anywhere

1- I would like to go somewhere quiet. 2- I heard something interesting today.

#### ✓ 10- Confusing words for choices:

vain	متكبر / محتال	vein	وريد / عرق
traditional	تقليدي	conventional	عادي / حسب العرف
steal	يسرق شيء	rob	يجرد الشخص أو مكان من شيء
review	مقاله نقديه	revision	مراجعته
wake "v"	يستيقظ	awake "adj"	مستيقظ
a long + noun	صفه بمعني طويل	along "adv"	بطول
head	راس	ahead	الى الامام
live "v" "adj"	يعيش حي بشكل مباشر	alive "adj"	حي
accept	يقبل	except	فيما عدا
clothes "plural"	ملابس	cloth "singular"	قمماش
ease "v"	يسهل	easy "adj"	سهل
either....or	اما / او	neither...nor	لا و لا
rhyme	قافيه / سجع	rhythm	إيقاع / وزن شعري
poem	قصيده	verse	فقره شعريه
paraphrase	يشرح في ايجاز	summarize	يلخص / يختصر
message	رساله	massage	تدليك
fellow	شخص / رفيق	follow	يتبع
poet	شاعر	poetry	شعر
hear of/about	يسمع عن	hear from	يسمع من
agree	يوافق علي	accept	يقبل
wear	يرتدي بالفعل	dress	يلبس / يلبس شخص اخر
waste	يضيع / يهدر	waist	خصر / وسط
sleep "v"	ينام	asleep "adj"	نائم
shore	شاطي	ashore	متجه نحو الشاطئ
moving	محرك للمشاعر	movable	متحرك (قابل للتحرير)
title	عنوان كتاب	address	عنوان المنزل
fine	غرامه / يغرم	fine	علي ما يرام
heart	قلب	hurt	يؤذي
letter	رساله / خطاب	litter	قمامه
rule	قاعده / قانون / يحكم	role	دور





## ✓ 11- Words and their antonyms :

alive	علي قيد الحياة	dead	ميت
keep a promise	يفي بوعده	break a promise	لا يفي بالوعد
break a record	يحطم الرقم القياسي	miss the record	يفشل في تحطيم الرقم القياسي
follow the rules	يتبع القواعد	break the rules	يخالف القواعد
faint/unconscious	مغمي عليه	conscious	واع
strong	قوي	weak	ضعيف
break	يخالف	follow	يتبع
hopeful	متفائل	hopeless	يائس
ache v.	يؤلم	ease/cool	يخفف
inside	داخل	outside	خارج
ease	يخفف	complicate	يعقد
hope	أمل	despair	يأس
sad	حزين	happy	سعيد
different	مختلف	the same	نفس الشيء
raw	غير مطهي	cooked	مطهي
colourful	ملون	colourless	عديم اللون
live	يعيش	die	يموت
life	الحياة	death	الموت
lighten	يخفف	darken	يظلم
lose	يخسر	win	يفوز بـ
asleep	نائم	awake	مستيقظ
burden	عبء	ease	تخفيف

### \*\*\*Practice(2) Test Your Knowledge\*\*\*

\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- 31- Nabil has .....his own recordings the 100 meter race.  
a) taken      b) destroyed.      c) broken      d) annoyed
- 32- At 12:30 we'll have a..... for lunch and start again at 2 o'clock.  
a) take      b) break      c) promise      d) give
- 33- He always comes on time.he never.....his promise.  
a) takes      b) practises      c) repairs      d) breaks
- 34- She really..... her mother's heart when she left the house.  
a) broke      b) fell      c) cut      d) suffered
- 35- We didn't know that we were .....the law,we should have followed rules.  
a) keeping      b) seeking      c) breaking      d) destroying
- 36- As well as winning the medal,he broke the .....in weight-lifting.  
a) jump      b) record      c) cup      d) stunt
- 37- Follow the instructions, not to try to..... the rules or you'll be in prison.  
a) break      b) cut      c) follow      d) make
- 38- On hearing the violent crime she broke her ..... she got sad.  
a) heart      b) neck      c) leg      d) head
- 39- I gave him my word, I never broke my.....  
a) problem      b) duty      c) promise      d) call



- 40- Everyone must ..... turns to answers the questions.  
a)make                      b)take                      c)do                      d)break
- 41- The newspaper is published ..... Arabic .  
a)in                      b)on                      c) at.                      d)with
- 42- She climbed up the tree carrying a little sparrow..... its nest.  
a)into                      b)unto                      c)on                      d) up
- 43- Can you think of a word that rhymes .....slow?.  
a)by                      b)off                      c)on                      d)with
- 44- She was good .....both writing and playing the piano.  
a)to                      b)for                      c)at                      d)in
- 45- The higher you walk.....the mountain. The less oxygen there is.  
a) up                      b)on                      c)to                      d)off
- 46- We usually take a 30 .....break at school.  
a)minutes                      b)minute                      c)minutes'                      d)minute's
- 47- A:What do you think it means if you .....for lunch? B:It means to stop doing something in order to eat lunch .  
a)break                      b)eat                      c)invite                      d)have
- 48- All of us ..... late.  
a) was                      b) were                      c) be                      d) been
- 49- Security equipment stops thieves .....breaking into houses .  
a)from                      b) of                      c)to                      d)about
- 50- A:What do you usually do in your school .....?B:I have a snack and play with my schoolmates.  
a)period                      b)lesson                      c)assembly                      d) break
- 51- I booked a room for three days in a .....hotel.  
a)five-star                      b)five-stars                      c)five-star's                      d)five-a-star
- 52- Most of us prefer.....holidays by the sea.  
a)spend                      b) spent                      c)spending                      d) to spending
- 53- Emily Dickinson's poems often .....the rules. She didn't follow what was usual at that time.  
a)broke                      b) followed                      c)obeyed                      d)respected
- 54- I'd rather.....some time on my own. I want to concentrate.  
a)to have                      b)have                      c)had                      d)having
- 55- The kind look in my mother's eyes made me.....my problems.  
a)forgetting                      b)forget                      c)to forget.                      d)forgotten
- 56- The skilled teacher asked his students to work .....pairs.  
a)At                      b)on                      c)in                      d)of
- 57- He spent three hours.....physics.  
a)to study                      b)study                      c)studying                      d)studies.
- 58- Her behaviour.....him happy all the time.  
a)forced                      b)made                      c)asked                      d)persuaded
- 59- She.....him leave the place immediately.  
a)expected                      b)advised                      c) told                      d) made
- 60- I spent a..... holiday in Alexandria with my family.  
a)two-week                      b)two-weeks'                      c)two-weeks                      d)two-weeks
- 61-.....means interesting but difficult to do because it needs a lot of skills to do.  
a) Impressive                      b) Exacting                      c) Challenging                      d) Astonishing
- 62- .....means to write or say something in a shorter, simpler way.  
a) Summarize                      b) Note                      c) Remark                      d) Paraphrase
- 63- A .....is a person or company that produce books for people to buy.  
a) publisher                      b) director                      c) producer                      d) organizer





64. The adjective.....means living, not dead.  
a. alive                      b. life                      c. live                      d. lived
- 65- .....means making you feel strong emotions, especially sadness.  
a. Painful                      b. Aching                      c. In vain                      d. Moving
66. To.....is to make something less difficult.  
a. ease                      b. stress                      c. bite                      d. break
- 67.....means becoming unconscious for a short time.  
a. Stopping                      b. Fainting                      c. Living                      d. Alive
68. A.....means a man or a boy.  
a. niece                      b. wife                      c. friend                      d. fellow
69. A / An.....is a long, thin animal, with no bones and no legs, that lives in soil.  
a. cricket                      b. angle worm                      c. flea                      d. spider
70. Something that is.....is interesting but difficult to do.  
a. breaking                      b. fainting                      c. challenging                      d. moving
- 71- In winter, we often see ..... in the trees in the park.  
a) robins                      b) robbers                      c) coffins                      d) ostriches
- 72-Hassan's tooth hurt all night and he went to the dentist because the.....did not stop today.  
a) acting                      b) aching                      c) baking                      d) lacking
- 73- It was very hot and busy in the market today and one Tourists .....  
a) fainted                      b) painted                      c) tainted                      d) destroyed
- 74- We ran to the station but it was in ..... the train had already left.  
a) faint                      b) paint                      c) vein                      d) vain
- 75- It hurt when I hit my head on the shelf, but the pain soon.....  
a) realized                      b) eased                      c) recognized                      d) specialized
- 76- To ..... means to write or say something in a shorter, simpler way.  
a) paralyze                      b) paramedic                      c) paranoia                      d) paraphrase
- 77- ..... means becoming unconscious for a short time.  
a) Painting                      b) Tainting                      c) Fainting                      d) Ranting
- 78- A/An ..... is a small brown bird with an orange front  
a) robin                      b) eagle                      c) falcon                      d) ostrich
- 79- ..... means to make something less difficult.  
a) Tease                      b) Ease                      c) Fees                      d) Bees
- 80- In ..... means without success  
a) vain                      b) vein                      c) pain                      d) gain
- 81- ..... gives the same meaning as pain  
a) Lacking                      b) Baking                      c) Faking                      d) Aching
82. To.....is to make a short. Statement giving only the main information and not the details of a novel, poem, plan etc.  
a. stop                      b. cool                      c. paraphrase                      d. summarize
83. To.....is to write or say something in a shorter, simpler way.  
a. paraphrase                      b. waste                      c. rhyme                      d. ache
84. A/ An.....is a person or company that produces books for people to buy.  
a. rescuer                      b. publisher                      c. poet                      d. challenger
85. A/ An..... is a small brown bird with an orange front.  
a. owl                      b. nightingale                      c. robin                      d. eagle
- 86-.....means without success.  
a. Challenging                      b. Cooling                      c. In vain                      d. Rewarding
- 87 .....means the same as pain.  
a. Fainting                      b. Moving                      c. Comforting                      d. Aching



88. The waiter told me that they have meat and chicken. I told him to bring.....of them, because I'm vegetarian.  
a) neither      b) both      c) each      d) either
89. My sister bought two skirts and.....of them are green and long.  
a) each      b) every      c) neither      d) both
- 90 .....of the boys can play basketball well. They're too short.  
a) Neither      b) Each      c) Both      d) Either
- 91- Verses have words that.....at the end of some of the lines.  
a rhyme      b rhythm      c read      d- run
- 92- It's necessary not to.....rules.  
a obey      b make      c break      d- follow
- 93- Are Ahmad Shawky's poems.....to read?  
a cheating      b charging      c changing      d challenging
- 94- Emily Dickinson was good at both writing and.....the piano.  
a playing      b reading      c listening      d hearing
- 95- Most of Emily Dickinson's poems were not..... until after she died in 1886.  
a spread      b published      c written      d composed
- 96- My favourite..... is called If I can stop one heart from breaking.  
a poetry      b poet      c poem      d poetic
- 97- Some people believe that sun.....is a symbol of optimism.  
a. seat      b set      c shower      d shine
- 98- Don't make noise; the baby is.....  
a awake      b alone      c asleep      d. ahead
- 99- I walked.....the beach to enjoy fresh air.  
a along      b a long      c aboard      d. ashore
- 100- It's late, but the children are still.....I can hear them talking.  
a along      b alive      c awake      d asleep
- 101 -He caused her to be frustrated; he broke her.....!  
a heart      b leg      c aim      d hope
- 102 -Good people never.....their promises.  
a. do      b make      c keep      d break
- 103- Who.....the world record for long-distance swimming last week?  
a smashed      b broke      c did      d took
- 104- The government should punish people who..... the law.  
a make      b impose      c break      d keep
- 105- Challenging means interesting but..... to do.  
a difficult      b easy      c ordinary      d impossible

## **\*\*12- Prepositions:**

depend on	يعتمد علي	cut into pieces	يقطع الي اجزاء
focus on	يركز علي	agree with	يتفق مع
live on	يعيش علي	help...with	يساعد في
come down	ينزل	rhyme with	يتناغم مع
cut down	يقطع / يرشد	feel with	يشعر بـ
break down	يتعطل / ينهار	match...with	يتماشى / يضاهاى
go down	تغرب للشمس	get to	يصل الي
at the end of	في النهاية	different to/from	مختلف عن
in a different way	بطريقه مختلفه	read something to/for	يقرا شيء لشخص
at all	علي الاطلاق	move to	يتحرك الي
talk about	يتحدث عن	find it easy to	يجد من السهل ان





in halves	نصفين	pleased to	مسرور ان
on television	في التلفزيون	compare to	يشبه
at that time	في ذلك الحين	learn about	يتعلم عن
in vain	دون جدوي	hear about	يسمع عن
in the age of	في عصر	look at	ينظر الي
at the age of	في عمر	stop.... from	يمنع من
in the end of	في النهاية	walk up	يصعد
travel around	يسافر حول	thank...for	يشكر علي
good at	جيد في	write about	يكتب عن
refer to	يشير الي	break out	تندلع / تنشب
feel about	يشعر تجاه	talk about	يتحدث عن
either...or	اما.....او	next to	بجوار
most of	معظم / غالبية	go ahead	يسير للامام
walk across	يسير عبر	go along	يمشي بطول
in a programme	في برنامج	go ashore	ينزل علي الشاطئ
stay in	يقيم في	the best at	الافضل في

**\*\*\*Practice(3):(Test Your Prepositions)\*\*\***

**\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\***

- 106-This baby's very attached(on-at-with-to) his mother. He follows her wherever she goes.
- 107-Welcome(for-to-at-with) the Book Programme.
- 108-She became very interested(on-at-in-of)archaeology and worked with her husband on excavations around Iraq.
- 109-Some of her books are based(of-in-at-on)her travels to these countries, aren't they?
- 110- In all Agatha wrote eighty crimes many of which were turned (out-into-off-down) films or theatre plays.
- 111-The old man is thought(to-that-if when) have suffered from amnesia.
- 112-She was deeply affected(at-by-with-in)her mother.
- 113-She was suffering (from-of- in-at) amnesia.
- 114-(In-At-On-Over)my way home,I met an old friend.
- 115- Innocent means not guilty (on-of-at-with) a crime.
- 116- You may never have read any (to-in-for-of) her books.
- 117-Agatha Miller was a shy child who was very close (to-with-of for) her family .
- 118- She started writing (by-at-in-into) a very young age and wrote all her life.
- 119- No. during the first World War she worked (like-as-as if-such) a nurse
- 120-She was looking (after-like-at-for) wounded soldiers.
- 121- She learned about medicines and poisons , information that was later used (with-on-onto-in) her writing .
- 122-In all she wrote eighty crime stories , many (of-from-with-in) which were turned into films or theatre plays.
- 123-I remember reading that Agatha Christie was deeply affected(with-for into-by) the death of her mother .
- 124- Christie disappeared for about a week . Nobody knew where she was . Later , she could remember nothing about the week and is thought to have suffered (from-for-of-form) amnesia



- 125- Christie became very interested in archaeology and worked with her husband (on-at-with-for) excavations around Iraq .
- 126-Some of her books are based (in-on-into-onto) her travels to these countries.
- 127-"The mousetrap" has been performed (with-for-from-without) a break and is the longest – running play in the world .
- 128-Her best books have been published in over a hundred countries and translated into (up-for-over-above) forty languages .
- 129-It is a time(at-for-from-of) war in England and everyone knows that there could be an invasion at any time .
- 130-They hear that the invasion is planned (to-in-on-for) the following week .
- 131-He is captured and locked (at-with-for-in) a room .
- 132-(For-From-To-Of) everyone's surprise , it is the shy Mrs Sport .

### ✓ 13 – Language Focus :

#### DISTRIBUTIVES

*all, both, half, each, every, either, neither*

#### **1- All**

1- All + uncountable → singular verb

eg: All Mona's money "am – is – are - were" at home.  
eg: All the food left "has – have – are – were" gone bad

2- All + countable → Plural verb

eg: All Mona's friends "am – is – are – was" helping her  
eg: All my friends "comes – come – is coming – was coming" from respectable families.

3- All can be used with uncountable nouns and plural countable nouns, the word "of" can be added just after all with no change in meaning.

تستخدم مع الأسماء التي تعد والتي لا تعد مسبقاً الاسم ب the او صفه ملكيه والصح استخدام of دون تغيير في المعنى  
eg: You wasted all your time eg: You wasted all of your time  
eg: All of the birds flew away eg: All the birds flew away

4- All can be used in questions and exclamations with uncountable nouns precede by this or that or with countable nouns preceded by these or those and we can add of with no change in meaning.

يمكن استخدام All مع الأسماء التي لا تعد في الأسئلة والتعجب ولكن يسبقها that or this بينما مع الأسماء المعدودة يسبقها those or these ويصح استخدام of دون تغيير في المعنى  
eg: Who has left all "these – this – those – what" paper on my desk?  
eg: Look at all "this – those – that – what" balloons!  
٦- تستخدم all of وليس all قبل الضمائر الشخصية بينما تستخدم all فقط بعد الضمائر الشخصية  
eg: The doctor advised all of us. eg: The doctor advised us all.

٧- يصح استخدام All لتقوم بدور المفعول  
eg: Mona has lost all her money eg: she has used up all of her pens

#### **Synopsis الخلاصة**

1- All → countable → plural  
All → uncountable → singular

يتبع all فعل جمع مع الأسماء التي تعد  
يتبع all فعل مفرد مع الأسماء التي لا تعد  
eg: All the people in the room "am – is – were – was" silent.  
eg: All cheese "contain – contains – consisted – enclose" protein.  
وهنا دلت علي المجموعة ككل " جميع عناصر الشيء او المجموعة دون اهمال لاحد "





1- Demonstrative pronouns: this/that/these/those

2- Relative pronouns: whom/which

3- Personal pronouns: them/us/you

eg: All of us "receive – receives" letters from her.

eg: He deceived all of you

eg: Look at all this snow

eg: We had to buy the red car and the blue one. All of which cost a lot of money

٣- تستخدم all وليس all of قبل الأسماء المعدودة الجمع غير المحددة التي تشير الي أنه من الناس او فصيل من الحيوانات او نوع من الأشياء

eg: All lions are dangerous.

eg: All football players earn a lot.

٤- تستخدم All وليس all of قبل الأسماء الدالة علي كميته غير محدد

eg: All fast food is bad for your health.

٥- يصح استخدام all or all of بعد :

1- All "of" the/this/that → uncountable → singular verb

eg: All "of" the food left has gone bad.

eg: All "of" this food has gone bad.

٦- في الاستفهام والتعجب يصح استخدام :

All "of" the/these/those + صفة ملكية او اسم جمع → فعل جمع

eg: What do all of those words mean?

eg: Why were all of these players late for the match?

٧- اذا جاء ضمير فاعل جمع قبل "all" لا نستخدم of والفعل يكون جمع

eg: We all agree that he is clever.

٨- اذا استخدم all كضمير فاعل يصح ان يأتي بعده فعل مفرد او جمع

eg: If all is well, why do we go there?

eg: All were sad on receiving the news.

٩- عند نفي all تستخدم None

"None" is the pronoun form of "no"

"None" means "not one" or "not any"

وهي لا تحل محل "no one" or "any of"

وهي نفي all وتستخدم لتحل محل الأسماء التي تعد والتي لاتعد

❑ :When "none" is the subject, the verb is either singular or plural depending on what it is referring to.

eg: I'm always looking for inspiration, none comes.

eg: She's always looking for ideas, none come.

eg: None of them was/were sick.

١٠- تستخدم all that بمعنى the only thing ويتبعها فعل مفرد

eg: All that he said was reporting about the accident.

١١- تستخدم all لتقوم بدور المفعول

eg: Did you study all of your lessons?

١٢- تستخدم all لتعطي معنى the/a whole

eg: All week = the whole week

eg: All his life = his whole life

## 2) HALF"of"

Half of → countable → plural

Half of → uncountable → singular

eg: Half of my friends "like – likes" tennis.

eg: Half of the cake is not enough



## 2- Half a/an فعل مفرد + تعبير كمي

\*\*\*\*\* لا تستخدم of في حالة الكمية / المسافة

eg: Half a mile is the distance to get to her school.

eg: Half a kilo of sugar is all we have.

## 3- We use "half of" and not "Half" before pronouns

تستخدم half of وليس half قبل الضمانر

eg: Half of them are absent.

## 4- Half "of" + The/his/that → Singular uncountable noun → singular verb

eg: Half of her life was spent in writing poetry.

eg: Half of that cake was eaten by her

## 5- لابد من استخدام الفعل في الجمع اذا كان الاسم مفرد ويدل على الجمع قبل

"Class, staff, crew, group, team"

eg: Half of the hotel staff wear uniform.

## 6- Half "of" the/these/those/. صفة → Plural countable → plural verb

eg: Half of those plays were written by William Shakespeare.

eg: Half of the football team are very rich.

## 7- Put into your consideration:

Number + and a half → plural

eg: We have been learning English for three and a half years.

٨- اذا جاء بعد half of ضمير مفعول جمع لابد ان يتبعه فعل جمع

eg: Half of us are able to answer the questions.

٩- يصح ان تقوم half of بدور المفعول

eg: He has just eaten half an apple so he is still hungry.

## 3) BOTH

3- Both ..... and

Both of.....

Both.....

Two

Things

Persons

Verb plural

تشير الى اثنين " شينين او شخصين " لا واحد ولا اكثر من اثنين وفعلها دائما جمع.

eg: Both of my parents speak English well.

eg: My mother could speak both English and French well.

eg: Both are my best friends.

٢- يصح ان يستخدم بعد both او both of

The / those / these

يأتي بعدهما صفة ملكية ثم اسم جمع يشير الى اثنين ثم فعل مفرد

eg: Both the teachers were good at teaching.

eg: Both teachers were good at teaching

eg: Both my parents speak English well

eg: Both of my parents speak English well.

٣- يصح ان تقوم بدور المفعول

eg: I bought both my parents a present.

## 4) EACH and Every

4- We usually use "each, every, either and neither before singular nouns:

Each

Every

Either

Neither

Singular noun





eg: Each student wears a uniform.  
eg: Every person has a role in society.  
eg: Neither answer is correct.

**5- We can also use "each, either and neither + of + plural noun + singular verb**

eg: I don't like either of the photos.  
eg: I like neither of the photos.  
eg: Each of the girls spoke well.

**6- Each of**

**Neither of**

**Either of**

} فعل مفرد + أسم جمع + صفة ملكية

eg: Neither of her friends attends her wedding.  
eg: Each of the boys plays well.

٧- يصح استخدام neither/either/each/every ليقوموا بدور المفعول

eg: She sent each friend a detailed letter  
eg: I gave every student some homework.

**8- Very important:**

**The difference between "Every" and "Each":**

Each and Every have very similar meanings, but there are important differences of meaning and usage

١- تستخدم Every لتشير الي افراد المجموعة سويًا بينما تستخدم Each لتشير الي كل فرد في افراد المجموعة  
eg: Each/Every child received a present  
eg: I gave each/every plant some water

وهنا نلاحظ ان الاختلاف في المعني فقط

٢- لا يمكن استخدام Every كضمير ولكن يمكن استخدام Each كضمير

eg: I've seen three films about great women in Egypt, each was very interesting.  
٣- يصح ان نستخدم of مع each ولا يصح استخدامها مع every ثم اسم جمع ثم فعل مفرد.

eg: Each of the children was reading a book.  
eg: Each child was reading a book.

٤- كلاهما يستخدم ليعطي معني "كل" مع التعبيرات الزمنية.

eg: Every evening, he watches a silly film.  
eg: He visits his uncle each week.

٥- يصح ان يأتي بعد each وليس every ضمير مفعول جمع ثم فعل مفرد .

**Each of + ضمير جمع → Singular**

eg: Each of them was reading a book.

٦- إذا جاءت Each بعد فاعل جمع، يليها فعل جمع

**Subject "plural" + each + Plural verb**

eg: They each were reading a book.  
eg: They were each reading a book.

٧- يصح ان يأتي بعد كل من Each او every -- One of

eg: Each/Every one of the windows was broken.  
eg: My classmate has taken every/each of my CDs.

٨- تركز Each على أعضاء المجموعة كأفراد

eg: Each one takes turns cooking dinner in the evenings.

وهنا تشير Each الي اثنين او أكثر الذين شاركوا في العمل  
بينما تركز Every علي كل افراد المجموعة:

eg: everyone takes turns cooking dinner in the evenings.



وهنا تشير الي ثلاثة او اكثر:  
٩- تأتي every وليس each مع:

**Almost, practically and nearly**

eg: Almost every car in the car park was new.

eg: Practically every house now has at least two televisions.

الخلاصة في هذا الموضوع:

تشير each الاختلاف الضمني بين افراد المجموعة او الأفعال الفردية / عدد محدود او قليل:  
بينما تشير every لتعبر عن التشابه بين افراد المجموعة في الحدث او عدد غير محدد او كبير

- 1- Each child was reading a different book, "dissimilar action"  
=Every child was reading a book "Similar action"
- 2- You have to fill in detail on each page individually "dissimilar action"  
=You have to fill in detail on every page "Similar action"
- 3- We go on holiday to a different place each summer "dissimilar action"  
=We go on holiday to Alexandria every summer "Similar action"
- 4- He made a different mistake each time. "dissimilar action"  
=He makes the same mistake every single time. "similar action"

### 5) EITHER and Neither

#### 10- Very important:

The difference between "Either" and "Neither":

١- يشير كل من Either او Neither الي واحد من اثنين وتحل Neither محل not + either

eg: She doesn't like either of the photos.

eg: She likes neither of the photos.

2- .....either

.....neither

eg: Neither answer is correct

3- .....either

.....neither

eg: Neither of the answers is correct .

eg: Either of them is correct .

٤- يمكن ان تستخدم either او neither كصفه او ضمير

eg: Neither book could be understood.

eg: Either theory is possible.

Neither of

Either of

Plural noun

Singular

Plural

eg: Neither of my brothers "play - Plays" chess well.

eg: Either of the questions is easy to be answered.

#### Either: 1- Is positive

2- Refers to one of the two members of the pair. تشير الي شيء او شخص من اثنين

3- One or the other اما هذا او ذاك

4- Either + a singular noun

5- Either of + a plural noun or pronoun





### Examples:

- 1- I can stay at either hotel.
- 2- Either day is fine for me.
- 3- There are two chairs here, you can take either of them.
- 4- Either of you can come
- 5- Either of the hotels will be fine.
- 6- I can eat either of the salads

### Neither:      1- Is negative

- 2- Refers to the whole pair
- 3- "not one or the other" لا هذا ولا ذاك
- 4- Neither + a singular noun
- 5- Neither of + a plural noun or pronoun

### Examples:

- 1- Neither chair is any good.
- 2- Neither of the children wanted to go
- 3- Neither brother came
- 4- I think neither of these dresses fits me
- 5- Neither of us was/were in time.
- 6- Which bag do you want? Neither of them.

### Synopsis: Very important

- 1- Neither ..... nor  
Either.....or  
Not only.....but also } The verb must be conjugated according to the second

الفعل في جملتهم يصرف حسب الفاعل الثاني

eg: Neither Mohamed nor his friends speak English well.

eg: Either she or they are clever

وعند السؤال يصرف الفعل حسب الفاعل الأول

eg: Does neither Mohamed nor his friends speak English well?

eg: Is either she or they clever?

### 2- تستخدم either بمعنى أيضا في نهاية الجمل المنفية

eg: Mona cannot understand this rule.

Ali cannot understand this rule

= Mona cannot understand this rule and Ali can't either.

### 3- تستخدم too بمعنى أيضا في نهاية الجمل المثبتة

eg: My father blamed me a lot and my mother did too

### 4- ..... and so

- Positive sentence and so → Helping verb → subject

eg: Mona can understand the lesson so can I.

### 5- .....and neither

### .....and nor

- Negative sentence + and neither → helping verb → subject  
and nor

eg: She cannot lend me any money and neither / nor can he.



## 6- Subject as well as subject →

الفعل في جملتهم يصرف حسب الفاعل الاول

eg: They as well as he "am – is – are" clever

eg: He as well as they "am – is – are" clever

### **\*Test Yourself: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :\***

- ❖ 1-Each student ( wear –wears – are wearing – were wearing ) a uniform.
- ❖ 2-Every person ( have – has – are having – were having ) a role in society.
- ❖ 3-( Both – Neither- Half – All ) answer is correct.
- ❖ 4-I don't like ( both – neither -either – nor ) of the photos.
- ❖ 5-I have two brothers and ( both–neither–half–none) of them are older than me.
- ❖ 6-I need to be good at(each–all–both–every)speaking and writing English to get the job.
- ❖ 7- (Each–Half–Both–All)engineer in the factory was given a separate job to do.
- ❖ 8- (Each–Neither–Either–All ) the students in my class speak English very well.
- ❖ 9-I was offered tea or coffee, but I had (each–neither–either–all)of them because I don't like hot drinks
- ❖ 10-Neither the father nor the children ( are – is –were–was )at home yesterday.
- ❖ 11-Neither ( did he go – he went – went he – did he went)out nor did he stop talking.
- ❖ 12-The tour guide gave ( half – all - each – either ) tourist a ticket to enter the museum.
- ❖ 13-We can spend our holiday ( half – all - each – either ) in Alexandria or in Sharm.
- ❖ 14 -My sister bought two new skirts and (half-neither-each-both )of them are long and green.
- ❖ 15-The film was very boring and ( half-either-each-every)of the people left before the end.
- ❖ 16-About ( half –either–neither –each)of them are from my village.
- ❖ 17-Tarek loves tennis and watches ( half –neither -each–both)match on television.
- ❖ 18-At a restaurant, would you rather have fish (or – nor -to – too) meat?
- ❖ 19-It is the (lonely – solo -only –alone) solution possible.
- ❖ 20-If I can stop heart from (break -broke-beat – breaking).
- ❖ 21-We hope that safety will (prevail -spread -publish – establish) in our society.
- ❖ 22-Dickinson was born (in -on – into -onto) 1830 in the United States.
- ❖ 23-I shall not live in (vain – painful – sinful -main).
- ❖ 24-The game is suitable for both children (or-either-and-neither) adults.
- ❖ 25-The tourist left the boat and went (ashore-shore–beach-bank) for the afternoon.
- ❖ 26-A(scorpion–angle worm-Robin-publisher)is a long, thin animals with no bones and no legs that lives in soil.
- ❖ 27-Mine is the same rhythm as (find – fine – found -founded).
- ❖ 28-A fellow is either a man (nor – too – or – all) a boy.
- ❖ 29-Both of the girls (am – is - are –was)wearing white clothes.
- ❖ 30-(Either -neither – each – all) child received a present.

### **\*\*\*Practice(5):( Open Book Exercises:)\*\*\***

#### **\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\***

- ❖ 31-I never break(a promise–a bone–a news–the ice)I said I'd help you, so I will help you.
- ❖ 32-I knew that Ahmed would not be late because he never breaks a (head- rule- heart- promise).
- ❖ 33-If you drive too fast, you will break the(vase-promise-low-law)the police might fine you.
- ❖ 34-It broke Amira's (heart-nose -head-hand) when her best friend moved to Dubai.
- ❖ 35-Emily Dickinson's (editor-supervisor-publisher -mentor)changed her poems so they were easier to read.





- ❖ 36-Emily Dickinson's poems often broke the (roles - rulers - fuels - rules).
- ❖ 37-It broke my (leg - arm - heart - nose) to hear about the earthquake.
- ❖ 38-You can go to prison if you break the (low-law-raw-flow).
- ❖ 39-He walked up the mountain so quickly that he (found-made-missed-broke)a record.
- ❖ 40-To (paragraph-paraphrase-parachute-paramedic) is to express what someone says or writes in a shorter and clearer way.
- ❖ 41-Ali said that he would be here at midday and here he is. He never(takes-breaks-makes-keeps) a promise.
- ❖ 42-We walked a really long way to get to the shop. But it was in(veil-vein-vain-view)it had already closed.
- ❖ 43- I don't think that tree is(live-life-alive-alone)any more. All its leaves are brown.
- ❖ 44-They were in danger, so they looked for (somewhere save-somewhere safe-safe somewhere - somewhere is safe).
- ❖ 45-We usually(summarize-memorise-specialise-computerise)the essay's main arguments in the final paragraph.
- ❖ 46-I enjoy(each-each of-all- every of)moment I spend with you.
- ❖ 47-I enjoy (each -each of-all-every of)the moments I spend with you.
- ❖ 48-The teacher talked to (either-away-each-both)of the fifteen students while they were working.
- ❖ 49-The museum is open today and tomorrow, but I can't go on (neither-both-either-all) day.
- ❖ 50-When she was a child, she was good at (both-all-every-either) writing and playing the piano.
- ❖ 51-They may have(either-neither-all-both)no words that rhyme, or words that partl rhyme .
- ❖ 52-(Every-All-Either-Neither) the students in our class are from Cairo.
- ❖ 53-The cake was cut into six pieces, so three of us ate(both-every-each-half) of it and we kept the other three pieces until later.
- ❖ 54-I was offered tea or coffee, but I had (either-neither-all-both) of them because I don't like hot drinks.
- ❖ 55- My parents (all-each- every-both)have a mobile phone.
- ❖ 56- Either you or your sister(have -has-has been-is)broken the vase.
- ❖ 57- Both banks of the river (has-have-is-are) covered in bush.
- ❖ 58- How many students in your class live near you?– About (any-both-every-half) of them are from my village.
- ❖ 59- She spent about (neither – every – both – half) of her time writing poems.
- ❖ 60- My father runs in the park (every – all – half – either) day of the week.
- ❖ 61-The football team did not lose for 50 matches and broke a.....
 

a-record	b-promise	c-heart	d-law
----------	-----------	---------	-------
- ❖ 62- In winter, we often see..... in the trees in the park.
 

a-ropes	b-cats	c-robins	d-rebels
---------	--------	----------	----------
- ❖ 63. Hassan's tooth hurt all night and the..... did not stop today.
 

a-moving	b-painful	c- illness	d- aching
----------	-----------	------------	-----------
- ❖ 64. We ran to the station but it was in .....the train had already left.
 

a- vein	b- available	c- vain	d- value
---------	--------------	---------	----------
- ❖ 65. The tourists left the boat and went..... for afternoon
 

a- shore	b- ashore	c- board	d- abroad
----------	-----------	----------	-----------
- ❖ 66- He drove the car slowly because there was a sandstorm.....
 

a-ahead	b-awake	c- ashore	d-head
---------	---------	-----------	--------



- ❖ 67. It's late, but the children are still.....I can hear them talking.  
a-asleep                      b-silent                      c-ahead                      d-awake
- ❖ 68. To get to the bank, walk.....this road and it is on the right.  
a-alive                      b-ashore                      c- along                      d-around
- ❖ 69- Don't make too much noise. The baby is.....  
a-asleep                      b-awake                      c- along                      d-ahead
- ❖ 70. Many modern poems do not.....the rules of traditional poems.  
a-fellow                      b-follow                      c-forward                      d-run
- ❖ 71. He ate..... the cake this morning.  
a- any                      b- each                      c- half of                      d- such
- ❖ 72. Neither answer..... correct.  
a- are                      b- has                      c- does                      d-is
- ❖ 73.I don't like..... the photos.  
a- either of                      b- neither of                      c- every of                      d- much of
- ❖ 74.....student wears a uniform.  
a-All                      b- Both                      c- Each                      d-Some
- ❖ 75.....student was given a book.  
a-All                      b- Every                      c- Many                      d- Half
- ❖ 76.I like.....the photos.  
a- much of                      b- any of                      c- some                      d- neither of
- ❖ 77. Every person..... a role in society.  
a- have had                      b- has have                      c- has                      d-have
- ❖ 78. All Mona's money is at home, so.....her friends are helping her.  
a-each                      b- all                      c- both                      d-either
- ❖ 79. Half (of)..... like tennis.  
a- my friends                      b- the friend                      c- each friend                      d- friends
- ❖ 80- ..... the girls speaks well.  
a-All of                      b- Either of                      c- Many of                      d- Each of
- ❖ 81-..... engineer in the factory was given a separate job to do.  
a-Each                      b-All                      c-Both                      d-Some
- ❖ 82..... the students in my class speak English very well.  
a-The number of                      b-Every                      c- All                      d-Each
- ❖ 83- I like ..... of coffee nor tea. I don't like hot drinks.  
a-all                      b-neither                      c-a few                      d-much
- ❖ 84-I like.....fish and meat, but I usually have chicken.  
a-each                      b-such                      c-enough                      d-both
- ❖ 85 - .....of my family speaks some English, but mother is the best!  
a-Each                      b-Either                      c-A little                      d- Enough
- ❖ 86 About.....of students in my class are from my village  
a-every                      b- either                      c- half                      d-much
- ❖ 87- ..... school subject is different. I don't have a favourite.  
a-All                      b- Every                      c-Much                      d-Too
- ❖ 88- I like ..... a holiday on a beach or in the countryside.  
a- neither                      b- all                      c- both                      d- either
- ❖ 89-We looked at two hotels on the internet and.....of them would be great for a holiday.  
a-all                      b-every                      c-either                      d-any
- ❖ 90-..... of the five tourists from the north of Europe had blond hair.  
a-Each                      b-A little                      c-Either                      d-Number





- ❖ 91- What do you think it means if you break( in – on – with - for )lunch?
- ❖ 92- Which words rhyme ( to – for – at – with ) slow?
- ❖ 93-When Emily Dickinson was a child, she was good (at-in-on-to)playing the piano.
- ❖ 94-We ran to the station but it was(on-in-at-of)vain. The train had already left.
- ❖ 95- My father drove the car slowly as we saw a sandstorm(ahead-head-hand-leg).
- ❖ 96-Some of the fish in the market are still(alive-dead-live-living),so they are very fresh.
- ❖ 97-It's late, but the children are still(sleep-asleep-awake-along). I can hear them talking.
- ❖ 98-To get to the bank, walk(long-along-longer-longest)this road and turn right at the baker's.
- ❖ 99-Don't make too much noise. The baby is(asleep-awake-studying-drawing ) .
- ❖ 100-If I can stop one heart from breaking, I shall not live in(vanity-veil-vet-vain).
- ❖ 101-She hopes she can make someone's life less(painful-pain-happy-heavy).
- ❖ 102-The robin needs help into its nest because it is(cautious-conscious-unconscious-fan).
- ❖ 103-To(phrase-phase-copy-paraphrase)means to write or say something in a shorter simpler way.
- ❖ 104-How many ( poets - verses- vases – faces ) does "If I can stop" have?
- ❖ 105-What can you do in your life to follow the (advise-device-advisor-advice)in the poem?
- ❖ 106-"No one is useless in this world who(lightens-lights-lightening-puts)the burdens of another."
- ❖ 107-The most beautiful thing in life must be (filled-felt-fainted-faded)with the heart.
- ❖ 108- It was so hot inside the room that I thought I was going to (faint-fat-paint-rent).
- ❖ 109-I ran ten kilometres yesterday and now my legs (ache-acre-cute-relaxing).
- ❖ 110-Mona has a bad headache but this medicine should(release-tease-ends-ease) the pain.
- ❖ 111-(Get-Put-Give-Take)turns to read your song or poem to your partner.
- ❖ 112-Ask someone to paraphrase or (summary-sum-summer-summarize)the poem.
- ❖ 113-A(warm-worm-warn-worn)is a long, thin animal, with no bones and no legs, that lives in soil.
- ❖ 114-(Are-Is-Has-Was) either my brothers or my father responsible ? .
- ❖ 115-The boat went slowly because there were rocks(ashore-along-ahead-heading).
- ❖ 116-All Mona's money (are-were-is-have been)at home .
- ❖ 117-All Sara's friends (were-are-is-was)helping her at this moment.
- ❖ 118-He ate half (of-off-on-at)the cake this morning .
- ❖ 119-Half of my friends (like-likes-is liking-has liked)tennis.
- ❖ 120-My house is(half-all-each-every)a kilometre from here.

**\*\*\*Practice(5):( Previous Exams Egypt, Sudan and Azhar: )\*\*\***

**\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\***

- ❖ 121-Some of the passengers injures were seriously, but fortunately no one .....  
a) dead                      b) died                      c) alive                      d) lived
- ❖ 122. We went to our injured friend to ..... his pain.  
a) east                      b) easily                      c) easy                      d) ease
- ❖ 123. They didn't find another cake. So, they cut it .....halves and shared it,  
a) to                      b) in                      c) with                      d) at
- ❖ 124. This dog is savage. It..... everyone who comes near it.  
a) boats                      b) beats                      c) chews                      d) bites
- ❖ 125. If you..... the rules, you won't go to the jail.  
a) write                      b) break                      c) damage                      d) follow
- ❖ 126. I like.....the films.They're not funny at all.  
a) either                      b) both of                      c) neither of                      d) neither



- ❖ 127.....the students in my class like English.  
a) Both                      b) Each                      c) All                      d) None
- ❖ 128. I like.....tea nor coffee. I prefer cold drinks.  
a) both                      b) either                      c) neither                      d) all
- ❖ 129. Neither Ali nor his friends..... football.  
a) plays                      b) play                      c) playing                      d) has played
- ❖ 130.....of the five tourists from the north of Europe had blond hair,  
a) Both                      b) Each                      c) Either                      d) Half
- ❖ 131. She spent about..... of her time writing stories..  
a) half                      b) either                      c) both                      d) neither
- ❖ 132.....person of my family speaks French, but my mother is the best!  
a) Either                      b) Each                      c) Both                      d) Neither
- ❖ 133. Mona is good at cooking and cooks..... meal she likes.  
a) every                      b) neither                      c) both                      d) half
- ❖ 134 ..... of these two jackets are green.  
a) Each                      b) Every                      c) Half                      d) Both
- ❖ 135. My family didn't travel this year..... did I.  
a) All                      b) Either                      c) Neither                      d) Every
- ❖ 136. The tour guide gave.....tourist a ticket to enter the museum.  
a) all                      b) each                      c) both                      d) neither
- ❖ 137. We looked at two hotels on the internet, and.....of them would be great for a holiday.  
a) every                      b) either                      c) both                      d) half
- ❖ 138- ..... the people I know are good citizens.  
a) Each                      b) Every                      c) All                      d) Whole
- ❖ 139- I nearly ..... at the sight of blood.  
a) paint                      b) fail                      c) fall                      d) faint
- ❖ 140- I read two different books over the holidays, ..... books were good.  
a) both                      b) all                      c) either                      d) neither
- ❖ 141- I've got a slight ..... in my lower back.  
a) lake                      b) fake                      c) ache                      d) sake
- ❖ 142- Sally wasn't at the party. .... was shady.  
a) either                      b) neither                      c) both                      d) all
- ❖ 143- I recommend taking these pills. They should ..... the pain.  
a) ease                      b) increase                      c) double                      d) move
- ❖ 144- I searched and searched but.....of the shops sold that particular brand of clothing.  
a) neither                      b) all                      c) none                      d) some
- ❖ 145- He must be ninety if he's still .....  
a) alive                      b) ashore                      c) dead                      d) ahead
- ❖ 146- You can't come into the shop with food..... you can drink in here.  
a) Either                      b) nor                      c) or                      d) both
- ❖ 147- She really ..... her mother's heart when she left home.  
a) cut                      b) split                      c) beat                      d) broke
- ❖ 148- There were two photos of me on my phone but I liked..... of them  
a- all                      b- every                      c- some                      d- neither
- ❖ 149- My sister bought two new skirts and..... of them are long  
a- both                      b- all                      c- half                      d- every
- ❖ 150- The film was boring and.....of the people left before the end.  
a- any                      b- every                      c- half                      d- any





## Homework: Open Book Practice

**1)\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :\*\*\***

- 1-(Accounts-freelances-organizations-deadlines)are dates or times by which you must finish something.
- 2-Emily Dickinson's poems were(very traditional-traditional-modern-rhymed).
- 3-Emily Dickinson's poems often broke the rules, did not follow the(usual-unusual-normal - abnormal) rules.
- 4-When she was a child, she was good at(every-half-both-all)writing and playing piano.
- 5-(All-Every-Each-Both)engineer in the factory was given a separate job.
- 6-My mother said I could have(both-every-either-neither)cheese or a chicken sandwich.
- 7-(Each-Every-Neither-Either)person has a role in society.
- 8-(Each-Every-Neither-Either)answer is correct.
- 9-"Fainting" is to become(conscious-unconscious-aware-feel)for a short time.
- 10-"Aching" is to feel (print-painting-pain-painless).
- 11-The speaker hopes she can make someone's life(painful-less painful-longer-shorter).
- 12-The robin needs help into its nest because(it is becoming unconscious-it is very young-it is very old - it is conscious)
- 13-The teacher told the class that(both-all-either-every)student had done very well that year.
- 14-Emily Dickinson spent a lot of her time (travelled around the country-travelled around the world-at home-at schools).
- 15-It(strengthens-broke-deepen-widen) my heart to hear about the earthquake.
- 16-She spent nearly(either-each-every- all)her life at home.
- 17-(All - each - every - both) the students in my class speak English very well.
- 18-I was very hungry, so I had (both-either-neither-every)the cheese and the chicken sandwiches .
- 19-I don't like (either of-neither of-both of-some of)the photos.
- 20-To ease something is to make it(less difficult-more difficult-suitable-unsuitable).
- 21-If the speaker in the poem can stop a person from being sad, her life(will be wasted - will be successful-will be failure-will be dreadful).
- 22-The film about the war was very(moving-challenging-alive-publisher), A lot of people cried at the end.
- 23-Although the plane crashed, rescuers were pleased to find that all the passengers were (alive - moving - challenging - publisher).
- 24-If you drive too fast, you will break(someone's heart-the law-a promise-a record).
- 25-It broke Amira's(law-heart-promise-record)when her best friend moved to Dubai.
- 26-The football team didn't lose for 50 matches and (broke someone's heart-broke a promise-broke a record-broke the law).
- 27-(Neither -All-Both-Half) hotel has a restaurant, but there is a lovely restaurant next to the sand hotel.
- 28-(All-each-every-neither)our staff members are trained to make sure that you have a perfect holiday.
- 29-We want(every-all-either-half)visitor to our hotels to leave with a smile on their face!
- 30-(Each-all-either-half)of the five tourists from the north of Europe had blond hair.



- 31- Oh, no ! I've got blisters on ..... of my feet now. I should never have worn these shoes.  
a) all                      b) two                      c) each                      d) both
- 32- This job tests my ability or determination. It's a / an ..... job.  
a) challenging                      b) boring                      c) easy                      d) challenge
- 33- ..... of the dinner guests was given a gift.  
a) every                      b) either                      c) each                      d) all
- 34- I find this music deeply....., it caused strong feeling of sadness or sympathy.  
a) move                      b) moved                      c) moveable                      d) moving
- 35- Summer sales have started in ..... the shops in the town Centre now.  
a) all                      b) each                      c) both                      d) some
- 36- I drink a lot of coffee to keep me.....  
a) asleep                      b) ahead                      c) awake                      d) ashore
- 37- ..... the dresses you tried on suited you, but you didn't like any of them!  
a) Each                      b) Every                      c) Whole                      d) All
- 38- Try to slow down. The road ..... is very busy.  
a) ashore                      b) ahead                      c) alive                      d) awake
- 39- ..... Ahmed and Adham are good enough actors to be in the lead role.  
a) Every                      b) Each                      c) Either                      d) Both
- 40- She broke the ..... for the 5000 metres.  
a) record                      b) law                      c) promise                      d) heart
- 41- ..... of the shops are dropping their prices by 70 % .It's all lies.  
a) Each                      b) All                      c) None                      d) Both
- 42- He was doing something illegal. He didn't know he was ..... the law  
a) obeying                      b) following                      c) respecting                      d) breaking
- 43- We've seen different suitcases and ..... of them will fit inside the aeroplane.  
Just choose one!  
a) both                      b) either                      c) neither                      d) all
- 44- His job is to produce and sell books. He is a/an .....  
a) illustrator                      b) editor                      c) author                      d) publisher
- 45- In a basketball match, ..... team has five players.  
a) all                      b) each                      c) none                      d) whole
- 46- The word break ..... with awake.  
a) rhymes                      b) shares                      c) negates                      d) deals
- 47- Take a couple of weeks off. You really need a/an .....  
a) awake                      b) make                      c) ache                      d) break
- 48- I looked at two sweaters, but I didn't buy ..... of them.  
a) neither                      b) either                      c) both                      d) all
- 49- My aunt gave ..... one of us a present.  
a) both                      b) neither                      c) all                      d) every
- 50- Strong wind blew the ship .....  
a) ashore                      b) ahead                      c) alive                      d) along

## 2) Reading Comprehension:

✓ Read the passage and answer the questions below:

Gold is a rare metal with a lovely glowing متوهج colour. It is easy to be shaped, and it is not affected by air or water. As gold is so soft, it can be beaten into very thin sheets and it can also be drawn out into very fine wires. Gold is, therefore, an excellent material for making beautiful objects such as jewellery. Moreover, the ancient Egyptians **prized** gold so much that they believed that gold belonged only to their kings, so they buried many precious in gold objects their pharaohs' tombs, and we can





see many of them in the museums today. The Egyptians were very clever goldsmiths as they could beat gold into sheets. The gold which is used to make jewellery is usually mixed with other metals. This not only makes the gold jewellery cheaper, but also harder. Because it was scarce and therefore valuable, gold was formerly used as money. Many countries keep bars of gold in banks. They can change this gold into money by selling it to other countries. About two thirds of all the gold in the world is kept in this way. Gold is usually buried deep underground. It can also be found in rivers and seas, but it would cost far more money to be extracted than the gold is worth

✓ **Choose the correct answer:**

1-Many countries keep bars of gold in banks so as to -----.

- a) keep it away from thieves                      b) change them into money  
c) buy jewellery                                      d) beat them

2-The word "prized" means -----.

- a) rewarded                      b) handed                      c) valued                      d) sold

3- Gold is (common-hard- scarcely-rare).

4-The gold is used to make (baggage- vehicles- jewels- rigs).

5-The pharaohs (buried- bullied- purified- disappeared)gold in their tombs.

6-Gold can be beaten into sheets due to its (rareness-beauty-shape-softness).

✓ **B)- Answer the following questions:**

7-Why is gold considered an excellent material for making beautiful objects?

8-What did the ancient Egyptians do with gold? Why?

9-Where is gold usually found?

10-Give a suitable title to the passage?

**3) Translation: A) Translate into Arabic :**

1- It is said that television has destroyed the art of conversation and made people unhappy by forcing them to want things they do not need. On the other hand, it helps people to update their knowledge of the world affairs, as they can see current events in different parts of the world the moment they occur.

2- Cutting off trees in cities is an ill deed. Trees give us shade in summer and the green colour makes us feel at ease. Trees also purify the air and they give off oxygen by day. That's why we should do our best to spread the green colour all over our country.

3- The establishment of public libraries and school libraries contributed to improving the learning process as a whole and helped many citizens to read freely. Public libraries play an important role in spreading culture and awareness among people of all ages.

**B) Translate into English:**

1- يشهد عصرنا الحالي طفرة هائلة في عالم الاتصالات و التكنولوجيا الحديثة.

2- تعلم مهارات التفكير الناقد تساعدنا على مواجهة تحديات العصر.

3- أثبتت مصر للعالم كله قدرتها على تنظيم مسابقات عالمية بكفاءة.

4- نظمت مصر مسابقة كاس العالم للشباب تحت العشرين بنجاح.

5- يجب أن يتسلح الشباب بالعمل و التكنولوجيا حتى يحققوا طموحاتهم.

✓ **4) Write an e-mail to a friend of about ( 180 words ) on one of the following :**

Your name is Nour. Your friend's name is Wessam .Her / His address is Wessam@newmail

a)a teacher who has helped or inspired you .

b)which websites you should use to find reliable information



# Unit Five

## Work- life balance

### 1 – Important vocabulary & derivatives:

accounts	الحسابات	freelance (adj.)	مستقل - حر
accountant	محاسب	independently	بشكل مستقل
repeated	متكرر	remind..sb. .. of	يُذكّر.... بـ
Social	للمجتمع	remember	يتذكر
sociable	اجتماعي - ودود للانسان	deadline	الموعد النهائي
social class	طبقة اجتماعية	balance	توازن
regular	منتظم	balanced	متوازن
organization	منظمة - مؤسسة	client	عميل - زبون
take on	يتولى مسؤولية	Feel to	يشعر بـ
Make money	يربح الاموال	train for	يتدرب
separate.. from	يفصل - يعزل.. عن	trainer	مدرب
separation	انفصال	training	تدريب
suffer from	يعاني من	lack	نقص / عجز في
suffering	معاناة	stress	الضغط / توتر
sufferer	مصاب بـ (مرض)	stressful	مُجهّد / ملئ بالضغط
exercise	تمرين	limit : restrict	يُقلّل - يحد من
take..... off	ياخذ اجازة	task	مُهمّة
hardships	مُصاعب	Carry on working	يستمر في العمل
Endure = bear	يتحمل	Available for work	جاهز للعمل
undergo	يقاسي - يتعرض لـ	Available at	موجود في
similar to	مشابه لـ	manage	يدير
similarity	تشابه	manager	مدير
relax	يسترخي	management	إدارة
relaxation	استرخاء	manage stress	يتحكم في الضغط
record	سجل - يسجل	Manage your time	نظم وقته
firefighter	رجل إطفاء	quality time	وقت مخصص للأسرة
sensation	شعور - احساس	tips	نصائح
lack	نقص - يفتقد الي	optimistic	متفائل
treat	يعامل - يعالج	pessimistic	متشائم
treatment	معاملة - علاج	serve	يخدم - يقدم طعام
compete	ينافس	services	خدمات
competition	منافسة - مسابقة	flexible	مَرِن
competitor	متسابق	flexibility	المرونة
equal	متساوي	comfort	يريح - راحة
equality	مساواة	comfortable	مريح
exhausting	مُرهق	comfortably	بشكل مريح
exhausted	مُرهق	timetable	جدول مواعيد

### 2 – Check Your Vocabulary :

do well	يؤدي أداء جيدا	particular	محدد - معين
focus on	يركز علي	purpose	غرض





contact	يتصل بـ	customer	زبون
available for	موجود - متاح	designer	مصمم
even	حتى	as though	كما لو
shortage	نقص - عجز	as if	كما لو
according to	وفقا لـ	make sure	يتأكد
take breaks	ياخذ فترات للراحة	call	مكالمة - يتصل
bring in	يجلب	take a break	ياخذ راحة
poster	ملصق	rest	يرتاح - راحة
employ	يوظف - يعين	as well	أيضا
occupation	وظيفة	lead to	يؤدي إلى
situation	منصب - موقف	athlete	شخص رياضي
make notes	يدون ملحوظات	thought	تفكير
take turns	يتناوب الأدوار	worry	القلق - يقلق
alarm clock	ساعة تنبيه	gym	جيم - صالة ألعاب رياضية
period	فترة	questionnaire	استطلاع رأي - استبيان
vote	يصوت	Well-known	مشهور
loyal	مخلص	nationality	جنسية
envy	يحسد	occupation	حرفة
rewarding	مجزي	interrupt	يقاطع
positive	ايجابي	colleague	زميل عمل - زميل دراسة
value	قيمة	United Nations	الأمم المتحدة

### ✓ 3- Tapescript:-

#### Narrator: 1

**Speaker 1 : I'm a freelance writer.** كاتب مستقل / حر I have just had my first child, so I'm too busy to go to work every day. كل يوم What I like about freelance work is that you can choose how much work you want to do. Before my son was born, I worked very hard. Sometimes I worked so hard that I had to work until late at night. Now, I'm only doing a few hours of work a day. Later; as my son gets older; I'll increase the amount of work that I do. The problem with being a freelance worker is that you don 't always get regular work. عمل منتظم There are times when you can't work hard enough to live comfortably. بارتياح Also, it can be hard to make money and look after يرعى my family.

#### Narrator: 2

**Speaker 2:** When I was younger, I worked such long hours لساعات طويلة that I didn't have any time to myself. The best thing about freelance work is that you can choose your working hours. When you don't have to go to an office each day, you can manage your time. ينظم الوقت Because you're working for yourself, you can make your own timetable. جدول مواعيد But of course it is very important that you get the work done on time. You must meet the deadlines. الموعد النهائي / المحدد

#### Narrator: 3

**Speaker 3:** When I moved away from انتقلت من the city I was working in, I had to make a difficult decision: either to find a new job, or to carry on يستمر working for the same company, but freelance. مستقل I'm a book designer, مصمم so my job is one which can be done almost تقريبا anywhere. All I need is a computer and the internet, and I can do my job wherever أينما I want to. I need to travel to meetings, but I



can take my work with me. When you're a freelance worker, you can choose where you want to do your job.

**Narrator: 4**

**Speaker 4:** I'm a freelance project manager مدير مشروع for a big organization. منظمة I work on lots of different projects. The best thing about working freelance is that I can choose exactly which projects to take on. مسئول عن I find my own clients, العملاء so I usually look for the ones that provide the most interesting projects. The disadvantage العيب of this is that you can't always find new clients to work with when you are freelance. If you are working for an organization, they find the clients for you.

**Narrator: 5**

**Speaker 5:** I'm a freelance accountant. محاسب I like my job, but it sometimes gets lonely, وحيد working on your own. يعمل بمفردة It is more sociable اجتماعي when you are working in an office. Also, freelance workers have to do their own accounts! الحسابات For an accountant that's not a problem, but I know other freelance workers who find doing their job and doing their accounts is too difficult for them to do on their own. بمفردهم

#### ✓ 4 - Reading :

##### *Finding a balance* ايجاد التوازن

##### **A: separate** يفصل **work from home:**

It is important for people to separate يفصل their work life from their home life. At the end of the work day, people should focus on يركز على the fact that this is also the end of that activity النشاط or task. المهمة Mothers and fathers both often need to work, but they have to balance يوازن their family and work. Parents who work should make sure يتأكدوا that they spend enough quality time وقت مخصص لافراد with their children.

##### **B: Don't carry work around.**

Many people find it difficult to get the balance right between their work and their free time. Modern technology means that some people can be at work wherever اينما they are. People can carry laptops and phones with them at all times which means that they can read their e-mails even in their free time. This allows many people to have more flexible مرونة working hours or to work from home. The problem is that some companies find it so easy to contact people that they expect them to be available متاح for work all the time. Even people who are relaxing يسترخون at home may get an important call from work that they have to answer.

##### **C: Take a break.**

Although most workers enjoy what they do, people need rest راحة as well. ايضا Some people work such long hours that they may suffer from stress. ضغط الحياة This can lead to يؤدي الى a lack نقص of sleep and feeling exhausted الارهاق at work. People should remember that athletes الرياضيين who train for a competition منافسة always take breaks, فترات راحة so why should they not do the same from work? A break فترة الراحة can also help to limit يحد the number of days they need to take off اجازة because of illness.

##### **D: Ask for help.**

Everyone has times أوقات when work can be difficult. If you have a problem at work, ask your manager for advice. النصيح He or she should be able to help you. This is often the best way out of stressful situations. الخروج من المواقف المتوترة It is part of a manager's job to help people with their problems.





### ✓ 5-Main Points:

- ♣ 1-I'm a freelance writer, project manager for a big organization, accountant. حر
- ♣ 2-I'm too busy to go to work every day. مشغول لدرجة ان
- ♣ 3-Sometimes I worked so hard that I had to work until late at night. بجد لدرجة ان
- ♣ 4-There are times when you can't work hard enough to live comfortably. يعيش بارتياح
- ♣ 5-I worked such long hours that I didn't have any time to myself. ساعات طويلة لدرجة ان
- ♣ 6-You can make your own timetable. جدول زمني
- ♣ 7-You must meet the deadlines. اخر موعد
- ♣ 8-Either to find a new job, or to carry on working for the same company. اما...واما
- ♣ 9-When you're a freelance worker, you can choose where you want to do your job. عامل حر
- ♣ 10-The best thing about working freelance is that I can choose exactly which projects to take on. يتولى مسئولية
- ♣ 11-The disadvantage of this is that you can't always find new clients to work with when you are freelance. عيب
- ♣ 12-It is too difficult for them to do on their own. من الصعب جدا ان يؤدوا

### ✓ 6- Important Sentences :

- 🌀 1-It is important for people to separate their work life from their home life. يفرق بين
- 🌀 2-At the end of the work day, people should focus on the fact that this is also the end of that activity or task. يركز على
- 🌀 3-Modern technology means that some people can be at work wherever they are. التكنولوجيا الحديثة
- 🌀 4-This allows many people to have more flexible working hours or to work from home. ساعات عمل مرنة
- 🌀 5-Although most workers enjoy what they do, people need rest as well. يحتاج الراحة ايضا
- 🌀 6-Some people work such long hours that they may suffer from stress. يعاني من الضغط
- 🌀 7-This can lead to a lack of sleep and feeling exhausted at work. يؤدي الى نقص النوم و الشعور بالارهاق في العمل
- 🌀 8-This is often the best way out of stressful situations. موقف متوتر

### \*\*\*Practice(1)Test Your Vocabulary\*\*\*

#### \*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- ⊛ 1-An(area-era-organization-ore)is a group of people with a particular purpose, such as a business.
- ⊛ 2-A (daycare-day dream-deadline-dead) is a date or time by which you must finish a job.
- ⊛ 3-To take(off-up-out-on)means to start being responsible for .
- ⊛ 4-A(client-clerk-customary-assistant)someone who pays a person or organisation for services or advice.
- ⊛ 5-(Gradual-Regard-Regular-Irregular)repeated, normal or usual
- ⊛ 6-A(free time-freedom -freelance-free style)is a person working independently for several different organizations
- ⊛ 7-A(social-society-sociable-solo)person is friendly and likes to be with other people.
- ⊛ 8-(Accounts-Count-Accountants-Courts) a record of the money that a company or person has received and spent.
- ⊛ 9-The company has an accountant to do the company(counts-accounts-works-tusks).
- ⊛ 10-Tarek is not employed by the computer company. He is a(labourer-freelance-regular- gradual) worker.
- ⊛ 11-It is good to do(regular-burglar-burger-irregular)exercise, so I go running every day.



- ★ 12-Manal has to finish the work tonight because there is an important (rendezvous- date-history-deadline) tomorrow morning.
- ★ 13-Hamdi is very tired because he decided to .....two new projects at work.  
a) take off                      b) take on                      c) take down                      d) take after
- ★ 14-My father will be late home today because he has a meeting with an important .....  
a) client                      b)club                      c) curb                      d) cutlery
- ★ 15-Your brother is very.....He likes talking to everyone he meets!  
a)shy                      b-ashamed                      c-social                      d-sociable
- ★ 16- The United Nations is an important .....that works all over the world.  
a) team                      b) group                      c)organization                      d) organ
- ★ 17-Before the start of the new year, the teachers work together to.....a school timetable.  
a) do                      b) make                      c)take                      d) give
- ★ 18- Some graduates think that it is harder to .....work today than it used to be.  
a)get                      b)make                      c)bring                      d)visit
- ★ 19-Before I start revising, I always ( get- do – make- got ) a revision plan.
- ★ 20-My friend Mona ( did- made- get – got ) really well in the test last week.
- ★ 21-Sami (did-made- get-let)a lot of work last night, but he still didn't finish his homework!
- ★ 22-How much money did Aya(get-do-got-do)when she was working in the bank last year?
- ★ 23-My friend (made-did-bought-get)a lot of money when he worked as an actor.
- ★ 24-What are the advantages(in-on-of-about)freelance work ?
- ★ 25-The problem is that , you don't always (get-make-give –found)regular work.
- ★ 26-If you are working (with-on-about-for)an organization, they find the clients for you.
- ★ 27-It is important for people to(separate-mix- join-include) their work life from their home life.
- ★ 28-I have to finish some (tax-tasks-tusks-toast)at the office before going home.
- ★ 29-Parents who work should make sure that they spend enough(quantity-amount-quality-quickly) time with their children .
- ★ 30-Many people find it difficult to get the right(stress-influence-freelance-balance) between their work and their free time.

### ✓ 7-Definitions :-

1-	<b>accounts</b>	: a record of the money that a company or person has received and spent	الحسابات
2-	<b>freelance</b>	: working independently for several different organizations	مستقل - حر
3-	<b>organization</b>	: a group of people with a particular purpose, such as a business	منظمة
4-	<b>regular</b>	: repeated, planned for the same time every day	منتظم
5-	<b>deadline</b>	: a date or time by which you must finish something	الموعد النهائي
6-	<b>take on</b>	: start doing or be responsible for	يتولي مسؤولية
7-	<b>sociable</b>	: friendly and likes to be with other people	اجتماعي
8-	<b>client</b>	: someone who pays a person or organization for services or advice	عميل - زبون
9-	<b>separate</b>	: to divide into two or more parts	يفصل
10	<b>task</b>	: a piece of work that someone has to do	مهمة





11	balance	: when two equal things are treated as though they are equally important	توازن
12	stress	: a continuous feeling of worry about work or your personal life that stops you from relaxing	الضغط
13	suffer from	: have an illness or health problem	يعاني من
14	limit	keep something less than a particular amount.	يُقلِّل - يحد من
15	lack	when you do not have enough of something.	نقص - عجز
16	take.... off	not go to work for a period of time	يأخذ أجازة
17	stressful	making you worried and unable to relax	مُجهِّد

### ✓ 8- Phrases, Expressions and Idioms:

Do accounts	يقوم بالحسابات
do revision	يقوم بالمراجعة على
make a difficult decision	يتخذ قرار صعب
make money	يتربح / يجمع مالا
make your own timetable	يحدد جدولك الزمني بنفسك
work to a deadline	يعمل لمهلة محددة
work on your own	تعمل وحيدا
work a period of time	يعمل لفترة من الوقت
as much as you can	قدر الامكان
get the balance right between	يوازن بشكل متزن بين
a lack of sleep	نقص النوم
get regular work	يحصل على عمل منتظم
work for an organization	يعمل لدى منظمة
home-life	الحياة المنزلية
work-life	الحياة العملية
tips for relaxing	نصائح للاسترخاء
a particular amount	كمية محددة
manage stress	يتحكم في الضغط
have time to himself	يستقطع وقت لنفسه
feel calm	يشعر بالهدوء
make a revision plan	يعد خطة مراجعة
increase the amount of work	يزيد مقدار العمل
the best way out of stressful situations	أفضل طريقة للخروج من المواقف الصعبة
until late at night	حتى وقت متأخر من الليل
balance family and work	يوازن بين الحياة العملية و المنزلية
manage your time	تدير وقتك
dislike about	يكره بخصوص
do well	يؤدي بصورة جيدة
get an important call from work	يتلقى مكالمة هاتفية مهمة من العمل
do a sport	يؤدي رياضة
Spend enough quality time with	يقضي وقت مخصص للأسرة
help people with their problems	تساعد الناس في مشاكلهم
equally important	متساوي في الاهمية
have an illness	يعاني من مرض



have more flexible working hours	الحصول على ساعات عمل أكثر مرونة
you couldn't stop laughing	لن استطيع التوقف عن الضحك
take on a project	يتولى مشروع
stressful situations	مواقف صعبة
fall asleep	يغلبه النعاس
fast asleep	مستغرق في النوم
limit the time they need to take off	يحد من وقت الاجازات
stop us from arguing	يمنعك من الجدل
get the work done	تنتهي العمل
they find clients for you	يجدون العملاء لك
go running	يمارس الجري
a freelance worker	عامل مستقل / حر
freelance work	عمل حر
go on a plane	يسافر بالطائرة
get lonely working on your own	تشعر بالعزلة في العمل منفردا
a primary school teacher	مدرس مرحلة ابتدائية

### ✓ 9-Language Notes :

#### 1) take—off / take off / take + prepositions

1) Take off	تقلع "الطائره"
Eg: Hurry up, the plane will take off soon.	
2) Take off	ياخذ اجازته
Eg: If I take the week off, I'll spend it in Alexandria	
3) Take off	يصبح ناجحا او مشهور فجأة
Eg: His company took off after producing a cure for Covid19	
4) Take off	يفادر مكان فجأة
When the teacher insulted her, she took off the class	
5) Take something off	يخلع / ينزع / يزيل "طريقه كلام / سلوك"
If you want to get into my house, take your shoes off	
6) Take someone off	يقلد / يسخر من
Some students are very clever at taking their teachers off	
Take part in = share in = participate in	يشارك
Take apart	يفصل
Take place = happen = occur	يحدث
Take down = write down	يدون
Take out	يدمر/يخرج/يصطحب للخارج
Take through	يشرح / يفسر
Take to	يعتاد على / يدمن / ينجذب الي
Take over	يتولى عمل / يسيطر على
Take in	يمتص / يفهم / يخدع
Take--back	يرجع / يذكر بالماضي
Take on	يقوم بتوظيف شخص / يتولى مسئوليه شئ





## 2) \*\* at the end of

في نهايه كذا "يتبعها حرف جر" "of"

eg: At the end of the lesson, the students understood

\* in the end

They got lost in the end

\* at the ends of

eg: There are traffic lights at the ends of all roads

في النهايه "لا تاخذ حرف جر"

عند الاطراف

## 3) Make – do – get

\* make

يصنع العمل / يعمل / يستخدم عند انتاج / صنع / بناء شئ

Make – money – timetable – a plan – cake

eg: My mother made delicious food out of fresh ingredients.

\* Do

يؤدي / يفعل / يعمل / يستخدم للتعبير عند اداء عمل / مهمه / نشاط

Do: work–job–task–mission–walk–well - accounts–exercise–project–a sport

eg: I'll make the kitchen if you do the dishes.

\* Get:

يحصل علي / يستلم "المقدره علي الحصول علي شئ"

Get: job – work – money – award – a medal

eg: After graduation, he did his best to get a job

## 4) \*\* Accept / expect – except – agree

\* accept

يقبل شئ يقدم له

Emily Dickinson accepted neither of the two offers.

\* expect

يتوقع

She is expected to be here on time.

\* except

فيما عدا / باستثناء

All the students were in time for the exam except Mariam

\* agree to

يوافق علي اداء شئ

\* agree on

يوافق علي عده بنود أو شروط

\* agree with

ينفق مع شخص في رأي

eg: I completely agree with you, she is lazy.

## 5) \*\* Let – allow

\* Subject let object + inf.

المصدر + مفعول let فاعل

يسمح / يدع بعدها مصدر بدون to

He let her go to the theatre with her friends.

\* Subject allow object to + inf.

المصدر + to مفعول allow فاعل

يسمح / يدع

eg: The teacher allows her to do the homework later

## 6) \*\* Stress – stressed – stressful

\* Stress

توتر / ضغط الحياه

You are a responsible man. You should learn how to manage stress.

\* stressed

مضغوط من ضغوط الحياه / متوتر

I'm really stressed. I can't bear it anymore.

\* stressful "adj."

مجهد / تؤثر الي التوتر

The army forces work in stressful conditions.

## 7) Freelance – freelancer

\* freelance "v" "as/for"

حر / يعمل بشكل مستقل / يقوم باعمال حره

eg: She is married with two children. She prefers to freelance from home.

\* freelance "adj"

مستقل في العمل / حر لا ينتمي الي جبهه



eg: I'm a freelance writer. I can choose how much work I want to do.

\* **freelance "adv."**

يعمل بشكل مستقل / حر

He is a freelance accountant. He likes to freelance on his own. He like to work freelance.

\* **freelancer "n" = freelance "n"**

يعمل حر / مستقل

Mohamed doesn't want to work as a freelance as he prefers to get regular work.

### **8) Training – exercise – practice**

\* **Training**

تدريب علي مهاره معينه او تعليم في مهنة

**Training is to be given teaching or practice in a profession or skill**

eg: The coach declared that his team needed a lot of training

\* **exercise**

تمارينات بدنيه للصحه و اللياقه

**To do physical exercise in order to be healthy**

eg: To get fit, you must do physical exercise regularly.

\* **practice**

ممارسه

eg: If you want to speak English fluently, you will need a lot of practice

### **9) \*\* reason – cause**

\* **reason for + noun or v.ing**

سبب / مبرر / تفسير

e.g. The reason for being late is unknown

\*\* **reason with somebody**

يجادل مع شخص

She reasoned with her boss for three hours but he wasn't convinced.

\*\* **reason why + sentenc**

السبب

I want to know the reason why you are stressed.

\*\* **cause "v" + object**

يسبب

What caused the war?

\*\* **cause of + noun اسم**

السبب

What was the cause of the war?

### **10) Limit – work**

\*\* **Limit**

يضع حدا لـ / يقصر / يحدد

eg: To encourage our products, we should limit import of foreign ones.

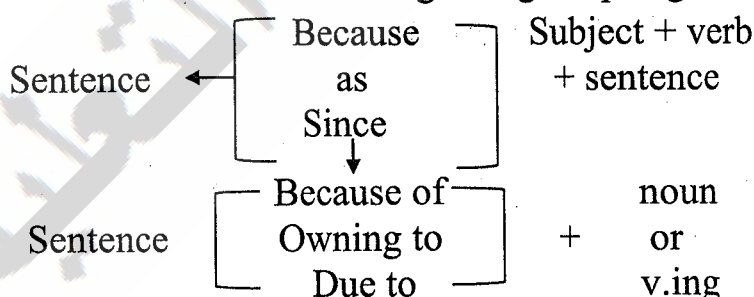
\*\* **Mark**

يحدد / يميز / يبين " علي خريطه / كتاب "

eg: The police mark the dangerous areas on the map

eg: Sham El – Nessim marks the beginning of spring in Egypt.

**11)**



eg: The team lost the match because they didn't play well

- The team lost the match because of / owing to / due to bad play / not playing well / their bad play

**12)**

employ "v"	يوظف
employee "n"	موظف
employer "n"	صاحب العمل





employable "adj."	مؤهل / قابل للتوظيف
unemployable "adj."	غير مؤهل للتوظيف
employed "adj."	لديه وظيفة / قائم بعمل
unemployed "adj."	عاطل
employment	التوظيف / العمالة
unemployment	البطالة

eg: He is unemployable, he is too old to work

**13** It's time → Past simple  
→ For + noun or to + inf

eg: It's time she did her homework

It's time for homework

It's time to do the homework

**14** \*\* The number of → Singular

The number of students increases regularly

\*\* A number of → Plural

A number of students are absent

**15** \*\* as well – too – also – either – not only – but also

\* as well

بمعني ايضا و تأتي في نهاية الجملة المثبتة

eg: He got to the station on time. He caught the train as well.

\* too

بمعني ايضا و تأتي في نهاية الجمل المثبتة

He can understand the lesson and she can too

\* also

بمعني ايضا و تأتي عادة قبل الفعل

He got to the station on time. He also caught the train

\* either

بمعني ايضا تأتي في نهاية الجمل المنفية

eg: He can not understand the gravity of the situation and she can't either

\* not only – but also

ليس فقط – و لكن ايضا

\*\* اذا جاءت في بدايه الجملة تأتي علي صيغه استفهام

Not only + helping verb + subject + main verb + but also + sentence

- Not only did he get to the station in time but also, he caught the train

- He not only got to the station on time but he also caught the train

### ✓ 10- Confusing words for choices:

because/as/since + sentence	لان	due to owning to because of	+ v.ing	بسبب - يرجع الى
afraid of + noun	خائف من	afraid to + inf.		خائف ان يفعل
help-in	يساعد في مهمة طويلة	help with		يساعد في مهمة
well-known for	معروف بـ	well-known to		معروف لدى
how many	كم العدد	how much		كم للكمية
sociable	شخص اجتماعي	social		اجتماعي / خاص للمجتمع
freelance	حر / مستقل في عمله	free		حر / مجاني
task	مهمة / نشاط عمل	mission		مهمة تحتاج لقدرة من الجهد
feel	يشعر	suffer		يعاني
remind – of	يذكر شخص بـ	remember		يتذكر من نفسه
training	تدريب / الهدف مثل مباراة او مسابقة	exercise		يمارس تمارين رياضية / جسمية
available for work	يمكنه الذهاب للعمل	at work		موجود فعلا في العمل



soup	شربة	soap	صابون
recipe	وصفة لعمل شئ (طبخة)	prescription	وصفة طبية (روشتة)
spectator	مشاهد مباراة او عرض	audience	جمهور السينما / المسرح
alone	بمفرده	lonely	يشعر بالوحدة
account	حساب	accountant	محاسب
athletes	رياضيين	athletics	العاب قوى
available	متاح	valuable	قيم
deadline	الموعد النهائي	headline	عناوين الاخبار
optimistic	متفائل	optimist	شخص متفائل
amount/quantity	كمية	mount	جبل
later	فيما بعد	latter	الاخير او الثانى
lose	يضيع / يخسر	loss	خسارة
on time	فى الوقت المحدد	in time	قبل الوقت المحدد
hard	صعب / صلب / بجد	hardly	بالكاد / بصعوبة
a few	قليل للعدد	a little	قليل للكمية
break	يكسر	brake	فرامل / يفرمل
lead	يقود / يؤدى الى	lead	معدن الرصاص
take off	يوقف / يقلع	put off	يؤجل
ambitious	طموح	opportunist	انتهازى

### 11- Words and their antonyms :

lack	نقص	surplus/increase	وفره/زياده
equal	مساوي	unequal	غير مساوي
dependently	الاعتماد علي الغير	independently	بشكل مستقل
regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم
flexible	مرن	rigid/inflexible	صلب/غير مرن
push	يدفع	pull	يسحب
sociable	اجتماعي	unsociable	منطوي / غير اجتماعي
separate	يفصل	join	يضم
pessimistic	متشائم	optimistic	متفائل
take off	تقلع الطائرة	land	يهبط الطائرة
balanced	متوازن	unbalanced	غير متوازن
employment	توظيف	unemployment	البطالة
limited	محدود	limitless/unlimited	لا حدود لها
limit	يقيد	exceed	يتخطى / يتجاوز
illness	المرض	health	الصحة
relax	يسترخي	tighten	يشد / يحكم

### \*\*\*Practice(2)Test Your Knowledge\*\*\*

\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- ★ 31-What I like about.....work is that you can choose how much work you want to do.  
a freelance                      b freelancer                      c freedom                      d fair
- ★ 32- I'm only.....eight hours work a day.  
a allowing                      b doing                      c letting                      d making
- ★ 33-The problem with being a freelance worker is that you don't always get.....work.  
a gradual                      b gradually                      c regular                      d regularly





- 34-I had to.....a difficult decision and accept work in the 6th October city which is very far from my town.  
a cause                      b take                      c do                      d make
- 35-I can't carry.....working for the same company; the salary is very low.  
a onto                      b over                      c out                      d on
- 36-The best thing about working freelance is that I can choose exactly which projects to.....on.  
a let                      b get                      c take                      d make
- 37- Freelance accountants.....their accounts on their own.  
a ruin                      b do                      c manufacture                      d make
- 38-Particularly,I.....the person who is kind and efficient in his/her work, tourism and business.  
a admire                      b appeal                      c appear                      d disapprove
- 39.A deadline is a date or time by which you must.....something.  
a finish                      b cancel                      c postpone                      d delete
- 40.A/An.....person is friendly and likes to be with other people.  
a ambitious                      b sociable                      c social                      d ambiguous
- 41.After walking for two hours, I.....really tired.  
a ached                      b suffered                      c felt                      d left
- 42.People should get the.....right between their work and free time.  
a blend                      b mixture                      c weight                      d balance
- 43.I don't like to work under.....  
a stressfully                      b stressful                      c stress                      d stressed
- 44.Having too much coffee can lead to stress and.....of sleep.  
a lock                      b lack                      c lake                      d luck
- 45.When you don't sleep enough, you can feel.....at work.  
a exhausted                      b exhausting                      c exhaustion                      d exhaust
- 46- A/An.....is a group of people with a particular purpose, such as a business .  
a) account                      b) organisation                      c) freelance                      d) deadline
- 47- A..... is a date or time by which you must finish something,  
a) freelance                      b) account                      c) organisation                      d) deadline
- 48- To..... means to start being responsible for.  
a) take on                      b) take off                      c) take place                      d) take a part
- 49- A.....is someone who pays a person or organisation for services or advice.  
a) seller                      b) sales person                      c) client                      d) criminal
- 50- ..... means repeated, normal or usual.  
a) Strange                      b) Regular                      c) Irregular                      d) Odd
- 51- ..... means working independently for several different organisations.  
a) Freelance                      b) Take on                      c) Deadline                      d) Client
- 52- A..... person is friendly and likes to be with other people.  
a) social                      b) sociable                      c) sensitive                      d) sensible
- 53-The word "....." means a record of the money that a company or person has received and spent.  
a)client                      b) freelance                      c) accounts                      d) deadline
- 54-Tarek is not employed by the computer company. He is a..... worker.  
a) freelance                      b) take on                      c) deadline                      d) client
- 55-It is good to do.....exercise, so I go running every day.  
a) gradually                      b) regular                      c) irregular                      d) regularly



- ♣ 56-Manal has to finish the work tonight because there is an important.....tomorrow morning.  
a) freelance      b) take on      c) deadline      d) client
- ♣ 57.Hamdi is very tired because he decided to.....two new / projects at work .  
a) take on      b) take off      c) take place      d) take a part
- ♣ 58-My father will be late home today because he has a meeting with an important.....  
a) client      b) freelance      c) accounts      d) deadline
- ♣ 59.Your brother is very..... He likes talking to everyone he meets!  
a) social      b) sociable      c) sensitive      d) sensible
- ♣ 60.The United Nations is an important.....that works all over the world.  
a) country      b) organization      c) client      d) freelance

## ✓ 12- Prepositions :

use to = result in	يستخدم / ينتج عنه	advantages of	مزايا لـ
lead to	يؤدي الي/يقود الي	disadvantages of	مساوئ لـ
unable to	غير قادر علي	remind-of	يذكر بـ
according to	طبقا لـ	part of	جزئ من
similar to	مشابه لـ	record of	سجل من
talk to	يتحدث الي	fear of	خوف من
allow-to	تسمح لـ - ان	the number of	عدد
take on	تقبل وظيفه/ مسئوليه	lack of	نقص في
focus on	يركز علي	take off	يوقف/ينقص
carry on	يستمر	the plane takes off	تقلع الطائرة
work on	تعمل علي تطوير	take time of	ياخذ اجازة
move away from	يتحرك بعيدا	take clothes off	يخلع ملابس
separate from	يفصل عن	her career takes off	نجحت فجأة
suffer from	يعاني من	someone took off	يغادر فجأة
stop from	يمنع من	available for	متاح لـ
look after	يعتني بـ	important for	هام لـ
forget about	يناسب / يتجاهل	train for	تدريب من اجل
at work	في العمل	ask for	يطلب
on time	في الوقت المحدد	responsible for	مسئول عن
work with	يعمل مع	look for	يبحث عن
divide-into	يقسم الي	work for	يعمل لدي
push over	توقع/ تسقط	bad for	سيء لـ
the same as	نفس الشيء	well-known for	مشهور بـ
problem with	مشكله مع	talk about	يتحدث عن
at all times	طوال الوقت	be known by	معروف من
as through=as if	كما لو كان رأي	work against	يعمل ضد
a questionnaire about	استبيان رأي عن "بشان"	write about	يكتب عن

## \*\*\*Practice(3):(Test Your Prepositions)\*\*\*

\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- ♣ 61-I can't phone my mother because she is available ( for- at – on – up ) work.
- ♣ 62-My grandmother isn't well. She often suffers ( of- from – at – for )headaches.
- ♣ 63-Your father reminds me ( of – with – by – from ) a famous actor!





- ⊛ 64- The school library is available ( for- at – on – up) the English class today.
- ⊛ 65- When you make the cake, you need to separate the white of the egg (in-at-on-from) the yellow
- ⊛ 66- The plane is taking (in-on-off-to) soon.
- ⊛ 67- I can't take (in – on – off - to ) any time this week.
- ⊛ 68- It was hot so I took ( in – on – off - to ) my jacket.
- ⊛ 69- Her sports career took( in – on – off - to ) after she won the competition.
- ⊛ 70- My father advised me to get( in – out – off – on ) well with my colleague.
- ⊛ 71- My uncle encourages me to look( at – after – out – for) a better job.
- ⊛ 72- You can't apply orally, you must apply( for – up – in – at ) writing.
- ⊛ 73- I have to spend all my money( in – on – at – of ) repairs and decoration.
- ⊛ 74- You don't have to pay to apply( for – to – at – with ) the advertised job.
- ⊛ 75- He has lived in Paris for twenty years and became fluent( of-in-with-about) French.
- ⊛ 76- One should be good (to-for-at-in) the job he is going to do.
- ⊛ 77- Dr Ahmed Zewail specialised (at-in-on-of) chemistry and won the Nobel Prize.
- ⊛ 78- He started his career as a( trainee-trainer-training-train) mechanic. Now he has got a big car factory.
- ⊛ 79- The only thing that she cares( to - about – in –for ) is money.
- ⊛ 80- First of all, thank you for sending us your CV. I see you have a degree in biology and chemistry (at-in-from-to) Alexandria University.
- ⊛ 81- I've been working (as-like-such as-so as) a sales assistant in my uncle's pharmacy.
- ⊛ 82- I should start(to-with-at-by) saying that I have gained a lot of useful experience working for my uncle.
- ⊛ 83- I'm quite ambitious and I'd like to travel (found-round-run-along) in my job and visit other places.
- ⊛ 84- My uncle's told me that yours is an established company( by-with-among-along) a very good reputation in the medical profession.
- ⊛ 85- My uncle has sold your products for many years and has never had any problems (with-by-to-for) them.
- ⊛ 86- And why do you think you'd be good( for-to- at-with) the job?
- ⊛ 87- I'll contact you (in-at-on-about) Saturday morning to let you know the result of this interview.
- ⊛ 88- The secretary asked me to apply( to-at-in- on) writing.
- ⊛ 89- Money is the thing that she cares (from-about-on-with) most.
- ⊛ 90- In 1962 he won the Nobel Prize (to-in-for-of) literature. He died in 1968 .

### 13- Language Focus:

#### Result الروابط النتيجية (لذلك)

so / such ... that; enough / too ... to

#### 1) so :

so = therefore = consequently = thus = that's why = as a result

ونتيجة لذلك – ولهذا – تدل على ان حدث ادى الى حدث آخر

\*Ex : I got a good degree, so I didn't have difficulty getting a job.

\*Ex : He got up late. So he missed the train.

#### 2) so.....that

لها استخدامات عديدة مثل:



### 1- Subject verb so adjective/adverb that + sentence

eg: He was so clever that he could answer all the questions

eg: He drove his car so slowly that he missed the record

### 2- Subject verb so few/many + countable noun + that + sentence

eg: Mohamed made so many mistakes that he failed the exam.

eg: Emily Dickinson had so few friends that she spent most of her life alone

### 3- Subject + verb + so much/little + uncountable noun + that + sentence

eg: She has so much money that she can buy whatever she wants

eg: She ate so little food that she felt hungry after an hour.

### 4- Subject + verb + so much + comparative + that + sentence

eg: Salah is so much faster that he always manages to reach the ball first.

### 5- Subject + verb + so + adjective + a/an + noun + that + sentence

eg: It was so hot a day that I could hardly work.

٦- عندما نبدأ ب so تحول الجملة الى صيغة استفهام

So → adjective/adverb → helping verb → Subject → main verb → that → sentence

مع ملاحظه ان بعض الجمل لا تحتاج الى فعلين ولكن الفعل المساعد يؤدي دور الفعل الاساسي

eg: So clever was he that he could answer all the questions.

eg: So slowly did he drive his car slowly that he missed the record

### Synopsis

Subject

1- So adjective

2- So adverb

3- So many → countable

4- So few → countable

5- So much → uncountable

6- So little → uncountable

7- So much + comparative

8- So adjective a/an + noun

That + sentence

٢- يمكن استخدام so بدون that بمعنى جدا "الي هذا الحد" "الي هذه الدرجة"

- Subject + verb so adjective باقي الجملة

eg: He was so rude

eg: All the mistakes he made, made her so angry

-Subject verb so + adverb باقي الجملة

eg: He was talking to her so loudly

eg: You should apologize because you are so late

٣- نلاحظ هنا ان:

Subject verb so باقي الجملة + that + اسم مفرد يعد + a/an + صفة

= subject verb such a/an + صفة + اسم مفرد يعد + that + باقي الجملة

eg: I have never answered so difficult a question that I failed the exam

= I have never answered such a difficult question that I failed the exam

### 3) such.....that درجه ان

#### 1- subject verb such a/an + adjective + singular countable noun + that + sentence

eg: It was such a high mountain that we couldn't climb it.

eg: He was such a clever student that he could answer all the questions

eg: He was such an active student that he could do all the exercises

eg: It was such an expensive shirt that I couldn't afford





## 2- Subject verb such adjective + uncountable noun + that + sentence

جمله + that + اسم لا يعد + صفة + such + فعل + فاعل

ونلاحظ هنا "عدم" استخدام اداه النكرة

eg: It was such bad weather that we stayed at home.

eg: He has such useful information that he could know the truth

## 3- Subject verb such + adjective + plural countable noun + that + sentence

جمله + that + اسم يعد جمع + صفة + such + فعل + فاعل

eg: They were such active players that they scored many goals.

eg: they were such beautiful photos that we all admired.

## 4- Subject verb such noun that + sentence

جمله + that + اسم + such + فعل + فاعل

eg: My students have such cleverness that they can get the full mark.

eg: He was such an idiot that she could deceive him.

## 5- Subject verb such a lot of + plural countable noun + that + sentence

جمله + that + اسم يعد جمع + such + a lot of + فعل + فاعل

eg: There were such a lot of questions that I couldn't answer

eg: We have such a lot of books that we needn't any more

## 6- Subject verb such a lot of + uncountable noun + that + sentence

جمله + that + اسم لا يعد + such + a lot of + فعل + فاعل

eg: Rassendyll has such a lot of money that he doesn't want to do anything useful.

eg: The teacher has such a lot of patience that he answers all the questions.

### \*Synopsis: الخلاصة ان

- |            |  |                    |
|------------|--|--------------------|
| 1-         | Such a/an adjective+ singular countable noun | } +that + Sentence |
| 2-         | Such + adjective + uncountable noun          |                    |
| 3- Subject | Such a + adjective + plural countable noun   |                    |
| 4-         | Such + noun                                  |                    |
| 5-         | Such + a lot of + plural countable noun      |                    |
| 6-         | Such + a lot of + uncountable noun           |                    |

Or

- |                 |             |                |               |      |        |
|-----------------|-------------|----------------|---------------|------|--------|
| 1-              | such a / an | + اسم مفرد يعد | + صفة         | that | + جمله |
| 2-              | such        | + اسم لا يعد   | + صفة         | that | + جمله |
| 3- (فعل + فاعل) | such        | + اسم يعد جمع  | + صفة         | that | + جمله |
| 4-              | such        | + a lot of     | + اسم يعد جمع | that | + جمله |
| 5-              | such        | + a lot of     | + اسم لا يعد  | that | + جمله |

\*\*يصح استخدام such بدون that و يكون المعني مثل هذا:

ex: He felt such loneliness.

ex: He is such a polite young man

\*\* في بدايه الجملة و هنا لا بد من استخدام اسلوب الاستفهام Such يصح استخدام

### \*\*a/an + adjective + singular countable noun

Such { Adjective + countable plural noun  
Adjective + uncountable noun  
A lot of + countable or uncountable } verb +subject +that + sentence

Such { اسم يعد مفرد + صفة + a/an  
اسم يعد جمع + صفة  
اسم لا يعد + صفة  
اسم يعد جمع + اسم لا يعد + صفة } جمله + that + فاعل + فعل +

ex: Such an interesting film was it that a watched it twice.

ex: Such a lot of money does Rassendyll have that he doesn't want to do anything useful.



4 إذا بدأت الجملة ب It's/ It was نستخدم such ولا نستخدم so

ex: It was such an easy question that I made no effort to answer it.

ex: It's such a stupid action that he was dismissed for.

\*\*5 يصح ان نستخدم such بمعنى "مثل هذا النوع من" بثلاثه اساليب

1- Subject + verb such a / an + objective + singular countable noun

اسم مفرد يعد + صفة + such + a/an + فعل + فاعل

ex: I haven't seen such a beautiful girl like her before.

2- Subject + verb such + adjective + uncountable noun

ex: I have new experienced such bad whether before.

3- Subject verb such + adjective + plural countable noun

اسم يعد جمع + صفة + such + فعل + فاعل

ex: She has never made such silly mistakes before.

6 - يصح ان تحل such محل so + adjective

such = so + adjective

ex: The game was so difficult that I could hardly win.

= The game was such that I could hardly win.

7- So لا يمكن ان نستخدم الظرف او الحال بعد such ولكن نستخدم

ex: he ran so slowly that he missed the bus.

8- يصح ان تأتي Such في محل So+adjective اذا جاءت في بداية الجمل و جاءت بعدها صيغة الاستفهام.

ex: So heavy was the suitcase that I could hardly carry.

4 - enough to = كافي لدرجة ان

1-Subject verb objective enough "for + object " + to + inf

ex: The question was easy enough for the student to answer.

2-Subject verb + adverb + enough " for + object " + to + inf

enough+ for + مفعول + to + inf + حال\ظرف + فعل + فاعل

ex: He spook clearly enough to be understood.

3-Subject verb + enough +uncountable noun + to + inf

to+ inf + اسم لا يعد + enough + فعل + فاعل

ex: He doesn't have enough money to buy a new car.

4-Subject verb enough + countable noun to + inf

to + inf + اسم يعد جمع + enough + فعل + فاعل

ex: There are enough places for all of them to watch the match.

- و الخلاصه ان Synopsis \*\*

1- Subject verb ( adjective/adverb) + "for+object" to + inf

to + inf " مفعول+for " + صفة\حال + فعل + فاعل

\*Subject+verb enough (uncountable noun /plural countable noun) + to +inf

to+ inf + اسم يعد جمع و لا يعد enough + فعل + فاعل

2- يمكن ان يستخدم "enough" كضمير او كحال في الجملة

ex: Has she eaten enough?

ex: Sure, he has got enough. That's all I can offer.

3- Subject "be" not enough + inf عكس الصفة الايجابية

ex: The suitcase wasn't light enough for her to carry.

4 - يستخدم enough مع صفات الملكية و ضمائر المفعول و الاشارة

" my/his/her/its/your/our/it/us/you/them/this/that/these/those"

ex: He had studied enough of these books, He drank enough of the juice.





- 5 – “enough” يصح ان يختلف المعني باختلاف وضع  
ex: The bottle doesn't contain pure enough water.  
بينما هنا كلمة “enough” تصف “pure”

### 5 – too.....to غير كاف لدرجة ان

عاده تستخدم مع الصفات السلبية

- 1-Subject + verb too + adjective “for + object” to + inf  
to + inf + مفعول + for + صفه + too + فعل + فاعل  
ex: The question was too difficult for us to answer.  
2-Subject verb too + adverb + “for + object” to + inf  
to+inf + مفعول + for + " + حال ظرف + too + فعل + فاعل  
ex: He drave to slowly to win the race

### و الخلاصة ان \*synopsis

- 1- Subject + verb too + much + uncountable noun.

اسم لا يبعد + too+ much + فعل فاعل

Ex: Rassendyll ate too much food

- 2- Subject verb too + plural countable noun.

Ex: Rudolf Elphebreg ate too many pieces of cake.

- 3-Subject verb too much + adjective + noun

اسم + صفه + too much + فعل + فاعل

Ex: He drank too much soft drinks.

4 – تستخدم اللطف في نهايه الجملة المثبتة بمعني ايضا

Ex: He can solve the mystery and she can too.

- 5 – Subject verb too + adjective a/an + singular countable noun.

اسم مفرد يحدد ا/ان صفه + too + فعل + فاعل

Ex: It was too difficult a question for me to answer.

6-يمكن استخدام كلا من for/rather/much قبل “too”

Ex: The exam was rather too difficult for all the student to answer.

Ex: The sea was much too hot for us to swim.

- 7- يصح ان نستخدم “too/so/much” بمعني “very” ولكن هناك اختلاف

Ex: He is very tired

هذا بمعني متعب جد ولكن يستطيع الاستمرار في العمل اذا لتقوية المعنى

Ex: He is too tired.

اي متعب جدا ولا يستطيع الاستمرار

“more than necessary” هنا المعنى

- 8- So long /such a long time / So far / such a long way /So many /much /such a lot of

Ex :I haven't seen him so long that I haven't recognized him.

Ex :I haven't seen him for such a long time that I haven't recognized him.

Ex :Why did you buy so much food?

Ex :Why did you buy such a lot of food?

### \*\*\*Test Yourself:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :\*

- ♣ 1-That salad was (so-such-too-enough) nice that I'll ask the restaurant for the recipe.
- ♣ 2-It was (so-such-too-enough) a long film that some people fell asleep before the end.
- ♣ 3-The stadium is big (so-such-too-enough)to hold 50,000 spectators.
- ♣ 4-That ladder is (so-such-too-enough)long to be put on the back of your car.



- ♣ 5-Today is(so-such-too-enough)hot to play tennis outside.
- ♣ 6- Elephants are (so-such-too-enough)powerful that they can push over trees.
- ♣ 7-This is(so-such-too-enough)an old tree that it is amazing it is still alive.
- ♣ 8-People who work long hours often suffer from ( press – stressful – cold –stress).
- ♣ 9-Nobody has been to the top of this mountain because it is (so- such- too- enough) dangerous to climb.
- ♣ 10-This book is (so-such-too-enough)famous that nearly everyone has read it.
- ♣ 11-I wanted to buy a new phone but it was(so-such-too-enough)expensive for me to buy.
- ♣ 12-The hat was (so-such-too-enough)small to wear it.
- ♣ 13-The hat wasn't big ( so – such –too– enough ) to wear.
- ♣ 14-The boys ran ( so – such – too – enough )slowly to win the race.
- ♣ 15- Ola is very intelligent (so-such-too-enough ) to pass the exam easily.
- ♣ 16- Hamdi is(so-such-too-enough) a strong man to be good at weight-lifting.
- ♣ 17- Hana doesn't feel well (so- such-too-enough ) to come to school.
- ♣ 18- Is it ever (so-such-too-enough) hot to play games in the park?
- ♣ 19-This allows many people(have-to have-having-to having)more flexible working hours.
- ♣ 20-The problem is that some companies find it not so easy to(connect-connection-contact-commit) people.
- ♣ 21-When I was young, my mother often.....me from my brother to stop us from arguing.  
a) stopped                      b) encouraged                      c) separated                      d) supported
- ♣ 22- Adel's job is very.....He is a firefighter and his work is often very dangerous  
a) stressful                      b) balanced                      c) pressure                      d) press
- ♣ 23-The sports team has a good.....between people who are fast and people who are strong.  
a) distinctive                      b) balance                      c) balanced                      d) lanes
- ♣ 24-Tamer never goes on a plane. He.....from a fear of flying.  
a) frighten                      b-fears                      c-suffers                      d -saves
- ♣ 25-The teacher gave us all a ..... mine was to interview four students.  
a) test                      b) exam                      c) task                      d) idea
- ♣ 26-In northern Europe, some people become ill in winter because there is a.....of sunshine.  
a) lack                      b) luck                      c) lick                      d) leak
- ♣ 27-You should.....the number of sweets you eat. They are very bad for your teeth.  
a) rise                      b) limit                      c) increase                      d) raise
- ♣ 28-After our walk in the mountains, I ..... really tired.  
a) felt                      b- suffered                      c- fell                      d- fallen
- ♣ 29-Are you coming to football ..... after school?  
a) training                      b- exercise                      c- train                      d- playing
- ♣ 30-Please ..... me to buy my cousin a present, or I will forget!  
a) remind                      b-tell                      c-say                      d-remember

**\*\*\*Practice(5):( Open Book Exercises:)\*\*\***

**\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\***

- ♣ 31. People who work long hours often suffer..... stress.  
a-at                      b-with                      c-from                      d-of
- ♣ 32. Your father reminds me.....a famous actor!  
a-of                      b-to                      c-by                      d-with
- ♣ 33. The school library is available..... the English class today.  
a-at                      b-by                      c-to                      d-for





- ♣ 34- On making cakes, separate the white of the egg.....the yellow.  
a-with                      b-from                      c-of                      d-by
- ♣ 35- The plane is taking.....soon.  
a-on                      b-by                      c-through                      d-off
- ♣ 36- He travelled abroad and worked hard to.....money.  
a) form                      b) make                      c) do                      d) achieve
- ♣ 37- If you want to be organized and achieve your aim in life you should.....your time.  
a) waste                      b) take                      c) manage                      d) realize
- ♣ 38- While she was watching TV she..... asleep.  
a) felt                      b) failed                      c) filled                      d) fell
- ♣ 39- You must..... a decision to travel or not.  
a) make                      b) do                      c) pay                      d) perform
- ♣ 40- I'm pleased I behaved in a really.....way.  
a) interest                      b) interesting                      c) interested                      d) interestingly
- ♣ 41- Finally, he.....regular work in the bank.  
a) took                      b) won                      c) got                      d) ran
- ♣ 42- If you..... a problem, I'll help you.  
a) do                      b) take                      c) make                      d) have
- ♣ 43- You can.....your own timetable.  
a) make                      b) do                      c) take                      d) run
- ♣ 44- I'm only..... a few hours of work a day.  
a) making                      b) doing                      c) sending                      d) carrying
- ♣ 45- The problem with being a freelance worker is that you don't always.....regular work.  
a) save                      b) make                      c) get                      d) win
- ♣ 46- The..... for her actions remained unclear.  
a) files                      b) causes                      c) profits                      d) reasons
- ♣ 47- The..... why grass is green was a mystery to the little boy.  
a) reason                      b) cause                      c) aim                      d) target
- ♣ 48- Spending 3 months in Russia changed my outlook on.....  
a) the life                      b) life                      c) live                      d) a life
- ♣ 49- The government sent the minister of health in a.....to solve the problem.  
a) job                      b) work                      c) task                      d) career
- ♣ 50- The financial performance of the business is fully.....to improve.  
a) accepted                      b) agreed                      c) refused                      d) expected
- ♣ 51. The new agricultural project will take.....thousands of workers.  
a, off                      b. on                      c. to                      d. after
- ♣ 52. I can't phone my mother because she is..... work.  
a. free of                      b. available for                      c. at                      d. on
- ♣ 53. I'm only..... a few hours of work a day.  
a. making                      b. earning                      c. doing                      d. feeling
- ♣ 54. People who work long hours often suffer..... stress.  
a. for                      b. from                      c. off                      d. of
- ♣ 55. Freelance workers have to.....their own accounts.  
a. do                      b. account                      c. make                      d. call
- ♣ 56- It can be hard to.....money and look after my family.  
a) get                      b) do                      c) buy                      d) sell
- ♣ 57. Your father reminds me..... a famous actor!  
a. for                      b. from                      c. off                      d. of



- ♣ 58. The problem with being a freelance worker is that you don't always.....regular work.  
a. make                      b. work                      c. save                      d. get
- ♣ 59- The wall was too high..... anyone to climb.  
a-that                      b-to                      c- at                      d-for
- ♣ 60. There were.....many people in the room that I couldn't breathe  
a-such                      b- so                      c- enough                      d- very
- ♣ 61-To..... is to start being responsible for.  
a. take to                      b. take after                      c. take off                      d. take on
- ♣ 62. A/An.... ..is someone who pays a person or organization for services or advice.  
a. applicant                      b. client                      c. customer                      d. freelance
- ♣ 63..... means repeated, normal or usual.  
a. Regular                      b. Separated                      c. Sociable                      d. Responsible
- ♣ 64-Working independently for several different organizations is known as.....  
a. independence                      b. dependence                      c. freelance                      d. balance
- ♣ 65- .....means friendly and likes to be with other people.  
a. Stressed                      b. Stressful                      c. Social                      d. Sociable
- ♣ 66-When two equal things are treated as though they are equally important, there is.....  
a. ignorance                      b. balance                      c. attendance                      d. substance
- ♣ 67. To.....means to have an illness or health problem.  
a. take on                      b. suffer from                      c. look for                      d. take of
- ♣ 68. Something that is.....makes you worried and unable to relax.  
a. relaxed                      b. relaxing                      c. stressful                      d. regular
- ♣ 69. To take.....means not to go to work for a period of time.  
a. time for                      b. time on                      c. time up                      d. time off
- ♣ 70. A / An.....is a date or time by which you must finish something.  
a. offline                      b. online                      c. deadline                      d. outline
- ♣ 71. To.....something means to keep it less than a particular amount.  
a. limit                      b.take                      c. account                      d. stress
- ♣ 72.....is when you do not have enough of something.  
a. Lack                      b. Suffer                      c. Balance                      d. Freelance
- ♣ 73.A record of the money that a company or person has received and spent is their....  
a. balance                      b. accounts                      c. limit                      d. importance
- ♣ 74..... is a continuous feeling of worry about work or your personal life that stops you from relaxing.  
a. Relaxation                      b. Stress                      c. Business                      d. Separation
- ♣ 75- A/An ..... is a person whose job is to keep financial accounts.  
a- accountant                      b- designer                      c- architect                      d- merchant
- ♣ 76. I'm.....to go to the cinema.  
a too busy                      b busy enough                      c so busy                      d such a busy
- ♣ 77.My brother is careful..... to avoid making silly mistakes.  
a too                      b enough                      c so                      d such
- ♣ 78.They are..... thrilling short stories that I read them twice.  
a-too                      b- so                      c- such a                      d- such
- ♣ 79.Are you.....to do this job.  
a-experienced enough                      b-too experienced                      c-enough experience                      d-no experienced
- ♣ 80.It was..... nice weather that we spent all day on the beach.  
a-too                      b- so                      c- such                      d- such a
- ♣ 81.I can't carry the box. It is too heavy to.....  
a be carrying it                      b be carrying                      c carry it                      d carry





- ♣ 82. The party was interesting. It's..... nice that you joined us.  
a too                      b so                      c such                      d such a
- ♣ 83. Why couldn't you solve the problem? - Because it was..... complicated.  
a not                      b enough                      c such a                      d too
- ♣ 84. The sea is..... that you can't swim in.  
a such cold                      b cold enough                      c so cold                      d too cold
- ♣ 85. One is never ..... to learn.  
a too old                      b old enough                      c such an old                      d so old
- ♣ 86. That coin is ..... to be kept in the museum.  
a so old                      b old enough                      c such an old                      d as old
- ♣ 87. Mr. Amin is..... honest man that all people respect him.  
a so                      b too                      c such an                      d such a
- ♣ 88. I'm sorry. I don't have..... money to help you..  
a too                      b enough                      c such                      d so
- ♣ 89. The lesson is too difficult for me to understand. This means that it is.....  
a so difficult, but I can understand it.                      b so difficult, so I can't understand it.  
c such a difficult one, but I can understand it  
d not such a difficult one that I can understand it
- ♣ 90. Why didn't you attend the party? - Because I was. (so busy -as busy -not busy -  
such a busy)
- ♣ 91 - (Main-Mean-Means-Mainly), someone bought me a new one for my birthday.
- ♣ 92- What hinders our projects is (luck-lucky-lack-lick) of money.
- ♣ 93- (Stress-Accent-Dialect-Tress) is the twenty first disease
- ♣ 94- The book was (so-such-too-enough) interesting that I wanted to read it again
- ♣ 95- The story was (so-such-too-enough) difficult to believe? What happened?
- ♣ 96- He's (such an-so-too-enough) excellent worker! he deserves to get promoted
- ♣ 97- This pizza is (such an-so-too-enough) tasty that I think I'll have another piece.
- ♣ 98- That wall is (such an-so-too-enough) high for me to climb. I need a ladder.
- ♣ 99- They had (such-so-too-enough) terrible weather in England that they came back  
in two days.
- ♣ 100- It was (such a-so-too-enough) hot coffee that I couldn't drink it.
- ♣ 101- You don't need to hurry up, we have (such an-so-too-enough) time to finish  
this exercise.
- ♣ 102- It was (such a-so-too-enough) small car for all of us, so we had to go in two cars.
- ♣ 103- Aly didn't drive fast (such an-so-too-enough) to overtake Alexandria in the last race.
- ♣ 104- Don't worry about her. She is clever (such an-so-too-enough) to realize what she has to do.
- ♣ 105- She didn't speak loudly (such an-so-too-enough) for the audience to hear her.
- ♣ 106- He was (so-such-too - enough) old to apply for the job.
- ♣ 107- He wasn't young (so-such-too - enough) to talk because the music was so loud.
- ♣ 108- We couldn't talk because the music was so loud. It was (so-such-too-enough)  
loud music that we couldn't talk.
- ♣ 109- The queue for petrol was (so-such-too - enough) long that we had to wait two hours.
- ♣ 110- It was (so-such-such a - enough) long queue for petrol that we had to wait two hours.
- ♣ 111- The bridge was (so-such-too - enough) low that the bus couldn't go under it.
- ♣ 112- The food was (so-such-too-enough) delicious that I could have eaten the same again!
- ♣ 113- It was (so- such- such a- enough) delicious food that I could have eaten the same again.
- ♣ 114- The shelf was (such-such a - enough- so) high that I couldn't reach it.



- ♣ 115-It was (so-such-such a - enough) high shelf that I couldn't reach it.
- ♣ 116-Unfortunatly, I wasn't early (so-such-too - enough)to get a good seat.
- ♣ 117-Unfortunatly, I was (so-such-too - enough)late to get a good seat.
- ♣ 118-It wasn't safe (so-such-too - enough)to ski on the soft melting snow.
- ♣ 119-It was (so-such-too - enough) dangerous to ski on the soft melting snow.
- ♣ 120-I didn't know what to buy; there were (so-such-such a -enough)lot of bargains that I couldn't decide

**\*\*Practice(5):( Previous Exams Egypt, Sudan and Azhar: )\*\***

**\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\***

- ♣ 121-It was..... long time since he last saw his brother. (1981)  
a. such                      b. so                      c. very                      d. too
- ♣ 122.The latest model of this mobile phone is.....expensive for him to buy. (دور اول-2001)  
a. too                      b. enough                      c. ever                      d. hence
- ♣ 123. She's..... charming that everybody likes her. (1993)  
a. so                      b. such                      c. too                      d. very
- ♣ 124. Egypt is.....to grow tea in. (1981)  
a. too warm                      b. warm enough                      c. so warm                      d. not warm enough
- ♣ 125. My father is.....to take the family out this Friday. (1987)  
a. not busy                      b. so busy                      c. very busy                      d. too busy
- ♣ 126. The camera is.....for me to buy. I don't have enough money.  
a. too expensive                      b. cheap enough                      c. too cheap                      d. expensive enough
- ♣ 127. It was..... a difficult question that I failed to answer it. (الصف الثانى الثانوى -1996)  
a. too                      b. so                      c. such                      d. very
- ♣ 128. He is..... to buy this expensive car. (الصف الثانى الثانوى -1996)  
a. rich enough                      b. too rich                      c. so poor                      d. poor enough
- ♣ 129. The weather is..... for us to play football today. (دور ثانى الصف الثانى الثانوى-1996)  
a. too nice                      b. hot enough                      c. too hot                      d. very hot
- ♣ 130. My elder brother is.....to lift this heavy box. (الصف الثانى الثانوى -1997)  
a. too strong                      b. weak enough                      c. very strong                      d. strong enough
- ♣ 131. Last Thursday I was.....tired to go out so I stayed at home. (دور ثانى-1997)  
a. so                      b. too                      c. enough                      d. very
- ♣ 132. This book is..... interesting one that I read it twice. (الصف الثانى الثانوى دور ثانى-1997)  
a. so                      b. such an                      c. such                      d. such a
- ♣ 133 The tourist was.....by the Valley of the Kings that he visited it again.  
a. so bored                      b. so fascinated                      c. such bored                      d. such fascinated
- ♣ 134- ..... stormy weather is it that the plane is delayed.  
a) So                      b) Such a                      c) Such an                      d) Such
- ♣ 135- There's no money .....for an office party this year.  
a) responsible                      b)available                      c) valid                      d) capable
- ♣ 136- The soup was ..... hot that she burnt her mouth.  
a) so                      b) enough                      c) too                      d) such
- ♣ 137- He's gone down to the corner shop to ..... some milk.  
a) make                      b) do                      c) feed                      d) get
- ♣ 138- There were ..... few people around, the streets were almost deserted.  
a) too                      b)enough                      c) so                      d) such
- ♣ 139- My son likes to spend time with other people. He's very .....  
a) social                      b) sociable                      c) shy                      d) ashamed





- ♣ 140- It's ..... a popular restaurant, you need to make a reservation.  
a) so                      b) too                      c) enough                      d) such
- ♣ 141. There are times when you can't work..... to live comfortably.  
a) enough hard                      b) too hard                      c) hard enough                      d) such a hard
- ♣ 142. I worked.....hours that I didn't have any time to myself.  
a) too long                      b) very long                      c) such long                      d) long enough
- ♣ 143. The exercise was.....that I finished it in two minutes  
a) so easy                      b) such easy                      c) too easy                      d) enough easy
- ♣ 144. Rami is.....to make very few mistakes.  
a) so careful                      b) such careful                      c) such a careful                      d) careful enough
- ♣ 145. This soup is.....to eat.  
a) too hot                      b) so hot                      c) such hot                      d) enough hot
- ♣ 146. The question is.....for the little boy to answer.  
a) difficult enough                      b) too difficult                      c)so difficult                      d)such difficult
- ♣ 147. It's.....play that you can't miss it.  
a) amazing enough                      b)too amazing                      c) such amazing                      d) such an amazing
- ♣ 148. They are.....long questions that we don't have time to answer them all.  
a) too                      b) such                      c) enough                      d) such a
- ♣ 149. It is.....outside that we can't play football.  
a) such hot                      b) such a hot                      c) too hot                      d) so hot
- ♣ 150. It is.....outside to play football.  
a) so hot                      b) too hot                      c) very hot                      d) such hot

### Homework: Open Book Practice

**1)\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\***

- ♣ 1-(Task-deadline-organization-accounts)are a record of the money that a company or person has received and spent.
- ♣ 2-(Sociable-Regular-Freelance-Take on)is to be friendly and likes to be with others.
- ♣ 3-Before my son was (borne – bear – born – bore) I worked very hard.
- ♣ 4-Also, it can be hard to make money and look (at-upon-down-after)my family.
- ♣ 5-When I moved away from the city I was working in, I had to make a difficult decision: (neither-both-either-each)to find a new job, or to carry on working for the same company.
- ♣ 6-If you are working for an (organization-school-university-church), they find the clients for you.
- ♣ 7-Mothers and fathers both often need to work, but they have to(balanced-balance-betray – beside) their family and work.
- ♣ 8-Tarek is not employed by the computer company. He is a (free time – free line-freelance – dependent) worker.
- ♣ 9-The United Nations is an important (corporation-society-organization-civilization) that works all over the world.
- ♣ 10-How much money did Fareed (get-do-make-let)when she was working in the bank last year.
- ♣ 11-Her sports career took (off – of – in – at) after she won the competition.
- ♣ 12-Although most workers enjoy what they do, people need rest (as well-as well as-as a will – as will).



- ♣ 13- The manager should be able (of helping – to help – get help – in helping) you.
- ♣ 14- Be (positive – positively – negative – negatively) pessimistic thoughts will increase your worries.
- ♣ 15- Other freelance workers find doing their accounts is (enough – so – too – such) difficult for them to do on their own.
- ♣ 16- They are (such – too – so – enough) long questions that we don't have time to answer them all.
- ♣ 17- It is (so – such – too – enough) an interesting book that I cannot put it down.
- ♣ 18- It was (too – so – such – enough) a useful book that I read it twice.
- ♣ 19- That salad was (too – such – so – enough) nice that I'll ask the restaurant for the recipe.
- ♣ 20- This is (so – such – enough – too) an old tree that it is amazing it is still alive.
- ♣ 21- Ola is (too – so – much – enough) intelligent that she passed the exam easily.
- ♣ 22- It was cold (enough – too – so – such) to snow in Egypt, last year in Alrehab.
- ♣ 23- If someone is bullying you, (say – inform – tell – imitate) the teacher.
- ♣ 24- She owes her flexibility to her early (training – train – trainee – trainer) as a nurse.
- ♣ 25- The sports team has a good (communication – illuminate – balance – recognition) between people who are fast and people who are strong.
- ♣ 26- Are you coming to football (training – exercise – performance – skill) after school?
- ♣ 27- The school library is available (for – from – of – off) our class today.
- ♣ 28- Her sports career took off after she won the competition means (gradually – regularly – suddenly – slowly) became successful.
- ♣ 29- It was such an easy exam (to – that – then – than) he answered all the questions.
- ♣ 30- I never knew you had so (many – little – a little – some) brothers that you had to share a bedroom.
- ♣ 31. The publisher told the writer that the..... for his new book was next April.  
a) deadline                      b) debt                      c) line                      d) end
- ♣ 32. It is usual for people to suffer from..... when they have an important job.  
a) stressful                      b) distressed                      c) stressed                      d) stress
- ♣ 33. Using the computer for a long time..... Mona headache.  
a) takes                      b) gives                      c) does                      d) makes
- ♣ 34. Khaled wants to be a..... so that he can help his country.  
a) political                      b) politics                      c) politician                      d) population
- ♣ 35. Amira has always been good with money and does the..... for a large company in Cairo.  
a) accounts                      b) accountants                      c) achievements                      d) activities
- ♣ 36. Ahmed is..... to lift the car alone.  
a) so strong                      b) too strong                      c) strong enough                      d) enough strong
- ♣ 37. There were..... many people at the bus station that they had to wait in a queue.  
a) so                      b) too                      c) enough                      d) such
- ♣ 38. He can't be a teacher because he's got..... little patience with children.  
a) such a                      b) enough                      c) so                      d) such
- ♣ 39. The test was..... to finish.  
a) very difficult                      b) so difficult                      c) too difficult                      d) enough difficult





- ♣ 40. It was..... game that we didn't finish it until ten o'clock!  
 a) so a long                      b) such a long                      c) such long                      d) too long
- ♣ 41- During his speech, the President laid particular..... on the freedom of the press.  
 a) stress                      b) stressed                      c) stressful                      d) stretch
- ♣ 42- Such a long journey ..... that I fell asleep.  
 a) it was                      b) was it                      c) it is                      d) it has
- ♣ 43- It's the good weather that ..... Spain such a popular tourist destination.  
 a) does                      b) makes                      c) gets                      d) keeps
- ♣ 44- Osama is ..... charming that it's very difficult to refuse him anything.  
 a) so                      b) such                      c) enough                      d) too
- ♣ 45- On seeing him, he always reminds me ..... his late father.  
 a) on                      b) at                      c) of                      d) off
- ♣ 46- There were ..... a lot of people at the reception that they had to wait in line.  
 a) so                      b) enough                      c) too                      d) such
- ♣ 47- Before using the lab, teaching staff should receive a week's.... in how to use it.  
 a) exercise                      b) training                      c) break                      d) rest
- ♣ 48- It was ..... cold that I couldn't feel my fingers.  
 a) such                      b) enough                      c) so                      d) too
- ♣ 49- As long as there is emergency, I can't take ..... anytime this week.  
 a) up                      b) on                      c) in                      d) off
- ♣ 50- ..... a lazy man is he that he seldom gets out of bed  
 a) Such                      b) Too                      c) Enough                      d) So

## 2) Reading Comprehension:

✓ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Dear Ali,

How are you? I had wanted to email you before I started my new job, but I did not have time! I've now worked here for two weeks. I'm working in an old building in the middle of the city at the moment and I travel to work by bus. By the end of next year, they will have finished building a new office in a different part of the city. So after that, I'll be travelling to work every day on the metro! Before I started this job, I hadn't known very much about new technology. Now I use it every day. I often talk to people in other countries, using the internet. The work is different every day. Yesterday I was interviewing a businesswoman from Japan. Today I'm visiting a new hotel in Cairo and tomorrow I'm going to a meeting in Damietta. I think I'll have to get up very early because the train leaves at 5a.m.!

The job is very tiring and I don't have a routine yet, but I'm enjoying it. I have already written a lot of articles. You can read them online. I've met some famous people, too. There is a photo of me interviewing a politician in the attachment to this email. He works for the Ministry of Antiquities, so he knows all about ancient Egypt. I haven't met any sports people yet, but there is an important tennis competition next month. There are some famous tennis players going there and I'm sure I'll interview one.

Best wishes,  
Munir



**✓ 1-Choose the correct answer**

- 1-Munir has done this job?  
a-for a year    b-for two weeks    c-since he moved offices    d-since last May
- 2 -He has to get up early tomorrow as.....  
a-he's interviewing a businessman    b-he's visiting a new hotel  
c-he is going to a meeting    d-he's interviewing a politician
- 3-Someone took a photo of Munir as.....  
a-he is famous    b-he was meeting a famous person  
c-he wanted a photo to send to his friend    d-his article is online
- 4-The main idea of the email is.....  
a-Munir's new job is boring    b-Munir doesn't like his new job  
c-Munir's new job is busy but exciting  
d-Munir wants his job to pay him more money.
- 5- **What does the underlined word one refer to?**  
a-tennis competitions    b-business people    c-a famous tennis player    d-a politician
- 6- What does the word antiquities means?  
a-very old things    b-farming    c-medicine    d-education

**✓ Answer of the following questions :**

- 7- Find a suitable subject for this email.
- 8- How does Munir usually communicate with people in the countries?
- 9- What job do you think Munir does?
- 10 -Why didn't Munir email his friend before he got the job?

**3)Translation: A)Translate into Arabic :**

- 1- Some of the most important aims of education are to build up an Egyptian citizen who is able to face the future and to create a productive society. Education also aims at preparing a generation of scientists for the service of humanity.
- 2- Practising activities at school is of great importance. Teachers should encourage their students to participate effectively in school activities. Such activities help students to learn some values like co-operation, respect for others, self-confidence and perseverance.
- 3- Over-population in Egypt has led to many other problems like illiteracy, heavy traffic and unemployment. The government should exert more efforts to bring down the population growth rates. It should also pay more attention to the development of human resources.

**B) Translate into English:**

- 1- لا احد يستطيع أن ينكر الدور الفعال الذي تلعبه التكنولوجيا.
- 2- هل استخدمت مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي مثل الفيس بوك وتويتر من قبل ؟
- 3- يجب علينا ترشيد المياه لتجنب أزمة المياه مع دول حوض النيل .
- 4- يلعب المجلس الأعلى للقوات المسلحة دورا هاما في حماية مصر داخليا وخارجيا .
- 5- تبذل الحكومة قصارى جهدها لتمكين المواطن المصري من مجابهة ارتفاع نفقات المعيشة.

**4) Write an essay of about one hundred and eighty (180) words on :**

- 1- ( Water is indispensable )    مطلب أساسي
- 2- ( The role of Writers in our life)





# Unit Six

## Reach for the stars

### 1 – Important vocabulary & derivatives:

launch (n)	إطلاق - إبداء - يطرح	tourism	السياحة
powerful	قوي	pain (n)	الألم
mission (n)	مهمة	painful	مؤلم
fearless	جسور / لا يخاف	useful	مفيد
leak (n)	ثقب - تسرب	homeless	مشرود / بلا مأوى
examine (v)	يفحص - يمتحن	tasteless	عديم الطعم
distance (n)	مسافة	(do) space walks	يقوم بالمشي في الفضاء
anniversary	الذكرى السنوية	(do) space mission	يقوم بمهمة فضائية
gravity	الجاذبية	weightless (adj)	عديم الوزن
side - effects	آثار جانبية	weightlessness(n)	انعدام الوزن
hopeful	مفعم بالأمل	orbit (v)	يدور حول شيء - مدار
secret (n)	سر	spin (v)	يدور حول محوره / يُدور
gaint	عملاق / هائل	spinning wheel	العجلة الدوارة
astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء	spokes	أسلاك العجلة
amazing feeling	شعور مذهل	sat - nav system	نظام السير بمساعدة القمر الصناعي
location	موقع	representative (n)	مندوب / ممثل
horrible	فظيع / مروع	represent (ed) (v)	يمثل / ينوب عن
system (n)	نظام	(do / cause) damage	يسبب التلف / الدمار
row	صف بجوار بعضه	explore	يستكشف
queue (v)	يصطف في طابور	exploration	استكشاف
queuing (n)	اصطفاف	space exploration	استكشاف الفضاء
repair (v)	يصلح	do gymnastics	يمارس - يؤدي الرياضة
take turns	بالدور - يأخذ دورة	a space station	محطة فضائية
suffer (ed) (v) from	يعانى من	currently	في الوقت الحاضر - الآن
suffering (n)	معاناه	intention (n)	نية / قصد
expect (ed) (v)	يتوقع	intentional (adj)	متعمد / مقصود
expectation (n)	توقع	intentionally (adv)	بتعمد
expected (adj)	متوقع	equipment (n)	معدات
apply (ied) to (v)	يتقدم الى	equip (v)	يعد / يجهز
application (n)	تطبيق / طلب	equipped (adj)	مجهز
applicant (n)	متقدم لوظيفه	location (n)	موقع ليس به مباني
attach (ed) (v)	يربط / يرفق	locate (v)	يضع في مكان
attachment (n)	مرفق / رابط	training (n)	تدريب
benefit(ed)(v) ,(n)	يستفيد / فائدة	train (ed) (v)	يدرّب / يتدرّب
beneficial (adj)	مفيد	trainer (n)	مدرب
improve (d) (v)	يحسن	trainee (n)	متدرب



improvement (n)	تحسين	well-trained (adj)	مدرب جيداً
depend (ed) on (v)	يعتمد على	interview (ed)(v),(n)	يجري حوار
dependence (n)	الاعتماد على	interviewer (n)	محاوّر
predict (ed) (v)	يتنبأ	interviewee (n)	متقابل
prediction (n)	تنبؤ	arrange (d) (v)	يرتب
predictable (adj)	يمكن التنبؤ به	arrangement (n)	ترتيب

## 2- Check Your Vocabulary :

metal	معنـدى	feed	يغذي - يطعم
connect (v)	يوصل - يصل	frightening	مرعب - مخيف
main	أساسي - رئيسي	plans (n)	الخطط
disadvantage	عيب	keep fit	يحافظ على اللياقة البدنية
saving	الادخار	landing	هبوط
climate change	تغير المناخ	cost	يتكلف - تكلفة
global warming	الاحتباس الحراري	important	هام
benefit from	يستفيد من	faraway	بعيداً عن
a space station	محطة فضائية	competitions	منافسات
probably	من المحتمل	in addition to	بالإضافة إلى
solve	يحل	the force	القوة
certainly	بالتأكيد	skilful	ماهر
almost = nearly	تقريباً	physical	بدني
refer to	يشير إلى	exercises	تدريبات
expensive	غالي	movements	حركات
organize (v)	ينظم	perform	يؤدي
find out (v)	يكشف	main reason	السبب الأساسي
liquid (n)	سائل	a waste of	مضيعة
control system	نظام التحكم	transport	النقل
carefully	بعناية	communications	وسائل الاتصالات
air conditioning	نظام تكييف	health	الصحة
broken down	معطل	education	التعليم
replace (v)	يستبدل	work	العمل
get together	يتقابل	book (v)	يحجز
express	يعبر عن	by rocket	بالصاروخ
the front wheel	العجلة الأمامية	giant (n)	عملاق - ضخم
spacecraft (n)	سفينة فضاء	ordinary	عادي
walk around	يتجول	interested in	مهتم بـ
homes	الأوطان	the next step	الخطوة التالية
modern technology	التكنولوجيا الحديثة	experts	الخبراء
satellites	أقمار صناعية	treatments	علاجات
spend money on	يصرف نقود	describe	يصف
timetables (n)	الجدول الزمنية	instant	الحالية - الجارية
space rocket (n)	صاروخ فضائي	a tap (n)	حنفية - سداة
taking -off (n)	إقلاع	make prediction	يتنبأ





### ✓ 3- Tapescript:

Interviewer	:	Thank you for coming into the studio this morning. Could you start by telling the listeners what you're doing this week?
Astronaut	:	<u>Well, this is a very special</u> خاص / مميز week for me. <u>Tomorrow afternoon, I'm being taken with two other astronauts</u> رواد فضاء to a secret location. <u>The spaceship launches</u> تنطلق at 7.50 the next evening.
Interviewer	:	How exciting! How long does it take to reach the Space Station? محطة فضائية
Astronaut	:	It takes about six hours. I'm really looking forward to it. يتطلع اليها
Interviewer	:	What is your <u>mission</u> , بالضبط exactly? مهمة
Astronaut	:	There are two or three little things that need to be looked at on the International space Station, محطة الفضاء الدولية but the main أساسي problem is <u>the temperature control system</u> . نظام درجة الحرارة We think there may be a leak of تسريب some kind.
Interviewer	:	Is that a problem?
Astronaut	:	We don't think so. We think it will be repaired يصلح quite quickly.
Interviewer	:	Is it a difficult job?
Astronaut	:	No, not particularly, بصفة خاصة but we'll almost certainly تقريباً متأكدين need to spend some time working outside.
Interviewer	:	Do you mean <u>a spacewalk</u> ? سير في الفضاء
Astronaut	:	Yes, maybe, but we won't know until we're there. Then all <u>the equipment</u> ستفحص معدات will be examined.
Interviewer	:	Isn't that really dangerous?
Astronaut	:	Not really. We're given a lot of training. تدريب We're told exactly what to do in these situations المواقف when we will be weightless عديم الوزن in space.
Interviewer	:	How long will you be in space for?
Astronaut	:	<u>We'll probably</u> من المحتمل be there for about five or six days. It depends on يعتمد على how serious خطير the problems are.
Interviewer	:	I'm sure you'll be interviewed by a lot of journalists after your mission, but we'd love to talk to you again when you get back!
Astronaut	:	I'd be happy to.
Interviewer	:	Thank you.

### ✓ 4- Reading :

#### Space holidays

20 July 2019 is the 50<sup>th</sup> anniversary ذكرى سنوية of a man first walking on the moon. Now a representative ممثل عن for the World Tourism Organization منظمة السياحة العالمية predicts يتنبأ that, in the next ten years, people will be taken into space for their holidays. They will be flown يحلق in a spaceship to a space station محطة فضاء which will orbit تدور حول the earth at a height of ارتفاع 320 kilometres - that is about the same as the distance مسافة from Cairo to El-Minya. The space station itself will be like a giant spinning wheel عجلة دوارة عملاقة that



looks like a bike wheel. There will be two special areas **منطقتين خاصة** : one with **gravity** **جاذبية** like earth and one with zero gravity **بلا جاذبية** for weightless **عديم الوزن** sports. Some people who are interested in space holidays are worried **قلقين** that, as space tourists, they will suffer from **يعاني من** the same **horrible side effects** **الاثار** **متفائل** as astronauts have suffered from, but experts **الخبراء** are **hopeful** that there will be treatments **علاجات** for most side effects. Just think about such a holiday in space! Everyone who has travelled in space has described the **amazing feeling** **شعور مذهل** of looking down on the earth as it **spins below you**. **تدور تحتك** It will be impossible to go shopping or go for a walk, but think of the fun **المتعة** you can have with **weightless football or weightless basketball**. For most people, **the main disadvantage** **العيب الاساسي** is the cost **التكلفة** of space holidays. At the moment, the cost of a holiday is very high. But, like everything else, the more people want to do something, the cheaper **أرخص** it will become. So, if you are interested, start saving now! **أبدأ التوفير الان**

### ✓ 5- Main Points :

- ✱ 1-20 July 2019 is the 50<sup>th</sup> anniversary of man **first walking** on the Moon. (first walking) أصلها (who first walked) فيمكن حذف (who) وإضافة (ing) على الفعل .
- ✱ 2-People **will be** taken into space for their holidays سيأخذون
- ✱ 3-Everyone who has travelled in space has described the **amazing feeling** of looking down on the earth as it spins below you . الشعور المذهل
- ✱ 4-But ,like everything else ,**the more people want to do something , the cheaper it will become .**
- ✱ 5-We have to repair **equipment** on the international Space Station. (equipment) معدات ، تعامل معاملة المفرد مثل (advice / news / information / machinery / furniture )
- ✱ 6-There are two or three **little (very small)** things we need to look at .
- ✱ 7- **Reach for** the stars . (فعل "reach" يصل إلى " لا يأخذ حرف جر " ولكن يأخذ "for" بمعنى " الوصول " لـ ، كإسم )
- ✱ 8- How do you think the astronaut **feels about** his mission to the space station ? (فعل "feel" يشعر بـ " لا يأخذ حرف جر " ولكن يأخذ "about" بمعنى عن )
- ✱ 9-There is a **problem with** the temperature control system. (لاحظ حرف الجر )

### ✓ 6- Important Sentences :-

- ✱ 1-The car stopped because there was **a leak** in the petrol tank. تسريب - ثقب
- ✱ 2-Our air-conditioning has broken down , but someone is coming to **repair** it tomorrow . يصلح
- ✱ 3-The doctor **examined** me carefully before he gave me the medicine. يفحص
- ✱ 4-Computer passwords should always be **secret**. You should never tell anyone. سر
- ✱ 5-The astronauts went on a two-hour **space walk** **جولة فضائية** to replace a broken fuel pump.
- ✱ 6-Some drivers have a sat-nav **system** **نظام** in their cars to help them find the best route.
- ✱ 7-The rocket is going to reach the Moon on Tuesday. Everyone watched the **launch** **الاطلاق** on TV.
- ✱ 8-Space **missions** can take several years. مهام





### \*\*\*Practice(1)Test Your Vocabulary\*\*\*

\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- ✖ 1-In order to know what is wrong, the doctor must(search-steal-examine-think) the patient.
  - ✖ 2-Modern technologies such as the mobile phone make (procedure- opinion- process - communication) easier.
  - ✖ 3-The ride at the amusement park went down so fast that my body felt(weightless -purple -disguised-fascinating).
  - ✖ 4-We(professionally-currently-never-once)own a Fiat car.
  - ✖ 5-My sister can easily do a spin, as she has been doing (side effects-gymnastics-football-gravity) for years.
  - ✖ 6-One of the (handles-pedals-chains-spokes)on my bicycle wheel needs to be repaired.
  - ✖ 7-The rain was so heavy that the water wheel(launched-leaked-spun-washed)for three days.
  - ✖ 8-(Gravity-Gymnastics-Spoke-Gravy) is the force that keeps objects on earth.
  - ✖ 9-The doctor assured us that there would be no (systems-feeling-side effects-fashioning) from the medicine.
  - ✖ 10-The fashion house is now (launching-lunching-condemning-coaching)some new winter dresses.
- Student's Book & Workbook*
- ✖ 11-The crew are planning a(four-hour-four hours-four hour's-four hours') spacewalk to do repairs on the shuttle.
  - ✖ 12-Space(exploration-explanation-expectation-exemption اعفاء حصانة) costs a lot of money.
  - ✖ 13-The moon has less(gravity-density-degree-humidity) than the earth, so you could jump much higher there.
  - ✖ 14-This map shows the exact(existence-destination-location- generation)of the project.
  - ✖ 15-In 10 to 15 years people will be (queuing- rowing- lining- sitting)up to take their holidays in space.
  - ✖ 16-Space tourists will be able to practice(weighting-weight-weightless-weighty)sports.
  - ✖ 17-We always celebrate our wedding(anniversary-memory -memorial - failure) with dinner in an expensive restaurant.
  - ✖ 18-The space station will probably orbit the Earth at a (high- highly – highest - height)of 320 kilometres.
  - ✖ 19-Astronauts are well-trained to do (space station-spacecrafts-spacewalks-space talks).
  - ✖ 20-The space rocket(gets-takes - makes-run)off early evening.
  - ✖ 21-Space tourists may suffer from the same side effects as (astrologers - archaeologists-astronauts-astronomers).
  - ✖ 22-The more people want to do something, the (more expensive- cheaper - more cheap- cheapest) it will become.
  - ✖ 23-It is a(magic-future-tragic-magical)feeling to look down on the Earth from space.



- ✱ 24-The space station is like a spinning wheel with(spokes-tracks-rails-bars).
- ✱ 25-Space tourists will fly to the space station by(gliders-ships-rockets-satellites).
- ✱ 26-To estimate how much paint we need, we have to measure the (height - distance-depth- wide) between the two walls.
- ✱ 27-Astronauts feel(lifeless-timeless-faithless-weightless)when they are floating in space .
- ✱ 28-The expert (sold -bought -looked- examined) the painting to find out what was wrong with it.
- ✱ 29-The doctor warned me to take care because the new medicine has(side - site-sight- diet) effects.
- ✱ 30-A (bar -pin -spoke-wire) is one of the thin metal bars which connect the ring around the outside of a wheel to the centre.
- ✱ 31-The child fell down as a result of (spelling -spinning -spanning-spiting). He turned around and around very quickly.
- ✱ 32-(Gymnastics-Physics-Economics-Politics)is a sport in which skilful physical exercises and movements are performed.
- ✱ 33-(Curiosity-Enthusiasm-Gravity-Immensity)is the force that makes objects fall to the ground.
- ✱ 34-The police went on a (mission-journey-mansion-message)to catch the criminals.
- ✱ 35-The plumber tried to discover the (heap -leak -fare-soak) from which that gas gets out through.

### ✓ 8-Definitions :-

1	weightless	:	having no weight, especially when you are floating in space	عديم الوزن
2	anniversary	:	a date that is remembered because something important happened on that date in a previous year	ذكرى سنوية
3	giant	:	much larger than other things of the same type	عماق - ضخمة
4	hopeful	:	if you are hopeful about a situation, you think that something good will probably happen	متفائل
5-	representative	:	someone who is chosen to do things, speak, vote, etc. for someone else	مندوب
6-	horrible	:	very unpleasant or unkind	فظيع
7-	side effect	:	the bad or unwanted effect something such as medicine has on your body	أثر جانبي
8-	spin (v)	:	turn around and around very quickly	يدور
9-	tourism	:	when people travel to a place on holiday	السياحة
10	examine	:	To look at something carefully in order to find out something	يفحص - بغاية
11	launch (n) (v)	:	When something is launched To send a spacecraft into the sky or to put a boat into the water.	يطلق إطلاق - طرح
12	leak (n)	:	a small hole that liquid or gas gets out through. There's a leak in the water tank.	تسريب - ثقب





13	mission	: An important job that someone has been given to do	مهمة
14	system	: an organized way of doing something	نظام
15	currently	: <i>Happening or existing at the present time</i>	في الوقت الحاضر / الآن
16	gravity	: <i>The force that makes objects fall to the ground</i>	الجاذبية
17	gymnastics	: a sport in which skilful physical exercises and movements are performed often in competitions	رياضة بدنية
18	side effect	An effect, usually a bad effect , that a drug has on your body in addition to curing illness or pain	آثار جانبية
19	spin (v)	To turn around and around very quickly or to make something do this	يدور حول محوره - يُدور
20	distance	The amount of space between two places	إبعاد - مسافة

### ✓ 9- Phrases, Expressions and Idioms:

1) be well trained to	مدرب جيدا لكي
2) go shopping	يخرج للتسوق
3) book a holiday	يحجز اجازة
4) a leak in / a leak of some kind	تسريب ماء
5) make objects fall	يوقع الاشياء
6) orbit the earth	يدور حول الارض
7) do repairs	يقوم بالاصلاحات
8) man first walking on the moon	اول سير للانسان على سطح القمر
9) over the years	على مر السنين
10) gymnastics	تمارين بدنية
11) a waste of money	مضيعة للمال
12) build a space station	يبنى محطة فضائية
13) have fun with	يستمتع بـ
14) do space walks	يقوم بالمشي في الفضاء
15) give a lot of training	يعطي المزيد من التدريب
16) sat-nav system	نظام الملاحة بالاقمار الصناعية
17) cope with-keep up with	يتماشى مع/يساير
18) climate change	تغير مناخى
19) draw a credit/a sum of money	يسحب رصيد
20) find a solution to	يجد حل لـ
21) do weightless sports	يؤدي رياضات انعدام الوزن
22) reduce the amount of energy	يقلل كمية الطاقة
23) stand still	يقف بلا حراك
24) make predictions	يتنبأ/يعمل تنبؤات
25) space exploration	استكشاف الفضاء
26) is sent into space-travel in	ترسل الى الفضاء
27) I'd go along with that	اتفق مع ذلك



28) go on a two-hour space walk	يقوم بالسير في الفضاء
29) instant communication	اتصال سريع
30) launch a rocket	يطلق صاروخا
31) make arrangements for	يعمل ترتيبات لـ
32) how serious the problems were	مدى خطورة المشكلات
33) the weather forecast	النشرة الجوية
34) apply to study medicine	يتقدم لدراسة الطب
35) go on holiday	يقوم بإجازة
36) reach for the stars	الوصول للمستحيل
37) pass my exams	يجتاز الامتحانات
38) a holiday in space	إجازة في الفضاء
39) instant call	اتصال فوري
40) fly by rocket	يطير بالصاروخ
41) above the earth	فوق الارض
42) find a cure "a treatment for"	يجد علاج لـ
43) Temperature control system	نظام التحكم بدرجة الحرارة
44) go up	يزداد/يرتفع
45) go down	يقل/ينخفض
46) International space station	المحطة الفضائية الدولية
47) whether-or nor	سواء كان ام لا
48) it's expected "predicted"	من المتوقع او "المتبأ له ان"
49) Ever since that day + present perfect	منذ ذلك اليوم
50) developing ways of saving energy	يطور طرق توفير

## ✓ 9- Language Notes :

### 1) reach reached reached

#### 1) reach = arrive at a place

eg: We reached Paris early at night.

#### 2) reach: to get to a particular level

eg: Temperature in Cairo can reach 40 C

#### 3) reach = be long enough to get to a place

eg: that ladder can reach the top shelf

#### 4) reach: move your hand to touch something

eg: He is too short to reach the top shelf

#### 5) reach: communicate with someone

eg: He was very busy that's why I can't reach him on his mobile

#### 6) reach: distance

eg: Keep your valuables in a safe place to make them out of the reach of thieves

#### 7) reach: Make progress

eg: I hope that our national team could reach the final of the cup

#### 8) reach: to achieve

eg: She worked so hard to reach success

(9) يمكن استخدام حرف جر بعد الفعل reach للدلالة عن الحركة او الاتجاه

\* reach toward يصل نحو \* reach up تشب لاعلي \* reach down ينخفض للأسفل





# (10) و ياتي بعد reach اسم كالاتي

reach a conclusion	يصل الي استنتاج	reach a decision	يصل لقرار
reach a compromise	يصل الي حل وسط	reach an agreement	يصل لاتفاق
reach a height	يصل لارتفاع	reach the speed of	يصل لسرعه

## 2) anniversary – memory – centenary – memorial – souvenir – annual

**Anniversary:** ذكري سنوية

eg: 20 July 2019 is the 50th anniversary of man first walking on the moon

**Annual:** سنوي

eg: Annual self declaration audit of tax is a must to everyone of us

**Memory:** ذكري / ذاكره

eg: He led a very miserable life it was a bad memory

**Centenary**

ذكري منويه

eg: Next month is the centenary of slavery freedom

**memorial**

نصب تذكاري

eg: Every year, the president puts some flowers in front of the memorial of the martyrs

**Souvenir**

تذكاري

eg: When I was in London, I bought some souvenirs to my friends

## 3) Focus on the suffix "full less"

Verb or noun		Adjective→ ful		Adjective-less	
hope "n.v"	يامل/امل	hopeful	واعد/متفائل	hopeless	يائس
fear "v.n"	يخاف/خوف	fearful	مخيف/مرعب	fearless	غير خائف
pain "v.n"	يؤلم/الم	painful	مؤلم	painless	غير مؤلم
use "v.n"	يستخدم/استخدام	useful	نافع/مفيد	useless	عديم الفائدة
home "n"	منزل	-		homeless	بلا ماي
power "n"	قوه	powerful	قوي	powerless	عاجز/غير قادر
help "v.n"	يساعد/مساعده	helpful	متعاون	helpless	عاجز/غير قادر
taste	يتذوق/طعم	tasteful	دال علي صحه التذوق	tasteless	بدون طعم
weigh	يزن	-		weightless	عديم الوزن

## 4- Little + plural

يمكن استخدام اسم جمع بعد little بمعنى صغير الحجم / قليل الاهمية

eg: There are two or three little things that we need to do

## 5- Arrive – reach – get

**Arrive "without a preposition"**

\*\* يصل "بدون حرف جر"

eg: When did you arrive ?

\*\* Arrive at يصل لمكان صغير

eg: He arrived at London airport early

\*\* Arrive in يصل لمكان كبير

eg: He arrived in London early

\*\* Reach + object يصل بدون حرف جر

eg: He reached London early

\*\* Get to يصل الي "بصعوبة"

eg: He got to London after a hard long flight

## 6- Invent – discover – explore – create

\*\* Invent "v" يبتكر شي لم يكن له وجود و وجد

\*\* Inventor "n" مخترع



eg: He invented a new style of writing poetry

**\*\*Discover "v"** يكتشف شئ كان له وجود و وجده بالصدفة

eg: The late Dr.Zawail discovered the femto-second

**\*\*Explore "n"** يستكشف

eg: They sent astronauts to explore the surface of the moon

**\*\*Create** يبدع/ يخلق

eg: The new factory creates 50 opportunities

### 7- Location – position – site – destination

**\*\*Location** على خريطة/ المكان للتصوير / تشير الى الموقع

eg: The location our manager choose was the best

**\*\*Position** مكان وجود شئ بالنسبة لشئ اخر تشير الى الموضع او النقطة الموجود بها شئ او الشخص

eg: The Chinese New Year's date depends on the position of the moon

**\*\*Site** بناء/ اثرى / موقع سياحي

eg: Tourists visit archeological sites everywhere

**\*\*Destination** الجهة المقصودة

eg: Egypt air goes to so many destinations

### 8- Launch – release

**\*\*Launch "v" "n"**

يطلق / اطلاق "صاروخ/سفينة/قمر صناعى / مكوك فضائى/يطرح منتج فى السوق/يطلق خدمة"

eg: The Navy launched a new warship last week

**\*\*Release**

يطلق سراح / يطلق غاز/عوادم/ابخرة/يطلق شئ فى الهواء مثل البالونات

eg: He was released because he was innocent.

### 9- The ..... The: كلاً / كلما " احد صيغ المقارنة:

**\*\*The + comparative + sentence , the comparative + subject**

The جملة +صفة درجة ثانية The جملة +صفة درجة ثانية

eg: The faster you drive, the earlier you get there

eg: The more you have, the more you can lend

### 10- Launch – Examine – Get a leak in:

launch	a ship a rocket a satellite a space shuttle a campaign a new product	يدشن سفينة يطلق صاروخا يطلق قمر صناعى يطلق مكوك فضائى يطلق حملة يطلق منتج جديد
examine	a patient equipment a machine someone a car	يفحص مريضاً يفحص معدات يفحص الة يفحص شخص يفحص سيارة
get a leak in	a tap a plastic cup the ceiling equipment	تسريب فى حنفية او صنبور تسرب فى فنجان بلاستيك تسريب فى السقف تسريب فى المعدات





a pipe	تسريب في انبوبة
a cup	تسريب في فنجان
a tank	تسريب في خزان

### 11- Everyone – someone – no one – everybody – somebody – no body

تستخدم فعل مفرد و لكن حينما نعود عليها بضمير ناخذ ضمير جمع .

eg: Someone visited you, didn't they?

eg: Everyone does their best to convince her he change her mind

### 12- Astronaut – astronomer – astrologer

\*\* Astronaut رائد فضاء

eg: He travels and works in space. He is an astronaut

\*\* astronomer عالم فلك

eg: The job of astronomers is very hard as they predict when eclipses happen

\*\* Astrologer منجم او عراف

eg: We shouldn't trust astrologers as they tell lies

### 13- Repair = mend = fix – reform

\*\* Repair = mend = fix يصلح تلف ما

eg: We got a technician to repair our air condition

\*\* Reform يصلح نظام او منظومة

eg: We need to reform our educational process.

### 14- Help: subject help object + inf or to + inf

eg: My mother helps me do/to do my homework

\*\* Subject help + object with مهمة قصيرة

eg: My mother helps me with my homework

\*\* Subject help object + in مهمة طويلة / ممتدة

eg: The prime minister is said to help in the reform of economy

### 15- Take + time

Subject "take" object + period of time to + inf

المصدر + to فترة زمنية + مفعول Take فاعل

eg: It took her two hours to get to the club

eg: The lesson took him three hours to finish .

### 16- Weightless – Weightlessness

\*\* weightless adj منعدم الوزن

eg: You can enjoy weightless sports in space

\*\* weightlessness n. انعدام الوزن

eg: as a space tourist you will suffer from weightlessness

### 17- Secret – Secretive

\*\* secret سر

eg: You never break a promise. Keep my secret

\*\* secretive كتوم

eg: I can't understand anything about the problem. He is a secretive boy

### ✓ 10- Confusing words for choices:

cause of	سبب "لحدث شئ"	reason for	تفسير/ تبرير
cost	تكلفه	price / coast	سعر/ ساحل
pipe	انبوب ضخ	tube	انبوب صغير



leak	تسريب / ثقب	lake	بحيره
examine	يفحص	exam	يتمحن / امتحان
rocket	صاروخ	racket	مضرب
anniversary	ذكري سنويه	memory / annual	ذكري / ذاكرة / سنوى
route	طريق	rout / root	شغب / جذر
affect "v"	يؤثر علي	effect "n"	تأثير
queue	طابور "وراء بعضه"	row	صف "جنباً الي جنباً"
magical	ساحر / فائن	magic "adj." "n"	سحري / سحر
orbit	يدور حول / مدار	spin	يدور حول نفسه
reform	يقوم بادخال تعديل علي نظام	repair	يصلح / يرمم
leakage	عمليه تسريب	lack	نقص / يفتقر الي
minus	سالب / ناقص	plus	زائد
properly	بشكل جيد/بصوره صحيحه	probably	من المحتمل
special	خاص	private	خصوصي
tourism	السياحه	terrorism	الارهاب
wheel	عجله	whale	حوت
astronaut	رائد فضاء	astronomer	عالم فلك
launch	يطلق/اطلاق	lunch	غذاء
distance "n"	مساحه	distant "adj."	بعيد
every day "adj."	يومي	every day "adv."	كل يوم
improve	يحسن	prove	يثبت
mission	مهمه	mansion	قصر / منزل ريفي
quite	الي حد ما	quiet	هادئ
system	نظام	discipline	الانضباط
there	هناك	their	صفه ملكيه
connect	يوصل/يربط	unite	يوجد
gravity	جاذبيه	magnet	مغناطيس
leak	تسريب/يتسرب	leek	نبات الكرات
based on	قائم على / معتمد على	based in	يكون مقره فى "مكان معين"

### ✓ 11- Words and their antonyms :-

giant	عملاق	tiny / dwarf	صغير جدا / قزم
main	اساسي	minor	ثانوي
float	يطفو	sink	يغوص / يغطس
special	خاص	ordinary	عادي
safe	امن	dangerous	خطر
save	يوفر	waste	يبدد / يهدر
national	محلي / وطني / قومي	international	دولي / عالمي
secret	سري	public	عام
properly	بصوره صحيحه	improperly	غير ملائم
exciting	مثير	boring	ممل
above	فوق	below	اسفل





ordinary	عادي	extra ordinary	غير عادي
possible	ممكن	impossible	مستحيل
expected	متوقع	unexpected	غير متوقع
strength	قوة	weakness	ضعف
agree	يوافق علي	disagree	لا يوافق علي
front	مقدمه	back	مؤخره
busy	مشغول	free	فاضي / حر
controlled	محكوم / تحت السيطرة	uncontrolled	غير محكوم

### \*\*\*Practice(2)Test Your Knowledge\*\*\*

\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- ✖ 36-20 July 2019 is the 50<sup>th</sup> (birth- anniversary- age- ceremony) of man's first landing on the moon.
- ✖ 37-Choosing the right shoes depends (in-on-at-about)what you want to use them for.
- ✖ 38-(Continuously-Clearly-Currently-Carefully)I'm discussing an important matter with my employees when I finish, I'll call you.
- ✖ 39-The oil spill is a(serious-various-generous-tremendous) problem to marine life.
- ✖ 40-Being (weightless- weigh -weight-weighty) in space makes it difficult to stand still
- ✖ 41-(A spoke -Gravity-Gymnastics -Distance) means a sport in which physical exercises and movements are performed.
- ✖ 42-In order to know what is wrong, the doctor must (search- steal- examine - think)the patient.
- ✖ 43-(A spoke-Gravity-Gymnastics-Distance)means the amount of space between two places.
- ✖ 44-(Currently-Soon-Lately-Recently)means at the present time.
- ✖ 45-Now a representative for the World Tourism Organization predicts that, in the next ten years, people will be(flying-taken-rowing-acquiring)into space for their holidays.
- ✖ 46-People will fly by rocket to a space station which will be orbiting the Earth at a height of 320 kilometers-that is about the same as the (distance - distant- remote- height) from Cairo to El-Minya.
- ✖ 47-Everyone who has travelled in space has described the amazing feeling of looking down on the Earth as it spins (below - above - over-beside) you.
- ✖ 48-(Currently-Lately-Recently-Early)I'm working for important exams. Then, when I finish, I'm going on holiday.
- ✖ 49-Thank you(to-on-for-of)coming into the studio this morning. Could you start by telling the listeners what you're doing this week?
- ✖ 50-Well, this is a very (own- private - special - particular) week for me.
- ✖ 51-I think there's a problem (of-at-for-with)my internet connection.
- ✖ 52-The space station will be (spinning-turning-orbiting-changing)the Earth at a height of 320 k.m.
- ✖ 53-The space station will be like a spinning wheel that looks like a(car-spacecraft-bike- shuttle) wheel.
- ✖ 54 -Zero gravity is for (weigh - weight - weightless - weighty) sports.
- ✖ 55 Space tourists will suffer from the same side(affects-effects-defects-inflections) as astronauts.
- ✖ 56-"Distance" means the amount of (place-time-money-space)between two places.
- ✖ 57-The unexpected results of an activity are called(side-aside-inside-outside)effects.



- ✖ 58-(Gravity-Ability-Activity-Capacity)makes objects fall to the ground.
- ✖ 59-(Doing-Making-Having-Taking)gymnastics is a very good way of keeping fit.
- ✖ 60-Astronauts usually work in(weightless-useless-hopeless-meaningless) conditions.
- ✖ 61-I can't imagine robots looking..... old people.  
a- after                      b- at                      c-for                      d- up
- ✖ 62. She spends a lot of money.....clothes.  
a- at                      b- to                      c- on                      d- in
- ✖ 63. Sometimes I worry.....the future.  
a- of                      b- about                      c- from                      d- on
- ✖ 64. A lot of student will benefit..... the new system  
a. to                      b. at                      c-from                      d. of
- ✖ 65- The factory replaced most of its workers .....robots  
a-with                      b-by                      c- for                      d.to
- ✖ 66. I'm looking..... my holiday.  
a-after                      b-for                      c-into                      d- forward to
- ✖ 67-Ask the students to work in pairs and.....turns to tell each other what to in the future.  
a) do                      b) take                      c) have                      d) make
- ✖ 68- Could you tell me the..... for your carelessness?  
a) effect                      b) cause                      c) route                      d) reason
- ✖ 69- He is well..... to do that kind of sport.  
a) trainee                      b) training                      c) trained                      d) train
- ✖ 70- Our toys are..... but mine is smaller.  
a) similar                      b) the same                      c) same                      d) alike
- ✖ 71- I started.....money to buy a new mobile.  
a) saved                      b) saving                      c) to saving                      d) save
- ✖ 72- What is the.....of the fight?  
a) way                      b) method                      c) cause                      d) reason
- ✖ 73- Watching too much TV is a..... of our time.  
a) test                      b) cost                      c) waist                      d) waste
- ✖ 74- I'm looking forward to..... space walks.  
a) moving                      b) doing                      c) making                      d) turning
- ✖ 75-Most people in the Third World.....from poverty.  
a) suffer                      b) prevent                      c) deprive                      d) choose
- ✖ 76-The air-conditioning has.....down last week. It needs repairing.  
a)cut                      b) looked                      c) broken                      d) taken
- ✖ 77-The plane flew..... a height of 200 metres in space.  
a) on                      b) in                      c) over                      d) at
- ✖ 78-Nada suffers..... a terrible toothache.  
a) to                      b)from                      c)for                      d) of
- ✖ 79-A cigarette tip was the cause.....the fire.  
a) of                      b) with                      c) for                      d) to
- ✖ 80-There is a reason.....every important thing that happens.  
a) of                      b) to                      c) for                      d)on
- ✖ 81-The plane took..... from London airport two hours late.  
a) on                      b) of                      c) for                      d) off
- ✖ 82-What is the.....why he made that mistake?  
a) reason                      b) cause                      c) result                      d) aim
- ✖ 83. He was too short to..... the cupboard door.  
a. launch                      b. orbit                      c. reach                      d. arrive
- ✖ 84. If an astronaut.....one small mistake, he could be lost in space forever.  
a. makes                      b. does                      c. launches                      d takes





- ✠85. This picture shows us an astronaut.....repairs.  
a. orbiting      b. doing      c. spinning      d. repairing
- ✠86. I tried to stand.....in order not to attract any attention.  
a. stake      b. stale      c. stall      d. still
- ✠87. I'm afraid I don't agree..... your opinion.  
a. -at      b. of      c. about      d. with
- ✠88. If your car breaks....., you can use the mobile phone to get help.  
a-through      b out      c. down      d. into
- ✠89. Scientists are looking for a treatment.....cancer.  
a- for      b with      c. on      d. at
- ✠90- The windows are going to.....today.  
a-wash      b-being washed      c-be washed      d- be washing
- ✠91-.....well-trained to do space walks.  
a) Astronauts      b) Footballers      c) Consumers      d) Astrologers
- ✠92- .....means to turn around and around very quickly,  
a) Return      b) Cycle      c) Spin      d) Move
- ✠93- .....is the amount of space between two places.  
a) Park      b) Distance      c) Spoke      d) Route
- ✠94- A/An.....is someone who is chosen to do things, speak, vote for someone else.  
a) writer      b) candidate      c) actor      d) representative
- ✠95-.....means much larger than other things of the same type.  
a) Giant      b) Tiny      c) small      d) Little
- ✠96-.....means having no weight, especially when you are floating in space.  
a) Huge      b) Weightless      c) Heavy      d) Gravity
- ✠97- .....means very big and much bigger than other things of the same type.  
a. Hopeful      b. Horrible      c. Tiny      d. Giant
- ✠98. The.....between Cairo and London is 3,500 kilometres.  
a. side effect      b. distance      c. anniversary      d. gravity
- ✠99. Some basketball players can.....the ball on one finger!  
a. kick      b. spin      c. score      d. spit
- ✠100.....is very important for Egypt, so we should always welcome visitors.  
a. Escapism      b. Enthusiasm      c. Terrorism      d. Tourism
- ✠101- Today is the 50th..... of when my grandparents were married!  
a. university      b. anniversary      c. gravity      d. distance
- ✠102. A/An .....is the amount of space between two places.  
a. distant      b. distance      c. anniversary      d. gravity
- ✠103. The moon has less.....than the earth, so you could jump much higher there.  
a. leakiness      b. distance      c. anniversary      d. gravity
- ✠104 .....means very bad or unkind.  
a. Leak      b. Horrible      c. Hopeful      d. Giant
- ✠105.....is the business of providing tourists with places to stay, things to do etc.  
a. Escapism      b. Enthusiasm      c. Terrorism      d. Tourism
- ✠106. An.....is a date that is remembered because something important happened.  
a. anniversary      b. advertisement      c. university      d. announcement
- ✠107- A .....is an unexpected result of an activity.  
a. sidewalk      b. side road      c. side effect      d. side talk
- ✠108- What makes objects fall to the ground is.....  
a. leakiness      b. distance      c- anniversary      d. gravity
- ✠109- .....means to turn around and around very quickly.  
a. Spit      b. Spin      c. Spill      d. Leak
- ✠110-.....is someone who is chosen to do things, speak etc for someone else.  
a. Tourist      b. Representative      c. Hopeful      d. Giant



- ✖111-A / An.....is a date that is remembered because something important happened.  
a. mission      b. anniversary      c. spinning wheel      d. astronaut
- ✖112. Something that is.....is always very big.  
a. giant      b. current      c. distant      d. horrible
- ✖113..... means very unpleasant, bad or unkind.  
a. Magical      b. Ordinary      c. Physical      d. Horrible
- ✖114 A / An.....is someone who is chosen to do things or speak for someone else.  
a. astronaut      b. expert      c. representative      d. lawyer
- ✖115.....means the bad or unwanted effects something such as medicine has on your body.  
a. Conflicts      b. Defects      c. Secret agents      d. Side effects
- ✖116.If you are.....about a situation, you think that something good will probably happen.  
a. hopeful      b. current      c. special      d. physical
- ✖117..... is the amount of space between two places.  
a. Gravity      b. Instance      c. Distance      d. Weight
- ✖118. What makes objects fall to the ground is.....  
a. weightlessness      b. gravity      c. attraction      d. attention
- ✖119. To..... is to turn around and around very quickly.  
a. spin      b. orbit      c. float      d. represent
- ✖120- .....means having no weight, especially when you are floating in space.  
a. Useless      b. Painless      c. Weightless      d. Homeless
- ✖121-The space ship.....at 7.50 the next evening.  
a-sails      b dives      c-drives      d launches
- ✖122-How long does the space ship take to.....the Space Station?  
a-go      b get      c-reach      d arrive
- ✖123-20th July is the 50th.....of a man first walking on the moon.  
a-century      b anniversary      c-decade      d period
- ✖124-The bus stopped because there was a..... in the petrol tank.  
a-leak      b lake      c-luck      d lock
- ✖125-The doctor.....me carefully before he gave me the medicine.  
a examined      b fixed      c-tested      d tasted
- ✖126-A space..... may take several months.  
a flight      b mission      c-talk      d walk
- ✖127- ..... means to turn round and round very quickly.  
a Step      b Move      c-Spin      d Orbit
- ✖128-This phone doesn't work. It's.....  
a useful      b wasteful      c-harmless      d useless
- ✖129- Spacewalk is a fantastic thing to .....  
a visit      b take      c-make      d- do
- ✖130-Space.....is really exciting.  
a manufactory      b invention      c-harmless      d exploration
- ✖131-Experts are..... that there will be a treatment for fatal diseases.  
a powerful      b hopeful      c-useful      d hateful
- ✖132-I don't like this sandwich. It is.....  
a tasteless      b tasteful      c-taste      d tasty
- ✖133-What is the main.....scientific research? -I think it's knowing more about the unknown world,  
a reason for      b cause of      c-solution to      d disadvantage of
- ✖134-The spaceship will.....the earth at a height of 320 kilometres.  
a spin      b orbit      c-move      d travel
- ✖135-What is the..... between Cairo and El-Minya? - about 320 km  
a speed      b space      c-distance      d height





## ✓ 12- Prepositions:

a waste of	مضيعة من	benefit from	يستفيد من
at a height of	علي ارتفاع	learn from	يتعلم من
form of	شكل من	suffer from	يعاني من
way of	طريقه لـ	break down	يتعطل/ينهار
kind of	نوع من	go down = decrease	يقلل
think of/about	يفكر في	go for a walk	يذهب للمشي
frightened of	خائف من	plan for	يخطط لـ
take care of	يعتني بـ	treatment for	علاج لـ
rely on= depend on	يعتمد علي	thank for	يشكر لـ
land on	يهبط علي	arrangements for	ترتيبات لـ
spend on	ينفق علي	speak for	يتحدث بالنيابة عن
look down on	ينظر للأسفل علي	important for/cure	مهم لـ
on a radio program	في برنامج	work for	يعمل لدى
walk on	يسير علي	find out	يكشف
on t.v	علي التلفاز	problem with	مشكله لـ
look after	يعتني بـ	discuss with	يناقش مع
be interested in	مهتم بـ	take turns to	يتناوب
queue "up"	يصطف طابور	look forward to	يتطلع الي
walk around	يسير حول	set off	يبدأ رحله
set up	يؤسس/يقيم/يشتيد	replace-with	يستبدل بـ
suffer from	يعاني من	attached to	ملتصقه بـ
travel with	يسافر مع	cope with-keep up with	يساير/يجاري
provide - with	يزود بـ	fall to	تسقط علي
amount of	كميه من	start by	يبدأ بـ
look at	ينظر الي	come into	يأتي الي
arrive at	يصل الي مكان صغير	get out through	يخرج من خلال
look like	يشبه	at launch	لحظه الانطلاق
look up	يبحث عن كلمه من معجم		

### \*\*\*Practice(3):(Test Your Prepositions)\*\*\*

\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- ✱ 136—Choosing the right shoes depends (in-on-at-about)what you want to use them for.
- ✱ 137—Thank you(to-on-for-of)coming into the studio this morning. Could you start by telling the listeners what you're doing this week?
- ✱ 138—Countries spend a lot of money (at-in-on-of)space exploration to help them understand space, to find new ways of doing things, to find new sources of minerals.
- ✱ 139—Some people have benefited more(at-with-on-from)modern technology than others.
- ✱ 140—I'm really looking forward(to-on-for-of)this mission.
- ✱ 141—I won't know (at-to-for-of)sure about Ahmed's success until he phones me.



- ✖ 142- It's always the poor who suffer most(of-from-at-in)unemployment.
- ✖ 143-A lot of people would like to go(on-in-at-with) space holidays.
- ✖ 144-I'm afraid I don't agree (at-of-with-on)you.
- ✖ 145-I can smell a gas (fake-break-leak-lock) in the kitchen.
- ✖ 146-Could you start (up-by-with-for) telling the listeners what you're doing this week?
- ✖ 147-We won't know(to-with-for-at) sure until we're there and can examine the equipment properly.
- ✖ 148- How long will you be in space(in-on-at- for)?
- ✖ 149- It depends (in-of-to-on) how serious the problems are.
- ✖ 150- 20 July 2019 is the 50<sup>th</sup> anniversary of man first walking(for-from-on-to)the moon.
- ✖ 151- They will fly (in-by-with-into) rocket to a space station.
- ✖ 152- Which will be orbiting the Earth (at-on-in-of) a height of 320 kilometres.
- ✖ 153- Now a representative(to-for-of -in)the World Tourism Organization predicts that.
- ✖ 154- They will suffer (for-of-from-onto) the same horrible side effects as astronauts have suffered from.
- ✖ 155- Experts say that there are now treatments (of-to-out-for) most side effects.
- ✖ 156- Just think (of-at-with-about) such a holiday in space!
- ✖ 157- Everyone who has travelled in space has described the amazing feeling of looking (down-up-on-to) on the Earth as it spins below you

## ✓ 12 – Language Focus :

### \*\*\*\*Active and Passive Voice\*\*\*\*

عند تحويل الجملة من المبني للمعلوم " Active " إلى المبني للمجهول " passive " نتبع الآتي :

1 - المفعول " object " يصبح فاعلاً " subject "

2 - نستخدم verb to be في نفس زمن الفعل الأصلي وننتبعه بالتصريف الثالث للفعل.

3 - نجعل الـ subject يصبح object مسبوق بـ by

eg: They S write V some O reports

Verb to be + P.P.

Some reports are written by them

<b>Tense</b>		<b>Example</b>
1-Present simple ( am / is / are ) + P.P.	مضارع بسيط	Active: He <u>follows</u> instructions. Passive: Instructions <u>are followed</u> by him
2-Present Continuous (am/is/are) being+ p.p.	مضارع مستمر	Active: I <u>am typing</u> the letter now. Passive: The letter <u>is being typed</u> now
3-Past Simple ( was / were ) + P.P.	ماضي بسيط	Active: We <u>bought</u> the carpets Passive: The carpets <u>were bought</u> by us.
4-Past continuous (was/were) being + P.P.	ماضي مستمر	Active: He <u>was answering</u> the questions Passive: The questions <u>were being answered</u>
5- Present Perfect (has/have) been + P.P	مضارع تام	Active: He <u>has made</u> mistakes Passive: Mistakes <u>have been made</u>
6-Past Perfect had been + P.P	ماضي تام	Active: someone <u>had stolen</u> her jewels. Passive: Her jewels <u>had been stolen</u>





7-Future simple Will be + P.P.	مستقبل بسيط	Active: They <u>will sell</u> the old car. Passive: The old car <u>will be sold</u>
8-Future perfect Will have been+ P.P.	مستقبل تام	Active: He <u>will have done</u> the job Passive : The job <u>will have been done</u>
9 - Modals .....etc + be + P.P.	أفعال ناقصة	Active: You <u>can accept</u> the invitation. Passive: The invitation <u>can be accepted</u>
10-الأفعال الناقصة التامة-Perfect modals: should have / could have / might have .....etc + been + PP.		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• He should have called the police. The police should have been called.</li> <li>• He could have paid the bill. The bill could have been paid.</li> </ul>
should have called	should have been called	

### Synopsis: الخلاصة

Active	Passive
1) Present simple	: am, is, are + P.P
2) Present Continuous	: am, is, are + being + P.P
3) Present Perfect	: have/has + been + P.P
4) Present Perfect continuous	: has, have + been + P.P
5) Past simple	: was, were + P.P
6) Past Continuous	: was, were + being + P.P
7) Past Perfect	: had been + P.P
8) Past Perfect Continuous	: had been + P.P
9) Future simple	: will be + P.P
10) Future Continuous	: will be + P.P
11) Future Perfect	: will have been + P.P
12) Future Perfect Continuous	: will have been + P.P
13) Defective Verb فعل ناقص	: Defective verb + be + P.P
14) Infinitive المصدر	: to be + P.P
15) Gerund v.ing	: being + P.P
16) Defective Verb + have + P.P فعل ناقص	: Defective Verb+have been+P.P

### Examples:

- eg: . The teacher teaches the students  
. The students are taught by the teacher  
eg: . She has sent him five letters  
. He has been sent five letters  
eg: . He bought the red car after she had chosen it  
. The red car was bought after it had been chosen by her

### Add to your knowledge: Important Notes :

1) Intransitive Verbs cannot be used in passive الأفعال اللازمة لا تأتي مبني للمجهول

“Collapse / arrive / rise / appear / disappear / go / come / occur / happen / fall / seem”



### **Examples:**

- 1) The old house collapsed last week.
- 2) The accident happened yesterday.
- 3) Non-renewable energy may disappear in the future.

### **2) Questions: Passive**

#### **Examples:**

- eg: He bought the red car.  
The red car was bought.  
Was the red car bought?
- eg: She has sent him five letters.  
He has been sent five letters.  
Has he been sent five letters?

### **3) Order: Passive**

- eg: Copy these Reports  
Let these reports be copied  
Don't waste your time  
Don't let your time be wasted

### **4) \* Verbs of sense, feeling, understanding "Present simple only"**

لا تستخدم أفعال الإدراك أو الفهم أو الشعور في المبني للمجهول إلا في المضارع البسيط فقط

- eg: Haqqi "is still remembered – was still remembered – has been remembered – had been remembered" as the father of modern short story
- eg: He is still "Thinks–thought–thinking–thinks" the most important player in our team .

### **5) \* to + Inf. :**

expect to  
deserve to  
want to  
be to  
be about to  
be going to  
have to  
has to  
had to  
will have to  
seem to  
appear to  
be supposed to  
needn't  
used to  
had better

be + p.p

- eg: She wanted "being left – be left – to be left – been left" alone
- eg: The mission is to "be – been – being – will be" done in the near future





## 6) *V + ing* → *Passive: being + P.P*

like  
dislike  
hate  
love  
prefer  
don't like  
doesn't like

+ object + v.ing "active"

**I hate people laughing at me. "Active"**

Like  
Dislike  
Hate  
Love  
Prefer  
Don't like  
Doesn't like

+ being + P.P "Passive"

**I hate being laughed at.**

eg: I don't like "be told – being told – to be told – told" what to do

eg: The present left conference without "be – been – being – to be" seen

Active

Passive

## 7) *Need + inf.*

"need"

→

to be + P.P

V.ing

eg: My car needs "to repair – be repaired – being repaired – repairing"

eg: My car needs to "being repaired – be repaired – been repaired – repair"

eg: The tree needs "being – to be – be – been" cut

## 8) *some verbs can be "Active" or "Passive" the same form:*

بعض الافعال تأتي بنفس الشكل في المبني للمعلوم و المبني للمجهول مثل:

Start – begin – open – break – grow

eg: A celebrity will open the supermarket.

The supermarket will open/will be opened by a celebrity.

eg: Cotton "grows – is grown" in upper Egypt

(9) إذا كان الفاعل و المفعول مع let شخصاً واحداً نستخدم

Mona let the mother punish her.

Mona let reflexive pronoun+ be +P .P.

1) Mona let "myself – herself – her – hers" be punished by the mother

2) Mona let herself "to be – be – been – being" punished by the mother

3) Don't let yourself "to be – be – been – being" cheated

## 10)

Make  
Hear  
See  
Help  
Let

+ object + inf. "Active"



\*The manager made her “to write – wrote – written – write” the report once again

\*Can you help me “to carry – carry – carries – carrying” my heavy suitcase

<u>11)</u> am	made	} + to + inf. “Passive”
is	heard	
are	seen	
was	helped	
were	allowed	

eg: He was helped “achieve – achieving – to achieve – achieved” his goals.

eg: She was heard “to give – gave – gives – give” those instructions.

**Note: The president was seen “leaving/ leave” by the backdoor**

**12) We can use “get” to replace “be” in passive with some verbs:**

catch, destroy, marry, hurt, injure, damage, murder, elect, confuse, arrest, beat, pay, divorce, kill, burn.

eg: The Ruritania may get confused on seeing them together.

eg: She got married ten years ago

**13) We use “with” to replace “by” as a tool or means**

تستخدم with لتحل محل by عند ذكر الوسيلة

The cake is cut “by – In – with – at” a knife.

The baby is fed “by – In – at – with” a little spoon

**14) Prepositions + being + P.P**

eg: The thief was afraid of “to be – be – being – been” chased by the police

eg: I’m thankful to my students for “be – been – being – to be” supportive

eg: The patient who is being treated right now is young

The patient being treated right now is young

**15) Very Important**

\* إذا احتوت الجملة على ضمائر الوصل who/which في المبني للمجهول, يمكنك ان تحذف verb to و be + who/which و ترك التصريف الثالث فقط

eg: 1- Yehia Haqqi’s first short story which was published in 1925, established him as one of the great short story writers of the Arab world.

2- His first short story (which published – was published–is published–published) In 1925, established him as one of the great short story writers of the Arab world.

3-The cotton “which grown–grown–is grown–was grown” in upper Egypt is of a high quality.

4-The food “is eaten–was eaten–eaten–which eaten” at that restaurant was delicious.

**16) If we have “an adverb” It’s preferable to be put between be and past participle**

الظرف يوضع في المبني للمجهول بين be – P.P

eg: Health is “badly affected–affected badly–bad affected–affected” bad by smoking

Mo salah is “well trained–trained well–good trained–trained good” by Jurgen Klopp

**17) People thinks that prices are / were too high**

\* هنا يوجد حلين (1) اذا بدانا الحل بـ it نستخدم

It is	} said/known, announced, denied, supposed, alleged, understood, thought, expected,	} That + rest of the sentence
It was		
It has		





It had been Predicted, believed, supposed

= It is thought that prices are too high

It was thought that prices were too high

\* الحل الثاني: اذا بدأنا بالفاعل active نستخدم:

Subject "verb to be" + P.P + to have + P.P "past"

eg: People expect that Ahmed will win the race.

Ahmed is expected to win the race.

The race is expected to be won by Ahmed.

eg: People thought that prices were too high.

It was thought that prices were too high.

Prices were thought to have been too high

### 18) Be careful: Special Case

- After the car had been serviced at the garage, it worked very well.
- Having been serviced at the garage, my car worked well.
- Serviced at the garage, my car worked well.

### \*Test Yourself:

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \***

- 1- Climate change is one of the problems that must be.....  
a) forgotten      b) solved      c) ignored      d) omitted
- 2- The astronaut's.....is to find more information about the moon.  
a) message      b) letter      c) mail      d) mission
3. People all over the world were overjoyed when man first landed .....the moon.  
a) in      b)at      c)on      d) over
- 4- Experts say that there are now..... for most side effects to travel in space?  
a) designs      b) treatments      c) forms      d)kinds
5. Astronauts are well-trained to do.....walks  
a) land      b) water      c) air      d) space
6. Computers, mobile phones and satellites technology have .....people happier .  
a) done      b) taken      c) made      d) given
7. People have always.....their world to learn more about it  
a) explored      b) discovered      c) invented      d) made
8. We should find..... how space technology has changed our life.  
a) on      b) about      c) of      d) out
9. More money should be spent.....improving public services.  
a) at      b)on      c)in      d)for
10. The new book..... soon.  
a)will publish      b)will be publishing  
c)will be published      d)will have published
11. Our air conditioning has broken down but someone is coming to.....it tomorrow.  
a) destroy      b) repair      c) reform      d) prepare
12. Computer password should always be....., you should never tell anyone.  
a) secret      b) scared      c) known      d) famous
13. Some drivers have a sat-nav.....in the car to help them And the best route.  
a) system      b) order      c) discipline      d) process
- 14.....makes things fall to the ground on earth.  
a) Gram      b) Gravity      c) Graph      d) Space



15. To.....means to turn around and around very quickly.  
a) orbit                      b) circle                      c) spin                      d) ring
16. Around six hours a day..... checking emails.  
a) are spending              b) are to spend              c) spent                      d) are spent
17. We expect we.....the truth about your sudden disappearance.  
a) 'll tell                      b) 'll be told                      c) told                      d) be told
18. Mona..... to have won the first prize for the best story.  
a) believes                      b) believed                      c) is believed                      d) is believing
19. We insisted..... by the prime minister.  
a) on seeing                      b) to see                      c) in seeing                      d) on being seen
20. I was advised.....by a doctor, but it wasn't possible.  
a) seeing                      b) to see                      c) to be seen                      d) being seen
21. A new space station will probably..... in the future.  
a-build                      b-built                      c-be building                      d-be built
22. Many astronauts will.....into space.  
a-send                      b-be sent                      c-sent                      d-being sent
23. They could.....into space in special rockets.  
a-fly                      b-be flown                      c-flown                      d-being flown
- 24- Then all the equipment will.....  
a-examined                      b-examine                      c-be examined                      d-to be examined
25. Astronauts.....a lot of training.  
a-give                      b-are given                      c-are giving                      d-be given
26. The hotel rooms will.....next month.  
a-decorated                      b-decorate                      c-be decorating                      d-be decorated
27. The internet..... everywhere.  
a-is used                      b- is using                      c-uses                      d- be used
28. My car needs to.....  
a- repairing                      b- be repaired                      c- repair                      d- repaired
29. Let's hurry; the plane is going to.....off.  
a- be taking                      b- taken                      c- be taken                      d- take
30. A lot of fast food..... every day  
a-is sold                      b-sell                      c-is selling                      d-sells

**\*\*\*Practice(5):( Open Book Exercises:)\*\*\***

**\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\***

- 31-Some countries spend a lot of money(in-on-at-of)space travel.
- 32-Space researches will help to find new (sources-springs-wells-streams)of minerals.
- 33-Do you think that space(discovery-exploration-invention-restoration)is exciting?
- 34-A technician is coming to(reform-remind-research-repair)our air-conditioning.
- 35-Some drivers have a sat-nav(operation-system-process-program) to help them find the best route.
- 36 -We will watch the(pushing- lifting-launch-release) of the rocket on TV.
- 37 -The way to school is a ten(minutes- minute's-minute-minutes') walk.
- 38 -One of the(uses-merits-benefits-disadvantages) of television films is that they make children violent.
- 39 -He is(currently-separately-generously-exactly) mending the car ; he is doing it at the present time.
- 40-Several(machinery-locations-distances-destinations) have been suggested for building the new hospital.
- 41-He must be(properly-partly-likely-traditionally) trained to do his job well.





- 42—The explosion was caused by a gas(hole-league-leap-leak) in the main line.
- 43—The minister of economy left for Europe for a trade(mission-session-passion-fission).
- 44—The government is planning to reform the education(discipline-system-store-scale).
- 45—When you are(weight-weighty-weightlessness-weightless)in space, it must be very difficult to stand still.
- 46—The 2008 Olympic Games(were watched-was watched-has been watched-are watched ) by millions of people .
- 47—The Cairo Metro(is used for-is used with-is used by-has used by)about two million passengers every day.
- 48—Many of Christie's stories (have been made-have made-made- are making) into films and TV programmes.
- 49—This year's prize for crime fiction(has won-is winning-won-has been won) by a 78- year-old man.
- 50—The last World Cup Final(saw-was seen-is seen-has seen)on TV by millions of people.
- 51—English and Arabic(speak-were spoken-have spoken-are spoken)in most tourist offices.
- 52—It (believes-has believed-be believed-is believed) that younger pupils are being taught languages in schools.
- 53—It (has been said-has said-says-is saying) that a new Pyramid has been found at Sqqara.
- 54—Agatha didn't go to school, however she(had taught-taught-was taught-was being taught) by her mother.
- 55—The government(is knowing-is known-has been known-knows)that the enemy is being helped by a group of spies.
- 56—Things she learnt during the war(were used-is used-used-have used)later in her writings.
- 57—Newspaper(reported-reporting-is reported-was reported) that she had done some excavation.
- 58—People(are believed-believe-has believed-are believing)that the forum will be a success.
- 59—Rady (had injured-injures-has to injure-has injured) his legs in a car accident so he had to use a wheelchair.
- 60—She left after she (finishing-has finished-finishes-had finished) her work.
- 61—The car stopped because there was a.....in the petrol tank.  
a-leap                      b-leak                      c-pump                      d-drive
62. A technician is coming to..... our air-conditioning.  
a-reform                      b-remind                      c-research                      d-repair
63. The doctor..... me carefully before giving me the medicine.  
a-examined                      b- searched                      c- checked                      d- inspected
64. Computer passwords should be..... You shouldn't tell anyone  
a- influential                      b- secrete                      c- secret                      d- known
65. The astronauts went on a space.....to replace a broken part.  
a-station                      b-tour                      c-rocket                      d-walk
66. English.....everywhere.  
a- speaks                      b- is spoken                      c- are spoken                      d- is speaking
67. Is the exercise..... now?  
a-does                      b-doing                      c-did                      d- being done
68. Fewer letters will..... in the future.  
a-be written                      b-written                      c-write                      d- have written



69. School rules have to.....  
a- followed      b- follow      c- be followed      d- been followed
70. Could your maths problem..... ?  
a- be solving      b- be solved      c- solved      d- solve
- 71.....is very important for Egypt, so we should welcome visitors.  
a- Tourism      b- Culture      c- Industry      d- Space
72. The..... between Cairo and London is 3.500 kilometres.  
a- distant      b- distance      c- space      d- height
73. When you are..... in space, it must be very difficult to standstill.  
a- gravity      b- flying      c- weightless      d- heavy
74. Some basketball players can.....the ball on one finger!  
a- orbit      b- kick      c- play      d- spin
- 75- July 1969 was when a man first.....on the moon.  
a- walked      b- swam      c- orbited      d- spun
76. The teachers will.....the exams tomorrow.  
a- be marked      b- be marking      c- marks      d- mark
77. In the future petrol won't.....as much as it is today.  
a- be used      b- used      c- use      d- be using
78. The astronauts in the Space Station will.....  
a- interview      b- interviewed      c- interviews      d- be interviewed
79. A lot of photos are.....of the astronauts.  
a- being taken      b- taking      c- takes      d- took
80. A lot is always.....from space missions.  
a- learning      b- learns      c- learned      d- be learned
81. b. My phone can do many things, it is really.....  
a- useless      b- powerful      c- awful      d- useful
82. It is very sad that there are many.....people living in the city.  
a- tasteless      b- homeless      c- fearless      d- powerful
83. I don't like this sandwich. It is completely.....  
a- fearless      b- painful      c- tasteless      d- weightless
84. My tooth hurts. It is really.....  
a- painful      b- amazing      c- painless      d- fearless
85. The car can go very fast. It is extremely.....  
a- weightless      b- painful      c- fearless      d- powerful
86. We.....exactly what to do in these situations.  
a- told      b- tell      c- be told      d- are told
87. The children are.....to the park today.  
a- taking      b- being taken      c- be taken      d- took
88. There is a hole in the roof, which needs .....at.  
a- to look      b- to looking      c- be looked      d- to be looked
89. Your homework will..... tomorrow.  
a- be marked      b- mark      c- be mark      d- be marking
90. A lot of bread is.....at the baker's today.  
a- baked      b- bakes      c- being baked      d- baking
- 91- Water should.....wisely.  
a be using      b be used      c- use      d have used
- 92- A party ..... for my sister's engagement.  
a gives      b is to give      c is going to be given      d- is going to give





- 93-If your car isn't serviced regularly, the engine .....  
a damages                      b may be damaging      c-may damage                      d-may be damaged
- 94-The children.....to the park today.  
a is taken                      b are taking                      c-take                      d are taken
- 95-Sooner or later, a cure for cancer.....  
a-will have discovered                      b-will be discovering  
c-will be discovered                      d-will discover
- 96-Don't be wasteful or your money..... out .  
a will be run                      b will run                      c-run                      d ran
- 97-Animals need to .....well.  
a be fed                      b feed                      c-be feeding                      d-food
- 98-Old bottles..... for recycling.  
a are taken                      b take                      c-is taken                      d-are taking
- 99-Preparations for the party ..... now.  
a have made                      b has to be made                      c-are being made                      d-are making
- 100-Ali..... an email from the company every time he is asked to do a new task.  
a sends                      b was sent                      c-is sending                      d-is sent
- 101-I'm going to.....for the new job.  
a be interviewing      b have interviewed      c be interviewed                      d-interview
- 102-Chinese mobiles.....all over the world.  
a are to sell                      b are sold                      c are selling                      d-has been sold
- 103 -The wind is used..... ships.  
a to sail                      b be sailed                      c to have sailed                      d-to sailing
- 104-Unfortunately, no spare parts for my car..... easily.  
a can find                      b can be found                      c is found                      d-are finding
- 105-Traffic rules.....strictly.  
a follow                      b should follow                      c-should be followed      d-need to follow
- 106-It's expected that the(wage-cost-finance-salary)of space holidays will decrease.
- 107-People will go(at-on-to-in) space holidays, in the next ten years.
- 108-Modern technology has(improved-proved-risen-increased) people's lives.
- 109-People have always wanted to(explore-orbit-find out-invent) their world.
- 110-Modern technology helps solve problems like global (heating - boiling- warming-warmth) .
- 111-Tonight Mr. and Mrs. Addison is celebrating their 3<sup>rd</sup> wedding (memory - souvenir -party-anniversary).
- 112-Will you go sailing tomorrow?-This(predicts-needs-expects-depends on) how good the weather will be.
- 113-The earth(stems-stains-spins-springs) on its axis.
- 114-The(faster-fast-fastest-more fast) you run, the more energy you use.
- 115-I think space tourists will(do-have-make-play) fun with weightless sports.
- 116-A: Space exploration is a waste of money. B:I(can't agree- agree-don't agree-couldn't agree) more. We should spend the money to help poor people.
- 117-(Resistant-Instant-Assistant-Distant)communication by satellite technology is a good thing.
- 118-Scientists hope to find (representatives- treatments-delegations-associations) for all the unpleasant side effects of travelling in space .
- 119-In the future, it is expected that the(cost-tax-rise-fees)of space holidays will be cheaper.



- 120-Doing exercise is a very good way of(making-taking-keeping-seeking) fit.
- 121- How long(since-for-before-ago) did they buy their tickets?
- 122-I saw Adel this morning. He(was waiting-is waiting-waited-waits)for the bus.
- 123-She didn't begin cleaning(after-when-before-until) all the guests had left.
- 124-It was the first time they(flew-fly-had flown-flown) by Concorde.
- 125-I like your dress. Is it new? No, I(have had-had-have- had had) it for ages .
- 126-It's a long time since I last(have eaten - eaten -had eaten-ate)out.
- 127-A convicted (murderer-murder-murdering-murdered) was executed in North Carolina yesterday.
- 128- He was found(innocent-guilty -shy-ashamed) and imprisoned.
- 129-The Mousetrap is Agatha Christie's longest(run-ran-runner-running)play.
- 130-Adel Emam is an excellent actor. He(performs-operates-pretends-makes) on the stage perfectly.
- 131-He lives in a big flat which(looks-looks out -outlooks-overlooks) the Nile.
- 132-Ali was (able- unable- enable- capable) of doing his postgraduate studies at Oxford University.
- 133-The new government has decided to(sit-sat-get-set)all political prisoners free.
- 134-The spy was arrested before he could(cross-pass-carry-get) on very important information to the enemy.
- 135-Christie's books(have translated-translated- were translating -have been translated) into more than forty languages.

**\*\*\*Practice(5):( Previous Exams Egypt, Sudan and Azhar:)\*\*\***

**\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :\*\*\***

- 136-.....means to send a spaceship into space.  
a. Control                      b. Equipment                      c. Location                      d. Launch
137. A / An..... is a small hole that liquid or gas gets out through.  
a. spoke                      b. leak                      c. spin                      d. orbit
- 138- A / An.....is an important job that someone has been given to do.  
a- work                      b. anniversary                      c. mission                      d. tourism
139. We wish you good luck.....your new position in the company.  
a) with                      b) about                      c) in                      d) at
- 140-It must be fantastic to be in space and look down..... earth.  
a) at                      b) in                      c) on                      d) for
- 141-The plane is flying.....a height of 30km now.  
a) at                      b)in                      c) on                      d) for
- 142-The teacher blamed the boy sitting in the first.....for the noise.  
a) queue                      b) row                      c) raw                      d) line
- 143-The place is not a suitable..... for the supermarket.  
a) extraction                      b) location                      c) destination                      d) station
- 144-The astronauts are going to .....a space station in space.  
a) build                      b) invent                      c) analyze                      d) arrest
- 145-The space station resembles a huge wheel with.....  
a) spots                      b) spears                      c) spikes                      d) spokes
- 146-The moon has less.....than the Earth, so you can jump much higher there.  
a) power                      b) gravity                      c) energy                      d) strength
- 147-The astronauts are going to.....a space station in space. (دور أول 2011)  
a. build                      b. invent                      c. analyze                      d. arrest





- 148 July 2010 was the 41<sup>st</sup> ..... of man's first landing on the moon. (دور ثان 2011)  
 a. anniversary      b. anonymous      c. anomalous      d. advisory
149. The astronauts went on a space..... to replace a broken fuel pump. (دور أول 2013)  
 a. tour      b. suit      c. mission      d. walk
- 150- Millions of people watched the rocket..... on TV. (دور ثان 2013)  
 a. set off      b. start      c. launch      d. eruption
151. It is hard to walk in space because there is no ..... (دور أول 2014)  
 a spin      b. gravity      c. air      d. waiting
- 152 People in space are almost.....; it must be very difficult to stand still out there.  
 a. weighty      b. weightless      c. heavy      d. heal
153. The Prime Minister is going on an urgent..... to Japan tomorrow. (دور أول 2015)  
 a. mission      b. mansion      c. mention      d. motion
154. The..... between Cairo and my town is 300 kilometers. (دور أول 2016)  
 a. distance      b. district      c. area      d. space
155. When he arrived at the bus stop, he saw a number of people..... to take the bus.  
 a. queuing      b. creeping      c. crawling      d. rowing
156. Water covered the carpets because there was a..... in the main pipe in the kitchen. (أزهر 2012)  
 a. lake      b. leak      c. look      d. lack
157. Foreign students ..... to Al-Azhar can take many years. (أزهر 2012)  
 a. sessions      b. missions      c. motions      d. emotions
158. Millions watched the..... of the rocket carrying Nile-Sat 103 (أزهر 2012)  
 a launch      b. set off      c. start      d. landing
159. Astronauts are well-trained to do..... walks. (أزهر 2013)  
 a. pace      b. space      c. place      d. palace
- 160- The second..... of the 25<sup>th</sup> January Revolution was 3 months ago. (السودان 2013)  
 a. university      b. anniversary      c. universe      d. birth place
- 161- ..... Exercises is a good way of keeping fit. (أزهر 2014)  
 a. Giving      b. Doing      c. Going      d. Getting
- 162- I imagine ..... doing weightless sports in the outer space as the gravity is zero. (السودان 2014)  
 a. himself      b. ourselves      c. myself      d. itself
163. When the police..... the gun, they discovered his fingerprints on it. (أزهر 2015)  
 a. checked      b. inspected      c. examined      d. looked
164. Space..... costs a fortune. (السودان 2015)  
 a. exploration      b. explana      c. exemption      d. expectation
165. As we are living in the age of technology, man's..... of many planets is remarkable (دور أول 2018)  
 a. invention      b. indication      c. invasion      d. inspiration

### Homework: Open Book Practice

1) \*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- \* 1- The medicine has no side (results – damage – effects – problems).
- \* 2- The mechanic (examined–explained–exteded–looked) the engine for damage.
- \* 3- There was a (brake - leak – lake – fake) in the water pipe and I had to have it fixed.
- \* 4- Is the mechanic able to (prepare–impair–despair– repair) my damaged car.
- \* 5- Computer passwords should always be (known –public–secret–distributed).
- \* 6- The astronauts (went-did- be-do) on a two-hour space walk to replace a fuel pump.
- \* 7- Drivers have a sat-nav (order–stick–system–string) in their car to find the best route



- ❖\*8- The doctor ( examined-charged- marked-punished) me carefully before he gave me the medicine.
- ❖\*9-The more people want something , the (cheap-cheapest-cheaper-as cheap)it will be.
- ❖\*10-Space ( revision – explore – mission -fissions )can take several years.
- ❖\*11-We are very (hopeful – hopeless – useful – useless ) that nada will pass her exams.
- ❖\*12-The bank is alleged to ( be – have been– get – make ) robbed last night.
- ❖\*13-Millions of people watched the rocket (start – launch – set off – beginning) on TV.
- ❖\*14-The Earth (stems – stains – spins - springs) on its axis.
- ❖\*15-July 1969 was (what-where-when-which) people first landed on the moon.
- ❖\*16-The spokes of the space station have (full-zero-maximum-under) gravity.
- ❖\*17-There are now(agreements-amusements-treatments-appointments)for most side effects.
- ❖\*18-Space tourists will fly to the space station by (ship – boat – plane – rocket).
- ❖\*19-(Modern – Traditional – Old – Ancient) technology has improved everyone's lives.
- ❖\*20-Some people have(comforted-infected-benefited-filtered)more from this TV program .
- ❖\*21-The bank is said to ( rob-have robbed-have been robbed – stolen ) last night.
- ❖\*22-It(has known-is knowing -is being known-is known) that crime doesn't benefit.
- ❖\*23-The same characters (were played-were playing-are playing-playing) by the same actors
- ❖\*24-The children ( take – taken – took -are being taken ) to the park today.
- ❖\*25-There is a hole in the roof, which needs to be (looking-look-is looked-looked) at.
- ❖\*26-Your homework ( will be – will have -will - is going to ) marked tomorrow.
- ❖\*27-All the students (are being given-give-are giving-were giving) a lot of training before they sail the boats.
- ❖\*28- A lot of bread (was baking-baking-is being baked-is baking)at the baker's today.
- ❖\*29- The TV program about space( is shown-shown-showed- is being shown) at the moment.
- ❖\*30-He(will tell-tells-be told-is told) to park the car when he gets there.
- ❖\*31-A second after (night-midnight-day-midday) belongs to a new day.
- ❖\*32-As speed and (routine-system-competition-lifestyle) are part of our everyday life, we are always under pressure.
- ❖\*33-He never e-mails me but(takes-gives-connects-attaches)a photo of his. Let me show you the last one.
- ❖\*34-Once, it was (fashionable-custom-old-fashioned-routine) for young men to have a zero haircut. Many used to like it.
- ❖\*35-If you like, I could send it to you as an e-mail(e-book-download-post-attachment).
- ❖\*36-We came to (complete-win-compete-beat) for the cup, not just to have the honour of participation.
- ❖\*37-This novel came out in 1982, but it was first (written-appeared-attached-published) in a weekly newspaper.
- ❖\*38-The (customs-habits-pressures-routines) on all of us are so great that some are going to have a nervous breakdown.
- ❖\*39-Dr Zeweil's discovery of the femtosecond has(made-regarded- established - developed) him as one of the world's greatest scientists.
- ❖\*40-Our village is very small. It is not as big as a (district- place-distance-location) in the city where I work.
- ❖\*41-As far as I'm (concerned-connected-concentrated- contacted) this job needs hard work and perseverance.





- \*42—There are a lot of charities that help and support the (able-disabled-unable-disable) who can't use parts of their bodies properly.
- \*43— I'm used to having a break (for-to-on- with) coffee at 5 o'clock every day.
- \*44— Mr. Sami graduated (on- of- at-in) law, he wants to be a lawyer.
- \*45— Mr. Ahmed spent most of his (routine- job- custom-career) as a doctor in Ain Shams Hospital.
- \*46— In 1929, he began his (job- career-courier-experience) as a diplomat and he worked abroad for more than 20 years.
- \*47— At the same time as he was (doing-carrying out-working-exerting), Haqqi was also writing stories.
- \*48—In 1955, he wrote a (collector-collapse-collection-correction) of short stories about the poor and the disabled which won an important prize.
- \*49—One (out-of-by- into) his stories, "The Postman", was made into a film.
- \*50—Haqqi wrote in a new way about Arab society and(costumes-matches-customs casts) in the twentieth century.

## **2) Reading Comprehension:**

✓ **Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Dr. Christina is one of a team of doctors who work in the Amazon Forest. They work to find out about the methods which local people use to treat diseases. Local people use medicines which come from plants, and the team want to know about these plants and study them to find the active component. Then they plan to experiment with them. Plant medicines were used for treating illnesses very long ago, and they are still common in many parts of the world. These plant medicines are safer and cheaper than scientific medicines and they work just as well for many diseases. However, many people still use scientific medicines. Dr. Christina says that we are too dependent on scientific medicines which can be very dangerous and make people ill. Some diseases have become resistant to them.

If the medicines stop killing bacteria and viruses, then they are more dangerous than useful. Many doctors do not recommend plant medicines, but this is because they do not understand them. Dr. Christina says, "We are learning about forest plants so that we can teach city people to use them." She thinks we should use plant medicines for most of our illnesses, and keep scientific medicines for treating dangerous diseases.

### **✓ A) Choose the correct answer**

- 1-Dr.Christina is interested in ( herbal – science – scientific – planets ) medicines .
- 2-The ( national – local – urban – native) people use plants to treat diseases.
- 3-Doctors don't recommend plant medicines because they .....
  - a) understand them
  - b) know them
  - c) have knowledge about them
  - d) don't understand them
- 4-Plant medicines are ----- scientific ones for treating many diseases.
 

a)more effective than	b)less effective than
c)as effective as	d)more dangerous than



5- ----- use plant medicines more than other people.

- a) Doctors and pharmacists                      b) City people  
c) Forest people                                      d) The medical school students

6-Plant medicines are .....than scientific medicines.

- a-more expensive              b-inexpensive              c-cheaper              d-costly

**✓ B) Answer the following questions:**

7-What does Dr. Christina do at the Amazon Forest?

8-When can scientific medicines be dangerous?

9-What does the underlined word “them” refer to?

10- Suggest a suitable title for the passage.

**3) Translation: A) Translate into Arabic :**

1. Energy is necessary for development. It is essential for all productive activities required to achieve higher standards of living. Man’s great progress in industry and agriculture is due to energy.
2. The Egyptian woman has acquired all her rights. She is also represented in all international organizations concerned with women’s affairs. Moreover, services are rendered to provide family guidance and child’s welfare.
3. Egypt does its best to attract Arab and foreign capital for investment in the field of industry. We encourage the establishment of new industries as well as expanding the existing ones. Due attention has been given to introduce software and communication industries.

**B) Translate into English:**

- 1- تشجع الحكومة الصناعات المحلية حتى تستطيع أن تستغنى عن كثير من الواردات التى تحتاج الى عملية صعبة.
- 2- للتلفزيون تأثير عظيم على الأطفال ولذا يجب أن يزيد ثقافتهم بطريقة بسيطة وشيقة.
- 3- تسعى الحكومة الى توفير احتياجات الشعب بكل السبل وهذا يستلزم زيادة الانتاج وتنظيم النسل.
- 4- ان الضوضاء التى تسببها المدينة الحديثة تؤثر تأثيرا سيئا على سمعنا.
- 5- علينا ألا نزعج المرضى أو الطلبة الذين يستذكرون دروسهم وذلك بمراعاة الهدوء.

**4) Write an essay of about one hundred and eighty (180) words on :**

1)a job that you would like to do, and why

2)a famous woman that you respect





## Unit Seven

### A space Odyssey

#### 1 – Important vocabulary & derivatives:

consult	يستشير	A space Odyssey	ملحمة الفضاء / رحلة طويلة
consultant	مستشار	director	مخرج / مدير
consultation	استشارة	Contact earth	يتصل بالأرض
physics	الفيزياء	threat	تهديد
physicist	عالم فيزياء	threaten	يهدد
foundation	مؤسسة	Threatening	مهدد
astronaut	عالم فضاء	threatened	شخص تحت التهديد
Saturn	كوكب زحل	Artificial intelligence	الذكاء الاصطناعي
radar	رادار	Lost contact	فقد الاتصال بـ
technician (n)	خبير تقني - فني	Pros and cons	مزايا و عيوب
technical (adj.)	تقني - فني	politics	السياسة
electricity	الكهرباء	political (adj.)	سياسي
electrician (n)	فني كهربائي	politician (n)	رجل سياسة
electrical (adj.)	كهربائي - كهربى	poison : toxin	سم
electric car	سيارة كهربائية	poisonous : toxic	سام
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	science fiction	خيال علمي
chemist	صيدلي	scientist	عالم
chemistry	الكيمياء	archaeology	علم الآثار
chemist's	صيدلية	archaeologist	عالم آثار
be about to	على وشك أن	archaeological	أثري
interrupt	يقاطع	emergent	عاجل - طارئ
interruption	مقاطعة	emergency	حالة طوارئ
zero-gravity	انعدام الجاذبية	emergency room	حجرة الطوارئ
exit	مخرج - يخرج	horrify : scare	يزعج - يخيف
emergency exit	باب الطوارئ	horrified	مرعوب
Controls (n)	أجهزة التحكم	spaceship	سفينة فضاء
pressure	ضغط	space shuttle	مكوك فضاء
Pressurized (adj)	مضغوط عالية	space station	محطة فضاء
explore	يستكشف	satellite	قمر صناعي
exploration	استكشاف	video message	رسالة مصورة
remote	نائي - بعيد	name... after	يسمى باسم ...
remote control	جهاز تحكم عن بعد	rubbish bags	أكياس الزباله
human	إنساني - بشري	recover	يتعافى
humanity	البشرية	contents	محتويات
warn	يحذر	go wrong	يتعطل
warning	تحذير	structure	تركيب - بناء
publish	ينشر	objects	أشياء
publication	نشر	position	موضع - مكان
unexpected	غير متوقع	radio waves	موجات لاسلكية
pharmacy	صيدلية	wires	أسلاك



promote	يشجع - يرقى	practical	عملي
promotion	تشجيع - ترقية	fiction	خيال
advertise	يعن عن	fictional	خيالي
advertisement	إعلان	negative	سلبى
compete	ينافس	positive	ايجابي
competition	منافسة - مسابقة	downside	الجانب السلبي

## 2- Check Your Vocabulary :

measure	يقيس	planet	كوكب
land	يهبط	awake	مستيقظ
beach	شاطئ البحر	fail	يتوقف - يتعطل - يفشل
waves	أمواج	replace	يستبدل
interview	يجري مقابلة	contact	يتصل بـ
snake	ثعبان	deal with	يتعامل مع
float	يطفو	come true	يتحقق
fall	ينخفض	peace	السلام
common	شائع	wake up	يوقظ

## ✓ 3- Tapescript:-

Narrator الراوي : Today, I'm going to give a talk يلقي كلمة about one of the most famous writers of science fiction: الخيال العلمي **Arthur C. Clarke**. He was born in England in 1917, the son of a farmer. مزارع He was always interested in مهتم بـ science, but his father died and his family did not have much money, so **Clarke had to** اضطر ان find work as soon as he finished school. He got a job with the government, الحكومة although he wrote for science magazines مجلات علمية in his free time. وقت الفراغ **He was able to develop his skills** يطور مهاراته **in science during the Second World War**, الحرب العالمية الثانية when he worked with **radar**. الرادار **This system was being used for the first time, to help planes to land**. تهبط Many science articles مقالات by Clarke had been published نشرت in magazines before the war ended. **He predicted satellite television** تنبأ بالفتوات الفضائية **in one article**. Later, his science fiction stories were also published in magazines.

Clarke decided to go to university after the war and **he graduated in** تخرج في **maths** الرياضيات **and physics**. الفيزياء **He became the editor** محرر **of a science magazine and continued to write articles and stories**. Many of his stories were about people travelling into space in rockets. صواريخ **Soon he was famous** مشهور **as a writer and also as a scientific consultant** مستشار. Scientists and technicians الفنيين knew that Clarke could be asked about spaceships سفن الفضاء and satellites, الاقمار الصناعية and he was happy to talk about his ideas.

**In 1964, Clarke was asked to work on a film for the famous director** مخرج **Stanley Kubrick**. The director wanted to make a film of one of Clarke's short stories. This became **2001: A Space Odyssey**. ملحمة The film, about travelling far into space, has been watched by many millions of people since it was made in 1968.

After a serious illness, مرض خطير Clarke was in a wheelchair كرسي متحرك for many years and he died in 2008, but he is remembered as a great scientist as well as a writer. The Arthur C Clarke Foundation مؤسسة has promoted روجت the use of technology to improve the quality جودة of life in developing countries, الدول النامية and there are now parts of space that have been named after him. يسمى





## ✓ 4 - Reading :

### 2001: A Space Odyssey(In Points)

- 1- Only two men were awake مستيقظين on the spaceship Discovery.
- 2- Their names were David Bowman and Frank Poole.
- 3- Their job was to look after يعتنى the spaceship and the three other astronauts, who were sleeping during the long journey to the planet Saturn كوكب زحل.
- 4- Bowman and Poole were helped by Hal, an extremely intelligent computer. ذكى جدا.
- 5- One morning, Poole was watching a video message رسالة مصورة that had been sent to him by his family on earth.
- 6- It was interrupted يقطع by Hal, who said that part AE35 of the spaceship was about to fail. يوشك ان يتعطل.
- 7- Part AE35 was important because it sent messages رسائل to earth.
- 8- Poole went outside the spaceship to replace يستبدل the part. He was used اعتاد ان working in zero-gravity انعدام الجاذبية so he changed the part easily. بسهولة.
- 9- However, when Bowman checked فحص the old part later, he found nothing wrong.
- 10- That afternoon, Hal told them that the new part AE35 was also about to fail.
- 11- The men were not used to hearing that there were problems with the spaceship and they thought that this was strange, غريب so they contacted earth. تواصلوا مع.
- 12- They were told that something was wrong with Hal and that they should turn the computer off. Suddenly, فجأة they lost contact with earth. Part AE35 was not working.
- 13- Poole decided to replace the new part AE35, but while he was outside, the spaceship suddenly moved forward يتحرك للامام and hit him. He was killed. قتل.
- 14- Bowman was horrified مرعوب and wondered يتساءل if Poole was killed by Hal. He decided to wake up يوقظ the other astronauts, but to do this, he needed Hal's help.
- 15- At first, Hal refused, يرفض but when Bowman threatened يهدد to cut Hal's wires اسلاك the computer finally agreed.
- 16- Bowman started to wake up the other astronauts, but suddenly he felt the inside of the spaceship became very cold.
- 17- The pressure الضغط inside the spaceship was falling fast ينخفض and all the air was disappearing. Bowman ran to an emergency room غرفة الطوارئ so he could breathe يتنفس some oxygen.
- 18- He now understood that the computer that had been built to help him was trying to kill him. He had to find Hal's controls مفاتيح التحكم so that he could turn off يطفى the computer.

## ✓ 5 - Main Points:

- 1- I'm going to give a talk about one of the most famous writers of science fiction. يعطى حديث.
- 2- Clarke had to find work as soon as he finished school. اضطر أن يجد.
- 3- He was able to develop his skills in science during the Second World War. تطور مهاراته.
- 4- This system was being used for the first time, to help planes to land. استخدم لأول مرة.
- 5- He predicted satellite television in one article. تنبأ بـ.
- 6- He graduated in maths تخرج فى and physics. He became the editor of a science magazine and continued to write articles and stories.



- 7- He was **famous as a writer** and also as a scientific consultant. مستشار علمي
- 8-The director wanted to **make a film** of one of Clarke's short stories. يصنع فيلم
- 9-This became 2001: A Space Odyssey. The film, about travelling far into space, **has been watched** شُهِدَتْ by many millions of people since it was made in 1968.

### \*\*\*Practice(1)Test Your Vocabulary\*\*\*

\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- 1-Traffic police use a kind of .....to discover drivers who exceed the speed limits.  
a) radar                      b) signals                      c) radio                      d) laser
2. Stephen Spielberg is the famous..... of Jurassic Park series.  
a) viewer                      b) editor                      c) director                      d) customer
- 3- We need a .....to repair the computer.  
a) doctor                      b) technician                      c) player                      d) lawyer
- 4-The first man who was sent.....space was a Russian astronaut called Yuri Gagarin,  
a) for                      b) to                      c) into                      d) in
- 5-The.....is an ability to do something well, especially because you have practised it.  
a) skull                      b) skill                      c) skeleton                      d) sketch
- 6-Call an ambulance! This is an/a..... !  
a) phenomenon                      b) emergency                      c) catastrophe                      d) explosion
- 7-Our rubbish .....every week,  
a) are collected                      b) is collecting                      c) was collecting                      d) is collected
- 8-A lot more birds..... on the shore this year.  
a) have seen                      b) saw                      c) had been seen                      d) have been seen
- 9-I can't talk to you now because I am..... to go out.  
a) about                      b) off                      c) over                      d) away
- 10-Arthur C.Clarke was the..... of a science magazine.  
a) actor                      b) director                      c) producer                      d) artist
- 11) The problem.....when I arrived.  
a) had discussed                      b) was discussing                      c) discussed                      d) was being discussed
- 12) The famous film star..... at the airport during his last visit  
a)hasn't received                      b)hadn't received                      c)wasn't received                      d)didn't receive
- 13) The tyre burst while it .....  
a) was pumping                      b)pumped                      c)was being pumped                      d)had been pumping
- 14) The shirt.....before you put it on.  
a) had pressed                      b) had been pressed                      c) pressed                      d) has pressed
- 15) The spokesman was angry when he..... by a journalist.  
a) was interrupting                      b)interrupted                      c) had interrupted                      d) was interrupted
- 16) Astronauts get used to working in.....  
a) zero-gravity                      b) gravity                      c) ordinary gravity                      d) real gravity
- 17) All the stains on my shirt.....  
a) would remove                      b) removed                      c) were removing                      d) were removed
- 18) The guard was..... and saw the fire.  
a) awake                      b) asleep                      c) sleeping                      d) napping
- 19) We need a baby sitter to look.....the baby.  
a) for                      b) after                      c) at                      d) down
- 20) Who.....the loose knob fixed by?  
a) did                      b) had                      c) was                      d) has
- 21.I bought a car as soon as the money.....  
a) had been saved                      b) had saved                      c) has been saved                      d) has saved





- ✂ 22 -My computer..... by the technician.  
a) was repaired      b) is repairing      c) was repairing      d) has repaired
- ✂ 23. The baby was heard .....  
a) screams      b) screaming      c) being screamed      d) to screaming
- ✂ 24. This nice story ..... by Taha Hussein.  
a) is written      b) writes      c) wrote      d) was written
- ✂ 25. It.....that an accident took place on the Ring Road.  
a) has been reported      b) reports      c) had reported      d) reported
- ✂ 26. Naguib Mahfouz's books ..... into many languages.  
a) been translated      b) have been translated      c) have translated      d) were translating
- ✂ 27. A fire.....to have broken out by a cigarette end yesterday,  
a) is thought      b) is thinking      c) thought      d) was thinking
- ✂ 28. After the death of her husband, the poor woman was thought.....from amnesia.  
a) is suffered      b) to have suffered      c) suffer      d) to be suffered
- ✂ 29. This house.....by a famous architect.  
a) was designed      b) was designing      c) designed      d) had designed
- ✂ 30. The TV....., so I turned it off.  
a) didn't watch      b) watched      c) wasn't being watched      d) wasn't watching

### ✓ 6 - Definitions :-

1-	consultant	: someone with a lot of experience in a subject whose job is to give advice about it	مستشار - استشاري
2-	director	: someone who gives instructions to actors and other people in a film	مخرج
3-	physics	: the science that deals with the structure of objects and substances	الفيزياء
4-	radar	: a method of finding the position of things such as planes by sending out radio waves	رادار
5-	technician	: someone who does practical work connected with science or technology	فني
6-	be about to	: be ready to start doing something	على وشك أن
7-	emergency	: relating to an unexpected and dangerous situation	حالة طوارئ
8-	interrupt	: stop a process or activity for a short time	يقاطع
9-	pressure	: the force that a gas or liquid has when it is inside a container	ضغط
10-	controls	: parts of a machine that you use to make it work	أجهزة التحكم
11-	horrified	: shocked	مرعوب
12-	threaten	: tell someone you will hurt them or cause serious problems for them if they do not do what you want	يهدد
13-	zero-gravity	: without the force that makes objects fall to the ground	انعدام الجاذبية
14-	artificial intelligence	: the science of how to make computers do things that usually need human intelligence	الذكاء الاصطناعي

### ✓ 8- Phrases, Expressions and Idioms:

Go to / get into university	يلتحق بالجامعة
Come true	تتحقق
Give advice about	يعطي نصيحة بخصوص



Write for science magazine	يكتب في مجله علميه
More or less = about	تقريباً
Run to an emergency room	يجري نحو غرفه الطواري
Travel into space = go into space	يسافر الي الفضاء
Sports club	نادي رياضي
Wake up the others	يوقظ الاخرين
The structure of objects	بنية الاجسام
Editor in chief	رئيس التحرير
How many times/ how often	كم عدد المرات
Use huge amount of	تستخدم كميه هائله من
Was/went wrong with	كان هناك مشكله
Pros and cons	مزايا و عيوب
Predicted satellite television	يتنبأ القنوات الفضايه
The second world war	الحرب العالميه الثانيه
Help the planes to land	يساعد الطيارات علي الهبوط
A serious illness	مرض خطير
Travel under the sea	يسافر تحت المياه
Space exploration	استكشاف الفضاء
Social media	وسايل التواصل الاجتماعي
Cause serious problems	يسبب مشاكل خطيره
Video message	رسائل بصوت و الصوره
Is remembered as	يذكر لـ / يذكر بانه
Improve the quality of life	يحسن نوعيه الحياه
Walk on the moon	يسير علي القمر
Work on a film / make a film	يعمل بفيلم / يصنع فيلم
Give a talk	يلقي خطبه ( حديث )
The dark side of the moon	الجانب المظلم للقمر
Odyssey "a long exciting journey"	رحله ملحميه ( طويله و مثيره )
Science articles / fact	مقالات او حقايق علميه
In a wheel chair	علي كرسي متحرك
Make a medicine	يصنع الدواء
Artificial intelligence	ذكاء صناعي
Free time	وقت فراغ
Since the beginning of time	منذ بدايه التاريخ
Graduated in the math and physics	تخرج في الرياضيات و الفيزياء
Got a job with the government	يحصل علي وظيفه في الحكومه
In his free time	في وقته فراغه
Learn how to measure energy	تعلم كيف يقيس الطاقة
Lose contact with	يفقد الاتصال بـ
Work with radar	يعمل علي جهاز الرادار





On long space journeys	في رحلات فضايه طويله
A scientific consultant	مستشار علمي
An extremely intelligent computer	حاسب الي ذكي جدا
Check the damage	يفحص التلف
Turn the computer off	يطفى الحاسب الالى
Lose contact	يفقد الاتصال
Science fiction	الخيال العلمي

### ✓ 9-Language Notes :

#### ✓ (1)

1) fail	failed	failed	يفشل / يتوقف / يتعطل
2) feel	felt	felt	يشعر
3) fall	fell	fallen	يسقط / ينخفض
4) fill	filled	filled	يملا
5) fly	flew	flown	يطير -- يسافر جوا
6) flow	flowed	flowed	ينساب / يتدفق
7) fell	felled	felled	يقطع شجره
8) flee	fled	fled	يهرب / يفر
9) found	founded	founded	يؤسس
10) feed	fed	fed	يطعم
11) find	found	found	يجد
12) lie	lied	lied	يكذب
13) lie	lay	lain	يرقد "without object"
14) lay	laid	laid	يضع -- تضع البيض +object

#### ✓ 2- Suffix for jobs

1) ian			
Mathematician	عالم رياضيات	Pediatrician	طبيب اطفال
Dietician	اخصائي تغذيه	Physician	طبيب معالج
Magician	ساحر	Librarian	امين المكتبه
Beautician	خبير تجميل	Technician	فني/تقني
Optician	اخصائي نظارات	Historian	مورخ
Technician	فني	Musician	موسيقي/عازف
Electrician	كهربائي	Politician	سياسي
2) ist			
Artist	فنان	Dentist	طبيب اسنان
Chemist	صيدلي	Oculist	طبيب عيون
Florist	بائع الزهور	Socialist	اخصائي اجتماعي
Archaeologist	عالم اثار	Dramatist	كاتب مسرحي
Specialist	اخصائي	Biologist	عالم احياء
Pharmacist	صيدلي	Physicist	فيزيائي
Novelist	كاتب قصص	Dentist	طبيب الاسنان
Motorist	سائق	Journalist	صحفي
Scientist	عالم		



<b>3) or</b>			
Advisor	مستشار	Conductor	كمساري
Inventor	مخترع	Sailor	بحار
Actor	ممثل		
<b>4- er</b>			
Teacher	مدرس	Farmer	فلاح
Baker	خباز	Gardener	جنايني
Driver	سائق		
<b>5- ant</b>			
Accountant	محاسب	Consultant	مستشار
Assistant	مساعد		

### ✓ Focus on about

- About: a little more or less than a number or amount** حوالي  
eg: There are about 40 students in the class
- About: almost** تقريبا  
eg: The fourth line of Cairo underground system is about to work
- About: ready to start doing something** علي وشك  
eg: Rassendyll was about to tell Flavia the truth when Sapt came
- About: nearby** بالقرب من  
eg: I'd like to meet the manager, is he about?
- About: different directions** حول / في اتجاهات مختلفه  
eg: The thief was rushing about when the police came

### 4- Pressure – Pressurize – Pressurized

- \*\*Pressure "n"** الضغط / اجبار / الحاح  
eg: Don't try to put a lot of pressure on me, I can't bear more
- \*\*Pressurize "v"** يضغط / يجبر / يلح / فرض  
eg: The government is pressurizing the public because of the economic conditions and corona virus effects
- \*\*Pressurized "adj"** مضغوط / مثقل الأعباء  
eg: Debts make people pressurized, try to release yourself as soon as possible

### 5- Develop – Developing – Developed

- \*\*Develop v. "without object"** يتطور / ينمو  
eg: Some plants develop phenomenally, no one knows how.  
eg: The government does its best to develop many fields
- \*\*Developing** يمر بمراحل التطور  
eg: Economy in many developing countries needs to be developed to increase national income
- \*\*Developed** متطور / متقدم  
eg: Many developed countries play a vital role in helping other poorer countries

### 6- threat – threaten – threatened – threatening

- \*\*threat** تهديد / خطر  
eg: Terrorism is a threat to Egypt
- \*\*threaten V.** يهدد  
eg: The policeman threatened the criminal to stop otherwise they would shoot him.





**\*\*threatened "adj"** مهدد / تم تهديده

eg: The employee was threatened to be fired if he neglected his work

**\*\* threatening** تهديدي

eg: Mariam was sent a threatening letter to kill her son if she didn't pay the money

### 7- Electric – Electrical

**\*\*Electric "car-light-kettle"** يعمل بالكهرباء

eg: We need to change our electric lights

**\*\* Electrical:** "له علاقة بالكهرباء اشخاص/اشياء"

**\*\* Electrical "goods–fuse–circuit–meter–fault–current–shop–engineer"**

eg: The electrical engineer is responsible for the electrical circuits

### 8- consult – advisor – consultant – direct

**\*\* consult** يستشير

eg: I think every teacher needs to consult a computer consultant before teaching online

**\*\*advisor** المرشد

eg: He is working as an economic advisor for many companies

**\*\* consultant:** المستشار

eg: Arthur C. Clarke was famous as a writer and also as a scientific consultant

**\*\* direct** يوجه

eg: I got lost, can you direct me to the airport?

**\*\* director** مخرج / مدير

eg: A director is someone who decides how a play or film should be made

### 9- coast – shore – beach – bank

**\*\* coast** ساحل

eg: There are many cities on the coast of the Mediterranean

**\*\* shore:** شاطئ

eg: No one can deny that Alexandria has many distinguished shores

**\*\*beach** البلاج

eg: A lot of foreigners who visit Egypt like to sun themselves on the beaches

**\*\*bank** ضفة

eg: In Egypt you are not allowed to build any buildings on the Nile banks.

### 10- Famous as- Famous for

**\*\* Famous as + job** مشهور كـ

eg: Yehia Haqqi is famous as a writer as well as a diplomat.

**\*\*Famous for = well known for** مشهور بـ

eg: Mo Salah is known for his achievements we should be proud of him.

### 11- Publish- Came out

**\*\*Publish** ينشر "تأتي في المبنى للمجهول"

eg: His first short story was published in 1925

**\*\*came out** ينشر "تأتي في المبنى للمعلوم"

eg: His first short story came out in 1925

### 12- bear – bear

**\*\*bear-bore-born** يولد "لا بد ان تأتي في المبنى للمجهول" eg: she was born in 2013

**\*\*bear-bore-borne = endure** يتحمل

eg: He can't bear dealing with her any more but he has no choice.

### 13-intersted in - interested to - have interested in

**\*\*interested in + noun or v.ing** مهتم بـ

eg: Mohamed is very interested in maths



- \*\*interested to + inf** لديه اهتمام ب  
eg: I'm interested to watch the final match
- \*\*have interested in + noun or V.ing**  
eg: She has an interest in buying fashionable clothes.

#### 14- fault – foul

- \*\*fault** خطأ  
eg: I have to confess it's my fault
- \*\*foul** خطأ في الرياضة  
eg: The referee dismissed him because he had committed three fouls on purpose.

#### 15- survive – survival – survivor

- \*\*survive** البقاء علي قيد الحياة  
eg: Fortunately all the students on the bus survived the accident
- \*\*survival** البقاء علي قيد الحياة  
eg: Poor people struggle for survival
- \*\*survivor** ناجي  
eg: He was the only survivor of the shipwreckwd

#### 16-fiction- fictional-nonfiction

- \*\*fiction** خيال / ادب  
eg: Some people like to read fiction others not
- \*\*fictional / adj** خيالي  
eg: She loves reading fictional stories
- \*\*nonfiction** واقعي  
eg: She prefers to read nonfiction as she doesn't like imagination .

#### ✓ 10- Confusing words for choices:-

Threaten	يهدد	Warn / thread	حظر / خيط
Position	موقع / مكانه / وظيفه	Location	موقع (تصوير / سوبر ماركت)
The problem of	مشكله	Problem with	مشكله في كذا
Breathe v.	يتنفس	Breath "n"	تنفس
Human	بشر / انسان	Humane	انساني / محب للخير
List	قائمه	Lest	خشيه ان
Replace	يستبدل	Place	مكان / يضع
Artificial	صناعي	Man-made	من صنع الانسان
Developing countries	دول ناميه	Developed countries	دول متقدمه
Go wrong	يتعطل	Do wrong	يرتكب خطأ
Solve	يحل	Dissolve	يزوب / يتحلل
Popular with	محبوب من	Common	عام
Wonder	يتسأل	Wander	يتجول
Later	فيما بعد	Latter	الأخير / الثاني
Spaceship	سفينه فضاء	Space station	محطه فضاء
Physicist	عالم فيزياء	Physician	طبيب
Wrong with	عطل في / مشكله في	Wrong about	مخطيء بشأن
Pay	يدفع	Bay	خليج صغير
Consult	يستشير	Insult	يهين / يسب





Technician	فني / تقني	Technique	أسلوب / طريقه
Planet	كوكب	Plant	نبات
Bold	جسور / واضح	Bald	اصلع
Near	بالقرب من	Nearby	مجاور / بالقرب
Found/founded/founded	يؤسس	Find/found/found	يجد
Cons	سلبيات	Coins	عملات نقدية
Process	عملية طبيعية بها عدة مراحل	Operation	عملية جراحية / تشغيل
Astronaut	رائد فضاء	Astronomer	عالم فلك
Fiction	خيال / ادب	Fictional	خيالي
Be about to	يكون علي وشك	Be to + inf	ينبغي ان
Cut down	يقطع	Cut out	يقطع جزء

### ✓ 11- Words and their antonyms :

downside	الجانب السلبي	upside	الجانب الإيجابي
common	شائع	uncommon	غير شائع
popular	محبوب - شعبي	unpopular	غير محبوب
fail	يرسب	succeed	ينجح
forward	للأمام	backward	للخلف
fiction	خيال	fact	واقع - حقيقة
war	حرب	peace	سلام
intelligent	ذكي	stupid	غبى
gravity	جاذبية	zero-gravity	منعدم الجاذبية
practical	عملي	theoretical	نظري
appear	يظهر	disappear	يختفي
pros	مزايا	cons	عيوب
wrong	خطأ	right	صواب
strange	غريب	familiar	مألوف
turn on	يشغل جهاز	turn off	يطفى الجهاز
natural	طبيعي	artificial	صناعي
released	يطلق سراحه	trapped	محبوس / محجوز
strong	قوي	weak	ضعيف

### \*\*\*Practice(2)Test Your Knowledge\*\*\*

\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- ⌘ 31-(Physics -Maths-History-Statistics)is the science that deals with the structure of objects.
- ⌘ 32-A(technical-physician-technician -electrician)is someone who does practical work in science or technology.
- ⌘ 33-(An instrument-Radar - Radio - Radical) is equipment that finds the position of things using radio waves.
- ⌘ 34-A(teacher-scientist-colonel-consultant) is an expert in a subject whose job is to give advice about it.
- ⌘ 35-A(producer-director - manager- principal) is someone who decides how a play, film etc. should be made.
- ⌘ 36-We saw a film being made by a famous(writer-author-director-plumber)today!



- ⌘ 37-The company needed help with its advertising so they asked a (carpenter-dealer-trader -consultant) to work with them.
- ⌘ 38-Most planes can land in any type of weather because the pilots can use (tablet-radar-mobile-compass) .
- ⌘ 39-My cousin is a(surgeon-chemical-technician-dentist)and works in the laboratory of a big company that makes medicine.
- ⌘ 40-We learnt how to measure energy in our (physical-physics-chemistry-biology) lesson today.
- ⌘ 41-Arthur C. Clarke is a science ( fictional – factual – fiction – fission ) writer.
- ⌘ 42-His father was a(teacher–doctor–farmer–director) .He raised cattle and grew crops.
- ⌘ 43- Astronauts travel into space by ( planes – jets - radar – spaceships )
- ⌘ 44-Arthur C. Clarke helped a director(to do-to make-to buy-to get)a film of his stories.
- ⌘ 45-Do you think you can ( direct – make – directorate - direction ) the project.
- ⌘ 46-The machine (electe-makes-does-directs)a powerful beam at the affected part of the body.
- ⌘ 47-He is specialised in physics .He is a (physician – physicist –physical–psychologist).
- ⌘ 48-If the pain continues , ( consult – result – insult – consultant ) your doctor.
- ⌘ 49-We offer free(mechanic–technical-electric–arctic)support for those buying our software.
- ⌘ 50- If you like working with electrical goods, you should become an .....  
a)technical                      b) physician                      c) technician                      d) electrician
- ⌘ 51- After studying ancient history, Mona became an .....  
a)archaeologist                      b) engineer                      c) archaeological                      d) electrician
- ⌘ 52- My brother wants to be a member in the parliament .He will be an outstanding.....  
a) political                      b) politics                      c) policy                      d) politician
- ⌘ 53- We want to buy some medicine from the.....  
a)shop                      b – baker's                      c – chemist's                      d – grocer's
- ⌘ 54-Radar was being used for the first time, to help planes  
a)landing                      b-lands                      c-to land                      d-landed
- ⌘ 55- Many science .....by Clarke had been published in magazines before the war ended.  
a)stories                      b) novels                      c) articles                      d) plays
- ⌘ 56-.....and technicians knew that Clarke could be asked about spaceships and satellites.  
a) Scientists                      b) Doctors                      c) Electricians                      d) Archaeologists
- ⌘ 57-There are now parts of space that have been named.....him.  
a)of                      b– for                      c)– about                      d)-after
- ⌘ 58-The ..... for this computer game don't work. Can I try yours?  
a)controls                      b) devices                      c) sets                      d) appliances
- ⌘ 59- The children were..... to find a poisonous snake in their tent.  
a) controls                      b) devices                      c) horrified                      d) appliances
- ⌘ 60- The teacher said that we should never ..... her while she is talking.  
a) cut                      b) talk                      c) speak                      d) interrupt
- ⌘ 61-Radar ..... for the first time, to help planes to land.  
a) used                      b) is using                      c) was being used                      d)has used
- ⌘ 62-Many science articles by Clarke.....published in magazines before the war ended.  
a) had                      b)has been                      c)had been                      d)have been
- ⌘ 63-His science fiction stories ..... in magazines.  
a) published                      b)were published                      c)were publishing                      d)are publishing
- ⌘ 64-Scientists and technicians knew that Clarke.....asked about spaceships and satellites.  
a) can be                      b) to be                      c) could be                      d) had





- ⌘ 65-Clarke .....to work on a film for the famous director Stanley Kubrick.  
a) asked                      b)has asked                      c) had asked                      d) was asked
- ⌘ 66-The film ..... watched by many millions of people since it was made in 1968.  
a) has been                      b)has                      c) had been                      d) have been
- ⌘ 67-There are now parts of space that have ..... after him.  
a) been                      b)been named                      c) named                      d) to be
- ⌘ 68-This picture ..... painted in the nineteenth century.  
a) is                      b)was                      c) are                      d) were
- ⌘ 69- When we went into the hotel room, the beds .....not been made.  
a)are                      b) were                      c)will                      d)had
- ⌘ 70-This funny photo on the internet is very popular. It.....to hundreds of people!  
a) sent                      b)been sent                      c)was sent                      d)to be sent
- ⌘ 71-In ..... , things that are not attached to something start to float around.  
a) zero-gravity                      b)gravity                      c)gravitate                      d) grave
- ⌘ 72-Air..... is usually high in good weather and low in bad weather.  
a) controls                      b) press                      c) stress                      d) pressure
- ⌘ 73-The shopkeeper..... to call the police when the man refused to pay.  
a) threat                      b) threatened                      c) offered                      d) blamed
- ⌘ 74-Ambulances drive very fast when there is an .....  
a) emergency                      b) eminent                      c)awkward                      d)embarrassing
- ⌘ 75-If there is a fire in the building , you should use an emergency .....  
a) exist                      b) existence                      c) exit                      d)ladder
- ⌘ 76-Could you give me the remote.....to change this channel?  
a)control                      b) roller                      c) counter                      d) pen
- ⌘ 77-On giving a speech , I don't like any .....  
a)corruption                      b- interruption                      c- fracture                      d- fiction
- ⌘ 78-As more snow fell , the bottom layer was ..... into ice.  
a) compress                      b) pressure                      c) press                      d) compressed
- ⌘ 79- The tiger .....the explorers in the forest .  
a-horror                      b-afraid                      c- terror                      d- horrified
- ⌘ 80- The house seemed less ..... in the cold light of day.  
a )threatening                      b) threatened                      c) threaten                      d) threat
- ⌘ 81- Hal was an extremely intelligent.....helping the astronauts  
a-radio                      b-TV                      c- computer                      d-Lap
- ⌘ 82-Hal said that part AE35 of the spaceship was..... to fail.  
a-on                      b-nearly                      c-almost                      d-about
- ⌘ 83-He was used to working in .....gravity so he changed the part easily.  
a-minus                      b-plus                      c-subtract                      d-zero
- ⌘ 84-The astronauts were told that something was wrong ..... Hal.  
a-of                      b-with                      c-on                      d-off
- ⌘ 85- Suddenly, they lost contact .....earth. Part AE35 was not working.  
a-of                      b-with                      c-on                      d-to
- ⌘ 86-While he.....outside, the spaceship suddenly moved forward.  
a-was being                      b-being                      c-is                      d-was
- ⌘ 87-When Bowman ..... to cut Hal's wires, the computer finally agreed.  
a) threat                      b) threatened                      c) threatening                      d)to threat
- ⌘ 88- The..... inside the spaceship was falling fast and all the air was disappearing.  
a) pressure                      b) compressor                      c)treasure                      d) processor
- ⌘ 89-Bowman ran to an .....room so he could breathe some oxygen.  
a) agenda                      b) emergency                      c) agency                      d) urgent



- ⌘ 90-He had to find Hal's controls so that he could (take-put-turn-see) off the computer.
- ⌘ 91-Electricity is sometimes(to make-making-makes-made) from wind turbines.
- ⌘ 92-I always(makes- make-am making- am made)silly mistakes when I'm taking an exam.
- ⌘ 93-Rania always(switch-switching-switched-switches)off her computer when she has finished using it.
- ⌘ 94-I never buy expensive gloves because I'm always(losing-used to lose-lose-loose) them.
- ⌘ 95-(Am-Is-Were-Are) a thousand pounds too much to spend on holiday ?
- ⌘ 96-The hot underground water(heats-is heated-heat-are heated)to turn it into steam.
- ⌘ 97-She (is knowing-knows-is known-are knowing)a lot about cooking.
- ⌘ 98-No one is immortal. Everyone(dies – die - is dying - is died) eventually.
- ⌘ 99-People(injure-are injuring-are injured-have injured)in car accidents every day.
- ⌘ 100-New technology(makes-make-is made-was made) it easier to learn English.
- ⌘ 101-Most cars(powers- powered-are powered - have powered) by oil.
- ⌘ 102-Progress(makes- is made - has made- is making) every day in the world of science.
- ⌘ 103-Penguins(aren't found-doesn't find-isn't found-don't find) at the North Pole.
- ⌘ 104-Colds (transmit-are transmitted-are transmitting –transmitter) when you don't cover your mouth while coughing.
- ⌘ 105 -Rainforests(grown-is grown-grow-grows) in areas that have a lot of rainfall.
- ⌘ 106-This rich man always(is helped-helped-helping-helps)poor people in his village.
- ⌘ 107-When(did-does-is-has) she get up everyday?
- ⌘ 108-It often(will rain-raining-rains-is rained) in Egypt in winter.
- ⌘ 109-The Egyptian monuments (are attracted-attract-attracting-were attracted)tourists from all parts of the world.
- ⌘ 110-In a geothermal power station, steam (drive – drives - is driven - driving) machines which produce electricity.
- ⌘ 111-Every Friday, my school uniform(is washed-washes-being washed-washed) as well as being ironed.
- ⌘ 112-Ali is still young, however his father (is punishing- punishes- is punished-punished) him if he makes a mistake.
- ⌘ 113-(Does-Have-Has- is) electricity piped or transported in wires?
- ⌘ 114-(Does-Have-Has-Is) ice melt when it is heated ?
- ⌘ 115-Every day, I(hire-hiring-hires-am hired) workers to help me on the farm.
- ⌘ 116-Every year, Dina(receiving-is received-receives-are received)lots of valuable presents for her birthday.
- ⌘ 117-(Do-Are-Is-Were) you cut the grass in your garden by yourself ?
- ⌘ 118-We(used-use-are used-used to) a lot of water in summer because of the heat.
- ⌘ 119-The ice-cream tart which my mother makes(is tasted-taste-tastes-tasting) delicious.
- ⌘ 120 -Do you think that computers could ever(make-be-let-go)wrong and try to hurt people?





## ✓ 12- Prepositions:

Famous for = well-known for	مشهور بـ	The same as	نفس الشيء
A message for	رساله الي	On a journey	في رحله
Be used to	يستخدم في	Similar to	مشابه لـ
Ask for	يطلب	Decide to	يقرر
Write for	يكتب لـ	Send to	يرسل الي
Cut off	يقطع	Attach to	يثبت بـ / يربط بـ
Turn off	يطفىء / يغلق	Threaten ... to	يهدد .. ان
Go into the room	يدخل الحجرة	Travel to	يسافر الي
Cut down	يقطع	Compare to	يشبه
Move forward	يتقدم	Part of	جزء من
Learn from	يتعلم من	Type of	نوع من
Breathe in	شهيق	Inside of	داخل
Breathe out	زفير	Think of	يفكر في
Wake up	يستيقظ	Look after	يعتني بـ
Ask about	يستفسر عن	Float around	يطفو
Go away	يسافر بعيدا	Popular with	مشهور بـ
Name after	يسمي باسم	Contact with	يتواصل مع
Expert in/on/at	خبير / خبير في	Benefit from	يستفيد من
Find out	يكتشف	Arrive at	يصل الي
Good for	جيد لـ	Wrong with	عطل في
Land in	يهبط في	Graduate in	يتخرج بشهادة في
Help with	مساعدته في	Move into	ينتقل الي
Deal with	يتعامل مع	In bold	خط عريض
Wake up	يستيقظ	At the moment	في نفس اللحظة
Turn on	يفتح	On the moon	على سطح القمر
Into space	الي الفضاء	On earth	على سطح الأرض
		On the internet	على الانترنت

### \*\*\*Practice(3):(Test Your Prepositions)\*\*\*

\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- ⌘ 121-Hurry up! The match is.....to start.  
a- off                      b-about                      c-out                      d away
- ⌘ 122. They were told to turn the computer.....  
a-down                      b-forward                      c-about                      d-off
- ⌘ 123. The two men's job was to look..... the spaceship.  
a- after                      b- for                      c- up to                      d- head
- ⌘ 124. The spaceship suddenly moved..... and hit him.  
a-along                      b-about                      c-forward                      d-with
- ⌘ 125He worked.....a film showing the sacrifices of the army soldiers,  
a-on                      b-with                      c-for                      d-off
- ⌘ 126The farmer hired some workers to help..... the harvest.  
a-to                      b-about                      c-forward                      d-with



- ⌘ 127 Astronauts have to work..... zero gravity on a spacewalk mission  
a- at                      b- in                      c- out                      d- to
- ⌘ 128- His ..... fiction stories were also published in magazines.  
a) scientific              b) scientist              c) science              d) scientifically
- ⌘ 129- There are now parts of sports centers which have been.....after famous footballers.  
a) kicked              b) declared              c) called              d) named
- ⌘ 130- He took part in a.....club to do exercises every day.  
a) sports              b) sport              c) sporting of              d) sporty
- ⌘ 131- The famous actor.....a film about the last war, so he got a medal.  
a) did              b) worked              c) made              d) performed
- ⌘ 132- Astronauts lost.....with earth because of breaking down the space shuttle.  
a) phone              b) unit              c) communicate              d) contact
- ⌘ 133- While he was outside, the spaceship suddenly.....forward and hit him.  
a) kicked              b) moved              c) looked              d) ran
- ⌘ 134- Today.....appliances are too expensive.  
a) electrical              b) electric              c) electricity              d) yelect
- ⌘ 135- She made him..... the house quietly.  
a) to leave              b) leaving              c) leave              d) left
- ⌘ 136- It was easy for him.....all the difficult questions.  
a) answering              b) answered              c) answer              d) to answer
- ⌘ 137- After leaving university, Tamer decided..... a career publishing.  
a) to              b) on              c) that              d) for
- ⌘ 138- She bought an.....intelligent computer last week.  
a) extremely              b) sufficient              c) extreme              d) efficient
- ⌘ 139- Mothers must look..... their children.  
a) for              b) like              c) up              d) after
- ⌘ 140- to save energy we must turn:..... TVs and computers after using them.  
a) into              b) on              c) off              d) out
- ⌘ 141- We must benefit.....our previous experience.  
a) of              b) from              c) to              d) out
- ⌘ 142- Amr dealt.....problems with a practical form.  
a) with              b) into              c) of              d) out
- ⌘ 143- She woke.....early to catch the train.  
a) to              b) into              c) up              d) with
- ⌘ 144. The manager of our school..... a talk nearly every day.  
a. takes              b. says              c. gives              d. tells
- ⌘ 145. He was..... out. This means he was ready to go out.  
a. about to go              b. almost went              c. nearby went              d. more or less went
- ⌘ 146. My father threatened ..... punish me if I am late home again.  
a. for              b. of              c. with              d. to
- ⌘ 147. When I was young, mum used to take a long time to wake me.....to go to school,  
a. up              b down              c. in              d. out
- ⌘ 148. Being famous..... a good politician, my uncle is always invited to many political conferences.  
a. for              b like              c. as              d.to
- ⌘ 149. I'm interested.....hear what had happened to Sama in her school  
a in              b. at              c. to              d.of
- ⌘ 150. My father is a graduate.....Ain Shames University.  
a. for              b. from              c. with              d.of





## ✓ 10 – Language Focus :

### Past passive forms

#### 1-Past simple passive (was / were (not) + past participle):

\*Ex : The government **built** a new school in the village last year. (active)

\*Ex : A new school **was built** in the village last year. (passive)

#### 2-Past continuous passive (was/ were (not) + being + past participle):

\*Ex : They **were decorating** my house yesterday. (active)

\*Ex : The house **was being decorated** yesterday. (passive)

#### 3-Present perfect passive (has / have (not) + been + past participle):

\*Ex : Actors **have used** the hotel in many famous films. (active)

\*Ex : The hotel **has been used** in many famous films. (passive)

#### 4-Past perfect passive (had (not) + been + past participle):

\*Ex : Mother **had not made** the bread before we went to bed. (active)

\*Ex : The bread **had not been made** before we went to bed. (passive)

5- هذه الأفعال مفعولها عادة عبارة عن ( جملة كاملة + that )

- People say that women live longer than men.

6- عند بناء هذه الجمل للمجهول نحذف الفاعل و نبدأ بالضمير الغير شخصي (It) و نبني الفعل للمجهول و نترك المفعول في مكانه

- It is said that **women live longer than men**

7- أو نحذف الفاعل و نبدأ بالفاعل بعد (that) و نبني الفعل للمجهول و نحول جملة المفعول إلى (مصدر + to)

- **Women are said to live longer than men.**

8- لاحظ أيضا الأمثلة الآتية

\*Ex : They expect him to arrive soon.

\*Ex : **It is expected (that) he will arrive soon.**

\*Ex : **He is expected to arrive soon.**

\*Ex : People believe that Mr Brown **owns** a lot of land in the north.

\*Ex : Mr Brown is believed to **own** a lot of land in the north.

9- لاحظ كيف نبدأ بمفعول جملة (that) عند بناء الجملة للمجهول

\*Ex : People expect that She **cooks** lunch badly.

\*Ex : **It is expected that** She **cooks** lunch badly.

\*Ex : She is expected **to cook** lunch badly.

10- نبني الفعل للمجهول و نحول جملة (that) إلى ( تصريف ثالث + to be )

\*Ex : **Lunch is expected to be cooked** badly.

11- إذا كان زمن الجملة بعد (that) أي زمن ماضي نستخدم ( تصريف ثالث + to have )

\*Ex : We think that Sara **travelled** to Cairo last week.

\*Ex : It is thought that Sara **travelled** to Cairo last week.

\*Ex : Sara is thought **to have travelled** to Cairo last week.

12- و إذا كان زمن الجملة بعد (that) أي زمن ماضي و أردنا أن نبدأ بالمفعول نستخدم ( تصريف ثالث + to have been )

\*Ex : Everyone believes that he has mended the car.

\*Ex : **It is believed that** he has mended the car.

\*Ex : **He is believed to have mended** the car.

\*Ex : **The car is believed to have been mended.**

### Passive Verbs : Past and Present

It is said that .....

He is said to .....

الأفعال التالية يكثر استخدامها في صيغة الـ Passive المبني للمجهول خاصة عندما نذكر أو نكرر ما يقوله الناس أو ما يعتقد البعض منهم :



Say	يقول	Think	يعتقد	Believe	يعتقد
Suppose	يعتقد	Know	يعرف	Expect	يتوقع
Claim	يزعم	Allege	يزعم	Report	يعلن
Consider	يعتبر	Hope	يأمل	Understand	يفهم
Mention	يذكر	Announce	يعلن	Agree	يتفق
Fear	يخشى	Predict	يتنبأ		

Active	مبنى للمعلوم	Passive	مبنى للمجهول
People say that....	يقول الناس أن...	It is said that...	يقال أن
We think that....	نحن نعتقد أن....	It is thought that....	يعتقد أن
We know that.....	نحن نعرف أن..	It is known that..	معروف أن

الأفعال التي وردت في الأمثلة السابقة زمنها مضارع بسيط وعندما تأتي في زمن الماضي البسيط تتحول كالتالي :

People said that....	قال الناس أن	It was said that..	قيل أن.....
We thought that...	أعتقدنا أن ...	It was thought that.....	كان يعتقد أن ....
We knew that....	عرفنا أن	It was known that	كان معروف أن

ويمكن أن تستخدم أى من الأفعال السابقة في زمن المضارع التام :

They have reported that → It has been reported that.....  
He has claimed that → It has been claimed that.....

وهناك طريقتان لتحويل هذه الأفعال إلى صيغة الـ Passive وهما :  
الطريقة الأولى

- بقية الجملة  
It is / was + P.P + that +
- People say that he has a villa in Alexandria .
  - It is said that he has a villa in Alexandria .
  - People said that he has a villa in Alexandria.
  - It was said that he has a villa in Alexandria.

### الطريقة الثانية

1 - ابدأ بالفاعل الثاني الواقع بعد that

2 - ضع الفعل say في صيغة الـ passive .

3 - ثم ضع الفعل الثاني (has) على هيئة ( مصدر + to ) .

People say that he has a villa in Alexandria .

He is said to have a villa in Alexandria .

We know that he is a millionaire.

He is known to be a millionaire .

وهكذا تستخدم كل الأفعال السابق ذكرها بنفس الطريقة الأولى أو الثانية .

⊗ في حالة وجود مضارع مستمر نستخدم to be + ing

⊗ I think he is making a plan.

(It...) (He...)

It is thought that he is making a plan.

- He is thought to be making a plan.

to have been + V- ing أو to be + V- ing

⊗ في حالة وجود ماضى مستمر نستخدم

⊗ I think he was making a plan. (He...)(It...)

It is thought that he was making a plan.

He is thought to be making/ to have been making a plan.

ملاحظات مهمة خاصة بالطريقة الثانية فقط

1 - The police think that she killed her husband.

نلاحظ أن الفعل الثاني ( killed ) في زمن الماضي وبالتالي يتحول إلى ( to have + P.P ) عند تحويل الجملة إلى صيغة الـ passive :

She is thought to have killed her husband.





2 – One newspaper reported that the Delta Bank was robbed last night.

نلاحظ أن الفعل الثاني (was robbed) في زمن الماضي وفي الوقت نفسه مبني للمجهول ، وبناء على ذلك يتحول إلى (to have been + P.P) كالتالي :

- The Delta Bank was reported to have been robbed last night.

3 – Everyone knows that he is doing his best to achieve peace.

He is known to be doing his best to achieve peace.

4 – The police allege that he was planning for a crime.

He is alleged to have been planning for a crime.

13- هذا التركيب يعني بصفة عامة أن الناس تقول أو تعتقد شيئاً ما

\*Ex : People **say** that the Wall of China is the greatest building on Earth. .

\*Ex : **It is said** that the Wall of China is the greatest building on Earth.

\*Ex : The Wall of China **is said to be** the greatest building on Earth.

### More examples:

\*Ex : The police **believe** that the terrorists escaped. (It.....) (The prisoner.....)

\*Ex : **It is believed** that the terrorists escaped.

\*Ex : The terrorists **are believed to have** escaped.

\*Ex : The newspaper reported that the team lost the game

\*Ex : **It was reported** that the team lost the game.

\*Ex : The team **was reported to have lost the game.**

### \*Test Yourself:

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :\***

☞ 1-What are the pros and..... of artificial intelligence.

a -cones                      b-coins                      c-cans                      d-cons

☞ 2-Artificial intelligence can.....teachers' time.

a -cause                      b-waste                      c-save                      d-hinder

☞ 3- It is a shame that starvation still..... in some countries in Africa.

a-insists                      b-exists                      c-includes                      d-disappears

☞ 4-Another.....to AI(artificial intelligence)is that it is taking away some people's jobs.

a-downside                      b-upside                      c-downhill                      d-uphill

☞ 5-One negative side of artificial intelligence is that people worry the computers will become more.....than us.

a-careful                      b-intelligent                      c-ambitious                      d-careless

☞ 6- It's not polite to..... people while they are speaking.

a-corrupt                      b-interpret                      c-interrupt                      d-correct

☞ 7- You can call 122 in case of.....

a-efficiency                      b-sufficiency                      c-agency                      d-emergency

☞ 8-I don't think that space exploration is a..... time; it's really essential.

a-rest                      b-west                      c-waste                      d-waist

☞ 9-Blood..... is a disease that results from tension.

a -pressure                      b-treasure                      c-pleasure                      d-leisure

☞ 10-.....Intelligence is the science of how to make a computer do things that usually need human intelligence.

a -Fictional                      b-Artificial                      c-Fractional                      d-frictional

☞ 11-It was a very terrible accident, but fortunately the driver.....

a -died                      b-saved                      c-survived                      d-served



- ☞ 12-Adel couldn't continue the game with his friend because the.....didn't work well.  
a-consent                      b-sockets                      c-wires                      d-controls
- ☞ 13-I.....to tell the police if my bad neighbour insisted on making noise late at night.  
a-praised                      b-promised                      c-threatened                      d-treated
- ☞ 14-A/An.....is an expert in a field whose job is to give advice about it.  
a-applicant                      b-consultant                      c-resultant                      d-accountant
- ☞ 15-.....is the science that deals with the structure of objects.  
a-Physics                      b-Biology                      c-Geology                      d-Chemistry
- ☞ 16-The very old house.....yesterday.  
a-was collapsed                      b-collapsed                      c-has collapsed                      d-has been collapsed
- ☞ 17- Having....., the criminal admitted killing the old lady.  
a -questioned                      b-being questioned                      c-been questioned                      d-to be questioned
- ☞ 18-As soon as I ..... the good news, I got excited.  
a-was telling                      b-was told                      c-had told                      d-have been told
- ☞ 19-Food ..... while I was doing my homework.  
a-was preparing                      b-is prepared                      c-was being prepared                      d-has been prepared
- ☞ 20-What was said in the meeting.....  
a-hasn't been expected                      b-wasn't expecting  
c-hadn't expected                      d-hadn't been expected
- ☞ 21-Since I travelled to London, no emails.....from my old friend. So, I'm worried about him.  
a -are received                      b-have received                      c-have been received                      d-were received
- ☞ 22-The thief ..... before he tried to escape.  
a-was arresting                      b-had been arrested                      c-had arrested                      d-is arrested
- ☞ 23-Since the femto second....., there has been breakthrough in chemistry.  
a-was discovered                      b-discovered                      c-has been discovered                      d-is discovered
- ☞ 24-What bad news! My friend's car .....  
a-had stolen                      b -has stolen                      c has been stolen                      d had been stolen
- ☞ 25-I fastened the seatbelt. Then the plane ..... off.  
a-was taken                      b-took                      c was taking                      d takes
- ☞ 26-No mistakes.....after I had followed my teacher's advice.  
a-were made                      b -were making                      c made                      d are made
- ☞ 27-My car..... before I travelled to Hurghada.  
a is checked                      b-had to be checked                      c had checked                      d had to check
- ☞ 28-The novels..... by Charles Dickens are read everywhere.  
a written                      b- was written                      c had been written                      d had written
- ☞ 29-Be careful, this secret.....to anyone.  
a-mustn't reveal                      b-mustn't be revealed                      c-must be revealed                      d-must be revealing
- ☞ 30-After I returned home, I found that my room .....  
a is tidied                      b was tidied                      c had been tidied                      d had tidied

**\*\*\*Practice(5):( Open Book Exercises:)\*\*\***

**\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\***

- ☞ 31 - (Artificial intelligence –zero gravity–pressure–physics)is the science that deals with the structure of objects and substance.
- ☞ 32- (Controls–Interrupt–Threaten– Emergency) is to tell someone you will hurt them or cause serious problem for them if they do not do what you want.
- ☞ 33- The machine (felt – filled-failed –fell)around 3 o'clock.
- ☞ 34- We asked the teacher to(interrupt –interpret –internal- entertainment) the poem.





- ☞ 35- Arthur C. Clarke was (borne – born – bear-bore) in 1917, the son of a farmer.
- ☞ 36- Later, his science (fiction-fictional-artificial-real) stories were also published in magazines.
- ☞ 37- A Space Odyssey, the film (had been watched-was watched-has been watched-was being watched) by many millions of people since it was made in 1968.
- ☞ 38- The message was interrupted by the intelligent computer Hal, who said part AE3 or the spaceship was about to (fall – fail – fell – fallen).
- ☞ 39- They lost(contact-connect-contract-concentrate)with earth.
- ☞ 40-He had to find the intelligent computer Hal's (units- controls -keys– secrets) so that he can turn off the computer.
- ☞ 41-(Radar-Remote control-Controls-Tower)is equipment that finds the position of things using radio waves.
- ☞ 42-The noun is director what is the verb (direct – direction – directing – directly).
- ☞ 43-Yesterday evening the T.V programme (watched-was watched-was being watched – had been watched) by nearly a million people.
- ☞ 44-Some of the plastic bottles (put-were being put-are putting-were putting) in rubbish bags too.
- ☞ 45-The shopkeeper (threatening– threaten-threatened-threat) to call the police when the man refused to pay.
- ☞ 46-English( has taught - is taught - teaches – taught) to us by him.
- ☞ 47-Water is hoped(to pipe-to be piped-will be piped-is piped)into the building next week.
- ☞ 48-That(costs-is cost-costing-was cost)too much money for me. I wish I hadn't started it.
- ☞ 49-We (are pumped - pumps - are pumping – pump ) it to the surface.
- ☞ 50-For geothermal energy, water(pumps-is pumping-pumped-is pumped)to the surface.
- ☞ 51-On the outskirts of the city is a factory where metal rubbish(recycles-is recycling recycled-is recycled).
- ☞ 52-If you(lend-are lending-lent-have been lent) money, you should repay it as soon as possible.
- ☞ 53-Ali likes gardening.He(plants-was planted-has planted-planted)these trees last week.
- ☞ 54.The dark side of the moon could first ( see-be see –be seen – to be seen) in photographs in 1959.
- ☞ 55-Currently,farmers (are used-use-are being used-were used)better techniques in farming.
- ☞ 56-As well as(work- works-working-had worked) as a teacher, he is an expert cook.
- ☞ 57-Arabic(speak-spoke-is spoken-is speaking) in many countries.
- ☞ 58-The computer I have (connects-is connecting-is connected-connected) to the internet.
- ☞ 59-It is important(for-to-on-from)people to save energy everywhere.
- ☞ 60-My brother works in a small factory and he(pays-is paid-is paying-pay) weekly.
- ☞ 61-The government..... a new school in our village last year.  
a-building                      b-was built                      c- built                      d-is built
- ☞ 62. A new school..... in our village last year.  
a-built                      b-was built                      c- builds                      d-is building
- ☞ 63. They..... my house yesterday.  
a- were decorated      b- decorate                      c- have decorated                      d- were decorating
- ☞ 64. The house was..... when my father came home.  
a-being decorated      b- decorating                      c- decorated                      d- decorates



- ☞ 65-By last summer, the new factory .....  
a- had built      b- had been built      c- built      d- was building
- ☞ 66-When father returned home, his dinner.....  
a-was made      b-was making      c- is being made      d- was being made
- ☞ 67 I had waited at the garage until my car.....  
a-was repaired      b-repaired      c- was repairin      d- is repaired
- ☞ 68- My mobile.....in the sports club yesterday.  
a- lost      b- was losing      c- was lost      d- had lost
- ☞ 69- The first rocket..... into space in 1944.  
a- sent      b- was sent      c- sends      d- is sent
- ☞ 70. Twelve people..... to walk on the moon.  
a- have been sent      b- have sent      c- sent      d-has been sent
- ☞ 71. He's..... so many movies and got many awards.  
a-attended      b-watched      c-directed      d-collected
- ☞ 72. A.....is an expert or specialist in physics.  
a- physicist      b- physician      c- physiologist      d- biologist
- ☞ 73. We offer free.....support for those buying our software.  
a-electrical      b-technical      c-historical      d- horrified
- ☞ 74. The.....for this computer game don't work. Can I try yours?  
a-remotes      b-attaches      c- wires      d-controls
- ☞ 75. The children were.....to find a poisonous snake in their tent.  
a-hopeful      b- optimistic      c- horrified      d-glad
- ☞ 76. The teacher said that we should never.....her while she is talking.  
a-interpret      b- corrupt      c- disrupt      d-interrupt
- ☞ 77. In..... things that are not attached to something start to float around.  
a-zero-gravity      b- minus gravity      c- weightless      d-earthly gravity
- ☞ 78- Air.....is usually high in good weather and low in bad weather.  
a-pleasure      b-pressure      c- breeze      d-pollution
- ☞ 79. The shopkeeper.....to call the police when the man refused to pay.  
a-promised      b- offered      c- encouraged      d-threatened
- ☞ 80. Ambulances drive very fast when there is a(n).....  
a-archaeology      b-free time      c-emergency      d-traffic jam
- ☞ 81. Radar was..... for the first time, to help planes to land.  
a-being used      b- be used      c-to use      d-using
- ☞ 82. Many science articles by Clarke.....in magazines before the war ended.  
a- had published      b-were being published      c-were published      d-had been published
- ☞ 83- Clarke's science fiction stories..... in magazines.  
a-was published      b-were published      c-has published      d-is published
- ☞ 84- There are now parts of space that scientists..... after Clarke.  
a- has named      b- have named      c- have been named      d-had named
- ☞ 85- Clarke.....to work on a film for the famous director Kubrick.  
a- was asked      b- were asked      c- did asked      d- had asked
- ☞ 86.The film has.....by millions of people since it was made in 1968.  
a- being watched      b- be watched      c- watched      d- been watched
- ☞ 87. This picture.....in the nineteenth century.  
a-was painted      b-is painted      c-will be painted      d-has painted
- ☞ 88. When we went into the hotel room, the beds.....  
a-wasn't made      b- weren't made      c-haven't made      d-hadn't made





89. This funny photo is very popular. It.....to hundreds of people  
a-will sent                      b-has sent                      c-has been sent                      d-had sent
90. When we arrived at the theatre, the actors.....  
a-are being photographed                      b-have been photographed  
c-were being photographed                      d-has been photographed
- 91-The..... for this computer game don't work. Can I try yours?  
a. pressure                      b. threat                      c. controls                      d. emergency
- 92- The children were.....to find a poisonous snake in their tent.  
a. horrified                      b. threatened                      c. control                      d. interrupt
- 93- The teacher said that we should never..... her while she is talking.  
a. threaten                      b. help                      c. control                      d. interrupt
- 94- In ..... things that are not attached to something start to float around.  
a. earth                      b. laboratory                      c. zero-gravity                      d. gravity
- 95- Air.....is usually high in good weather and low in bad weather.  
a. compress                      b. pressure                      c. impression                      d. stress
- 96- The shopkeeper..... to call the police when the man refused to pay.  
a. horrified                      b. interrupt                      c. controls                      d. threatened
97. Ambulances drive very fast when there is an .....  
a. emergency                      b. emerge                      c. damage                      d, harm
98. Hal said that part AE35 of the spaceship was .....fail  
a. about too                      b. about in                      c. about to                      d. about for
99. To..... means to stop a process or activity for a short time.  
a. threaten                      b. help                      c. control                      d. interrupt
100. The word..... gives the same meaning as shocked.  
a. horrified                      b, threatened                      c. control                      d. interrupt
101. A / An.....is someone who decides how a play, film etc. should be made.  
a. author                      b. actor                      c. director                      d. producer
- 102.....is the science that deals with the structure of objects.  
a. Chemistry                      b. Physics                      c. Biology                      d. Archaeology
- 103.The equipment that finds the position of things using radio waves is called a / an.....  
a. radar                      b. equipment                      c. instrument                      d.tool
104. A / An..... is someone who does practical work in science or technology.  
a. engineer                      b. expert                      c. physician                      d. technician
- 105..... are parts of a machine that you use to make it work.  
a. Wires                      b. Effects                      c. Controls                      d. Launches
106. When someone is.....he or she feels very shocked and upset or tit raid  
a. constructed                      b. controlled                      c. threatening                      d horrified
- 107.To.....is to tell someone you will hurt them or cause serious problems for them if they do not do what you want  
a. threaten                      b. control                      c. direct                      d reward
- 108.....means without the force that makes objects fall to the ground  
a. Gravity                      b. Zero-gravity                      c. Fiction                      d- Odyssey
- 109.A / An.....is an expert in a subject whose job is to give advice about it.  
a. technician                      b. physician                      c. consultant                      d. optician
- 110.To..... is to be ready to start doing something.  
a. be about to                      b. look after                      c. name after                      d. be in a hurry
- 111-.....is something relating to an unexpected and dangerous situation.  
a) Privacy                      b) Documentary                      c) Agency                      d) Emergency



- ☞ 112-When you stop a process or activity for a short time, it means you.....it.  
a) interrupt      b) contact      c) extract      d) interpret
- ☞ 113- .....are the parts of a machine that you use to make it work.  
a) Objects      b) Controls      c) Equipments      d) Vessels
- ☞ 114- Without the force that makes objects fall to the ground. This means.....  
a) attracting      b) weightless      c) zero-gravity      d) activity
- ☞ 115- ..... is the study of ancient societies by examining what remains of their buildings, graves and tools.  
a) Astronomy      b) Archaeology      c) Socialology      d) Biology
- ☞ 116. A / An..... means relating to an unexpected and dangerous situation.  
a. consultancy      b. control      c. radar      d. emergency
- ☞ 117. To.....means to stop a process or activity for a short time.  
a. direct      b. interrupt      c. control      d. threaten
- ☞ 118..... is the force that a gas or liquid has when it is inside a container.  
a. Gravity      b. Zero-gravity      c. Pressure      d. Position
- ☞ 119- A..... is an expert in a subject whose job is to give advice about it.  
a) publisher      b) therapist      c) technician      d) consultant
- ☞ 120- A..... is equipment that finds the position of things using radio waves.  
a) razor      b) gun      c) radar      d) rifle

**\*\*\*Practice(5):( Previous Exams Egypt, Sudan and Azhar:)\*\*\***

**\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\***

- ☞ 121-The play is suggested to.....because the leading actor is ill. (دور اول 2011)  
a. being cancelled      b. cancel      c. have cancelled      d. be cancelled
- ☞ 122. Naguib Mahfouz's books.....into many languages. (دور اول 2013)  
a.have been translated      b.have translated      c.had translated      d.were translating
- ☞ 123.I don't know who the problem..... by. (دور ثان 2015)  
a. was solved      b. solve      c. solves      d. was solving
- ☞ 124. It.....that an accident took place on the Ring Road. (دور اول 2016)  
a. reported      b. had reported      c. reports      d. has been reported
- ☞ 125.After the death of her husband, the poor woman was thought.....from amnesia.  
a. is suffered      b. to have suffered      c.suffer      d. to be suffered
- ☞ 126. From the medical report, she.....to have suffered from amnesia. (دور ثان 2012)  
a. believed      b. is believed      c. is believing      d. believes
- ☞ 127. Yesterday's accident is believed..... because of great speed. (دور اول 2016)  
a. to happen      b. happened      c.to have happened      d. happens
- ☞ 128.I wouldn't like.....given instructions. (دور اول 2017)  
a. to be      b. being      c. has been      d. had been
- ☞ 129. Ploughs.....for turning up the soil. (1978)  
a. used      b. is used      c. are used      d. are using
- ☞ 130. He.....by the police once already. (1979)  
a. is warned      b. has warned      c. has been warned      d. had warned
- ☞ 131. - "Has that letter been typed yet?" - "No, but it..... now." (1985)  
a. is typed      b. is been typed      c. is being typed      d. is typing
- ☞ 132. I'd like that letter..... off at once, please. (1989)  
a. send      b. to send      c. was sent      d. to be sent
- ☞ 133.We.....to take the bus to Sahrm-El-Sheikh this morning, but the trip was cancelled. (دور اول 2004)  
a. suppose      b. were supposed      c. supposed      d. are supposed





134. In Ancient Egypt, papyrus.....for drawing and writing. (دور ثان 2009)  
a. used b. use c. was used d. were using
135. The computer.....by the teacher yesterday.  
a-Checked b-was checked c-was checking d-has been checked
136. The house.....before the party.  
a- had decorated b- decorated c-had been decorated d-has decorated
- 137-Actors.....the hotel in many famous films.  
a- have been used b- have used c-are used d- were used
138. The hotel has.....in many famous films.  
a-been used b-been using c-using d- be used
139. Mother.....the bread before we went to bed.  
a-hadn't been made b-wasn't made c- hasn't make d- had not made
140. The bread hadn't.....before we went to bed.  
a- be made b-being made c- been made d- made
- 141- You might use an emergency .....when there is a fire in a building  
a-exit b-law c exile d-burning
- 142- You might use a.....control to control a television .  
a-far b-remote c-near d-digital
- 143 Children enjoy reading..... fiction stories.  
a) science b) scientific c) scientist d) scientifically
144. The fuel is stored in.....containers.  
a-pressurized b-leaky c-interrupted d- interruption
- 145- The family receives a .....phone call not to tell the police.  
a- wonderful b- hopeful c- threatening d- relaxing
- 146- If you like working with electrical goods, you should become an.....  
a-electrician b- expert c- electricity d- oculist
147. My brother wants to become a .....  
a-policy b-politician c- political d-politics
148. After studying ancient history, Mona became an .....  
a- archaeology b -oceanographer c- archaeologist d-athlete
149. We want to buy some medicine from the.....  
a-chemist's b-dentist c-chemicals d-biologist
150. We saw a film being made by a famous .....today!  
a-manager b-scientist c-director d-viewer

### Homework: Open Book Practice

**\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\***

- ❖ 1- (On- Without- Despite- Over ) seeing the road accident, the motorists drove more carefully. 2012
- ❖ 2- It's more than 20 years (while-before-when-since).I travelled abroad. 2012
- ❖ 3- Ali(used to-using to-is used to-uses to)travelling by sea. 2011
- ❖ 4- For centuries, the wind has been used (to sailing-sailed-sailing-to sail) ships. 2011
- ❖ 5- The hotel (had been opened -has opened -is opened-will opened)before the flats were built.
- ❖ 6- Neil Armstrong(took-is taking-has taken-was taken)his first steps on the moon in 1969.
- ❖ 7-They(hadn't decided-haven't decided-don't decide-won't decide) what to do for the holidays yet. 2007
- ❖ 8- After he(had received-has received-is received-receives) some good news, he left home. 2006



- ❖ 9-We(hadn't met-didn't meet-haven't met-haven't been met)our old friends for a year.They are too busy. 2004
- ❖ 10- I(had been planning-have been planning-had planned-have planned)to spend the summer holiday in Alexandria when my sister suddenly felt ill. (second 2010)
- ❖ 11-They(use-are used-have used-used)to spend the feast with us every year until we moved.
- ❖ 12-(For-Since-Until-When)I started my job, I have met important people from all over the world.
- ❖ 13-You read the newspaper article about farming, (haven't-didn't-have-aren't)you? (second 2013)
- ❖ 14-I (will be reading-had read-have been reading-will read) the book you lent me and I'm really enjoying it. (second 2013)
- ❖ 15-It's more than 40 years(while-before-when-since)I travelled abroad. (2012)
- ❖ 16-Naguib Mahfouz's books(have translated-had translated-were translating-have been translated)intoy many languages. (2013)
- ❖ 17-No sooner(had we heard-do we hear-we had heard-we did hear)the noise than we rushed to the spot. (2014)
- ❖ 18-All articles should be revised by the (manger-director-consultant-editor in Chief).
- ❖ 19 .Some trees(were being cut- was cut- was being cut- has been cut)down in the park today.
- ❖ 20-I'm over the worst of my flu but I still (fill – fail- feel -fall) a bit weak.
- ❖ 21-Everyone should participate in a (founded-finding–foundation–find) for poor families in their city.
- ❖ 22-His father died and his family did not have (many-much-few-a few) money.
- ❖ 23-He became the (editor -director -employer -actor) of a science magazine and continued to write articles.
- ❖ 24-Clarke is (remembered -reminded -member -remember) as a great scientist as well as a writer.
- ❖ 25-Poole went outside the spaceship to(place -replace -take place – take part) the part.
- ❖ 26-Bowman was horrified and(told-asked–wondered-informed)if Poole was killed by the intelligent computer Hal.
- ❖ 27-A \ An (technical –technician –electrica -electrician) is someone who does practical work in science or technology.
- ❖ 28-The noun is consultant. What is the verb(consult-consulted-consulting-conduct)?
- ❖ 29-The hotel(opened–had opened–was opened–had been opened)before the flats were built.
- ❖ 30-I named my elder daughter(with-after-at-about) her aunt. They both are called Rodayna
- ❖ 31-I've tried using a computer, but it (gives-puts-does-makes) me a headache.
- ❖ 32-She always has (interested-interest-interesting-interestingly) ideas.
- ❖ 33-Haqqi (expected- developed- did- directed) a new style of writing which is respected today.
- ❖ 34-People need to be(flexible-inflexible-cheerful-smooth)to accept any job these days.
- ❖ 35-Scientists are paid to (develop-do-publish-search) new medicines every year to help poor people.
- ❖ 36-I forwarded an e-mail with my CV(contact-connection-attachment-detachment) to the company.
- ❖ 37-He is going to enter a reading(competition-commission-composition-tournament) and hopes to win a prize.
- ❖ 38-He gets bored with his life(red tape- custom-habit-routine)doing the same things every day.





- ❖ 39–Most Egyptians have their lunch at (Sunday-midday-afternoon-morning).
- ❖ 40–He writes a (n) (standard-medium-level-average) of a thousand words a day.
- ❖ 41) She.....a magazine when somebody knocked at the door.  
a. read                      b. reads                      c. was reading                      d. had read
- ❖ 42) As soon as our teacher.....the lesson, we started to ask questions.  
a. finishes                      b. have finished                      c. had finished                      d. will finish
- ❖ 43) Before the trees were cut down, there.....a beautiful landscape.  
a. has been                      b. is                      c. were                      d. had been
- ❖ 44) The 2016 Olympic Games.....by millions of people.  
a. watched                      b. were watched                      c. have watched                      d. are watched
- ❖ 45) By 2011, I.....10 short stories.  
a. have written                      b. had written                      c. had been writing                      d. was writing
- ❖ 46) While working as a clerk for a judge, he.....himself as a legal writer.  
a. establishing                      b. established                      c. has established                      d. establishes
- ❖ 47) Yesterday, I went to the club and.....my friends.  
a. had met                      b. met                      c. meet                      d. was meeting
- ❖ 48) I'd rather you.....this car. It's a bargain.  
a. buy                      b. to buy                      c. bought                      d. will buy
- ❖ 49) After the house.....painted, we furnished it  
a. had been                      b. had                      c. has been                      d. is
- ❖ 50) Hardly..... the house when it began to rain.  
a. have I left                      b. I left                      c. I had left                      d. had I left

### **B Reading Comprehension:**

#### **✓ 1)Read the passage and answer the questions below**

Samer lived with his parents until he was twenty-four years old, and then he got a job in an office of a big factory in another town, so he left home. He found a little flat and lived there on his own. At first he cleaned it himself, but after a few weeks he asked Mrs Laila to help him. She promised to come to clean his flat for an hour every morning. After she had been working for Samer for two weeks, one evening, he looked at the mirror in his bedroom and thought, "That mirror looks very dusty. Mrs Laila's forgotten to clean it. I can write on the dust with my finger!" Before he left for work in the morning he wrote this message on the dust "I cough whenever I breathe because everything in this room is very dusty!" When he got home that evening, he looked at the mirror and wondered why she hadn't cleaned it. Then he bent down and saw a bottle in front of the mirror. He picked he bottle up and looked at it carefully. Mrs Laila had written some words on it. He read the words "Cough Medicine" and he couldn't make head nor tail.

#### **✓ a) Choose the best answer :**

- 1-Samer found the mirror dirty, after Laila had been working for(a fortnight–a year–a month – fifteen days)
- 2-To ask Mrs Laila to clean the mirror, Samer (wrote a letter – telephoned her– wrote what he thought on the mirror – spoke to her)
- 3-When Samer read the words on the bottle he (took the medicine – was happy – was interested – was confused)
- 4-Samer got a job(when he was living with his parents-when he was twenty-four years old-before he was twenty-four years old-when he retired).



- 5-Samer was working (on his own-by himself-in a big company- in a big factory).  
6-He found a little flat and lived there on his own. At first he(cleaned it himself- he asked Mrs Laila to help him- he asked his parents to help him-his colleague cleaned it).

✓ **Answer the following questions:**

- 7-Why did Samer leave his parents' home?  
8-What caused Samer to cough?  
9-How did Samer know that Mrs Laila had read his message?  
10-What do you think of Mrs Laila? Why?

**3) Translation: A) Translate into Arabic :**

1. Egypt has always been known as the "Birthplace of Civilization" because of its long and rich history. We are now keen on restoring our glories to keep pace with progress in developed countries.
2. Health is a splendid treasure that completes our happiness. It's worth saying that we can't really enjoy our life if we are unhealthy, however wealthy we may be. Healthy people are always proud of what they can achieve in the fields of sports and hard work. For unhealthy people, life is no more than pain and suffering.
3. The world's ever increasing population means more houses, more roads, more factories, and this means less land for animals and plants. Over-population also means more waste and pollution, and this makes life increasingly difficult for many creatures.

**B) Translate into English:**

- 1- لقد أثبت الأطباء أن من لا يدخنون مطلقا يعيشون حياة أطول وأكثر صحة لذا تناقص عددا كثيرا من يدخن.
- 2- لقد أصبح الاهتمام بالتعليم والعلوم من أهم الأهداف التي تسعى لتحقيقها جمهورية مصر العربية.
- 3- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النمو والازدهار.
- 4- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أى دولة أن تقف بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى ولا تستطيع دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام.
- 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تمكن الإنسان من الوصول إلى القمر بعد غزوه للفضاء.

**4) Write an essay of about one hundred and eighty (180) words on one of the following :**

- 1- a journey into space
- 2- the advantages and disadvantages of artificial intelligence





## Unit Eight

### Science and scientists

#### 1 – Important vocabulary & derivatives:

Cancer (n)	مرض السرطان	illness	المرض
Cancerous (adj)	سرطاني	Diabetes (n)	مرض السكر
install	يُثَبَّت - يُرَكَّب	Diabetic (adj)	مصاب بمرض السكر
installation	التثبيت	link	صلة - رابط
Regularly (adv)	بانتظام	Achieve (v)	ينجز / يحقق
Regular (adj)	منتظم	Achievement (n)	إنجاز
Gradually (adv)	تدريجيا	Achievable (adj)	يمكن تحقيقه
Gradual (adj)	تدرجي	Achiever (adj)	ناجح - انسان منجز
gain (v)	يزداد - يكتسب	Phone mast	برج إشارات لاسلكية
Invisible (adj)	غير مرئي	signal	إشارة لاسلكية
Invisibly (adv)	بصورة غير مرئية	cause	سبب
proof	دليل / برهان	PE teacher	مدرس التربية الرياضية
prove	يثبت / يبرهن	make their own food	يصنع غذاءه
disprove	يثبت بطلان / يدحض	work as a doctor	يعمل كطبيب
Theory	نظرية	Research scientist	عالم أبحاث
Theory (n)	نظرية	Geologist (n)	عالم جيولوجيا
Theoretical (adj)	نظري	process	عملية
Theoretically (adv)	نظريا	Archaeologist (n)	عالم الآثار
doing experiments	يؤدي تجارب معملية	Oceanographer (n)	شخص مختص بالمحيطات
Remove .... From	يزيل .... من ....	Geographer (n)	عالم جغرافي
remove	يزيل / يزيل	Zoologist (n)	متخصص في علم الحيوان
amount	كمية	biologist	عالم أحياء
Result (n)	نتيجة	biochemist	كيميائي حيوي
release (v)	يطلق	physicist	عالم فيزياء
Cure (n)	علاج -	physician	طبيب بشري
(n) Waste (v)	بضيع - نفايات	chemist	صيدلي
Wasteful (adj)	مسرف - مبدر	Anthropologist (n)	خبير بعلم الانسان
Develop (v)	يطور - يتطور	Specialize (v)	يتخصص في
Development (n)	تطور - تنمية	Specialist (n)	أخصائي
Success (n)	النجاح	Specialization (n)	تخصص - اختصاص
Successful (adj)	ناجح	Nutritionist (n)	أخصائي تغذية
Successfully (adv)	بنجاح	Nutritional value	القيمة الغذائية
Ambitions (n)	طموحات	Advance (n)	يقدم - تطور
Ambitious Adj	طموح	In advance	مقدما - مسبقا



## 2- Check Your Vocabulary :

Find out	يكتشف	invisible food	غذاء غير مرئي
Benefit from	يستفيد من	Specialized (adj)	متخصص
Useful to	نافع لـ... ، مفيد لـ...	Turn off	يغلق (الجهاز)
Talk about	يتحدث عن	Chemist (n)	الصيدلي
Cause of	سبب	Formal (adj)	رسمي
Causes (n)	أسباب	Carefully (adv)	يحرص ، بحذر
Improve (v)	يحسن	Disappointment(n)	خيبة أمل
Environmental(adj)	بيئي	Invisibility (n)	خفاء
Nuclear (n)	نووي	Add (v)	يضيف
Research (v,n)	يقوم بعمل بحث ، يبحث	Gain (v)	يكتسب
Scientific (adj)	علمي	Weigh (v)	يزن
Expect (v)	يتوقع	Weight (n)	وزن
Serious (adj)	خطير	Dry (v)	يجفف
Discoveries (n)	اكتشافات	Test (v)	يختبر
Develop (v)	يطور	Spread (v)	ينشر
Medicine (n)	الطب	Flood (v)	يغمر بالماء
Worry about	يقلق علي	Natural (adj)	طبيعي
Change into	يتحول إلي	Usual (adj)	معتاد
Turn on	يشغل (جهاز)	Extra	إضافي
Feed (v)	يُطعم	Waste (v)	يضيع
Realize (v)	يدرك	Germs (n)	جراثيم
Soil (n)	تربة زراعية	A cure for (n)	علاج لـ
Decide (v)	يقرر	do better	يتحسن
Experiment (n)	تجربة	Process (n)	عملية
Pot (n)	إناء	release	يطلق-يخرج-يحرر
Huge (adj)	ضخم ، هائل	Diseases (n)	أمراض
Plant (v)	يزرع	Hide (v)	يختبئ
Remove (v)	يزيل	Factory (n)	مصنع
Irregularly	بشكل غير منتظم	tiny	صغير جدا
Visible	مرئي	Gain (v) weight	يكسب- يزداد وزنا

### ✓ 3- Tapescript:

Narrator: الراوي Most people love their mobile phone, but **some people are worried about the effect** تأثير **that mobile phone signals** اشارات **might have on our health.** These signals are sent to and from our mobile phones and mobile devices اجهزة all the time. **Scientists think that the signals are too weak** ضعيفة جدا **to do any damage** ضرر **to our health.** However, mobile phones have not been around long enough for scientists to be certain متأكد of this. For that reason, لهذا السبب **parents of children with mobile phones should get their children to limit the amount** كمية **of time they spend using them.** They should also get them to turn off their mobile phones when they go to sleep, or to put them in a different room. Although على الرغم من mobile phone signals are weak, the signals sent from mobile phone **masts** سارية عمود are much stronger. **Some people who** اقوى بكثير





live near mobile phone masts in particular بصفة خاصة worry about what the radio waves الموجات might do to them. These waves are very powerful قوية and can travel for many kilometres. They can pass through يمر عبر buildings, so they can easily pass through our bodies too. Many people who live close to قريب من masts have complained about يشكو بخصوص feeling tired, الشعور بالتعب getting headaches يصاب بالصداع and even getting forms of cancer. السرطان But is there really a link علاقة between illnesses and radio waves? It seems that there is no proof برهان / دليل that radio waves make people ill.

In 2014, scientists did an experiment تجربة in England. They had ten students move into a house with a mobile phone mast in the garden. ينتقل الى They had the mobile phone mast turned on يشغل ten days after the students moved in. However, the students thought that the mast was on all the time and they told the scientists that they felt ill. The result of the experiment seems to show that the cause of illnesses المرض might be worrying about the effects of phone masts, rather than بدلا من the radio waves themselves. However, to be safe, scientists believe that we should have mobile phone masts installed يركب in high or remote بعيد areas wherever possible. It's probably a good idea for people who live close to mobile phone masts to get their health checked يفحص frequently, مرارا too. Follow this advice and you will be able to get things done on your mobile phone without worrying about your health.

#### ✓4- Reading :

#### Food from the air الغذاء من الهواء

Everyone has seen plants growing, but have you ever thought where they get their food from? In 1652, a European scientist called يسمى Van Helmot asked this question. Before this time, it had always been thought that plants must get their food from soil. التربة However, Van Helmot decided to test يختبر the theory النظرية with experiments. التجارب العملية First, some soil was dried, يجفف put into a pot and weighed. يوزن After a small tree had been weighed, it was planted يزرع in a pot and rain water was added. يضاف Then, he had the tree watered regularly بانتظام from rain water. After five years, the tree was removed يزيل from the pot and weighed again. Van Helmot found that the tree had gained اكتسبت a huge amount كمية ضخمة of weight. When he got the soil weighed, however, it was almost تقريبا exactly the same weight نفس الوزن as it had been five years earlier. قبل ذلك Van Helmot thought this was strange, غريب but decided that the extra weight الوزن الزائد of the tree must have come from the water. He did not realize that the tree was being fed تغذى by another invisible food. غذاء غير مرئي

We now know that plants and trees make their own food. تصنع غذائها Their leaves الاوراق are like factories المصانع that produce ينتج everything they need, so that plants can change the energy الطاقة from the sun into chemical energy. During this process, عملية oxygen and sugar are produced. The oxygen is released يطلق back into the air, and the sugar is used by the plant as food.

#### ✓5-Main Points:

- 1-Some people are worried about the effect that mobile phone signals اشارات might have on our health.
- 2-Scientists think that the signals are too weak to do any damage to our health.



- 3-Parents of children with mobile phones should get their children to limit من يحد the amount of time they spend using them.
- 4-Some people who live near mobile phone masts اعمدة / سوارى in particular بصفة خاصة worry about what the radio waves might do to them.
- 5- Many people who live close to masts have complained about feeling tired, getting headaches and even getting forms of cancer سرطان.
- 6-Scientists believe that we should have mobile phone masts installed تثبت / تركيب in high or remote areas مناطق بعيدة wherever possible.

### ✓ 6- Important Sentences :

- 1 -The results (نتائج) of the experiment surprised everyone.
- 2 -You will never achieve (يحقق) very much if you do not work hard.
- 3-At school , students learn many subjects, but when they get to university , they usually specialize. (يتخصص)
- 4-Scientists often do experiments to prove a particular theory (نظرية)
- 5-I found playing the guitar very difficult at first , but in the last two weeks I've gradually (بالتدريج) improved.
- 6-People who have diabetes (السكر) must be very careful about what they eat .
- 7-She has been diabetic (مريض بالسكر) since she was a child .
- 8-His greatest achievement (إنجاز) was becoming the captain of the national team when he was 16.
- 9-There was a gradual (تدريجي) improvement in her school work.
- 10-My doctor didn't know what was wrong with me ,so he sent me to see a specialist. (متخصص)
- 11-Theoretically, anyone can travel to the moon. (نظريا)

### \*\*\*Practice(1)Test Your Vocabulary\*\*\*

#### \*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- ♣ 1-The car should not be parked there, so the police will have it.....  
a) broken                      b) placed                      c) removed                      d) gained
- ♣ 2.You can see some air pollution, but a lot of it is.....  
a) invisible                      b) visible                      c) secret                      d) effective
- ♣ 3.Children grow fast and.....a lot of weight in their teenage years.  
a) gain                      b) grow                      c) have                      d) win
- ♣ 4-It's not usually possible to.....zoo animals into the wild.  
a) realise                      b) release                      c) remove                      d) make
- ♣ 5-Scientists think that there is a..... between pollution and climate change.  
a) join                      b) connected                      c) link                      d) secret
- ♣ 6-I wrote a letter to my friend, so the language was very.....  
a) formal                      b) unformal                      c) nonformal                      d) informal
- ♣ 7-It's..... to eat with your mouth open.  
a) impolite                      b) impolite                      c) polite                      d) nonpolite
- ♣ 8-The primary school children were very noisy and the teacher started to be.....  
a) patient                      b) impatient                      c) unpatient                      d) nonpatient
- ♣ 9-My father..... me tidy my room this morning.  
a) had                      b) got                      c) has                      d) caused
- ♣ 10-I'd really like..... my vacation.  
a) to extend                      b) extend                      c) extending                      d) will extend





- ♣ 11) I don't know the possible.....of the girl's illness.  
a) cause                      b) aim                      c) reason                      d) purpose
- ♣ 12) Our science teacher does..... in the school laboratory.  
a) experiences              b)experiments              c)attempts                      d) trials
- ♣ 13) I had an awful feeling when I got.....yesterday.  
a) lost                      b) lose                      c) to lose                      d) losing
- ♣ 14) It wasn't easy for me to get Ramy.....a lift to the airport.  
a) give                      b) to giving                      c) giving                      d) to give
- ♣ 15) I had had all the emails..... before leaving the office.  
a) sending                      b) been sent                      c) sent                      d) send
- ♣ 16) To strengthen mobile signals in our area, a new phone..... will be installed.  
a) mast                      b) flay                      c) dome                      d) minerate
- ♣ 17) Scientists do a lot of experiments to.....their theories  
a) solve                      b) prove                      c) save                      d) improve
- ♣ 18) Mother feels much better as a.....of the good treatment.  
a) result                      b) conclusion                      c) way                      d) method
- ♣ 19) Scientists are..... a lot of research into cancer.  
a) taking                      b) exerting                      c) making                      d) doing
- ♣ 20) Madam Curie..... the radium.  
a) achieved                      b) invented                      c) discovered                      d) found
- ♣ 21) If something is unseen. It becomes.....  
a) visible                      b) invisible                      c) visual                      d) vision
- ♣ 22) A lot of farmers have their land.....  
a) to irrigate                      b) irrigate                      c) irrigating                      d) irrigated
- ♣ 23) I don't think it will be easy to..... these stains.  
a) move                      b) remove                      c) find                      d) motivate
- ♣ 24) Without food from the air, plants wouldn't fully.....  
a) grow                      b) die                      c) water                      d) irrigate
- ♣ 25) Mona..... a lot of weight during her stay in Sharm.  
a) earned                      b) gained                      c) made                      d) achieved
- ♣ 26) Waleed.....his hair cut last Monday.  
a) was                      b) will be                      c) has been                      d) had
- ♣ 27) ..... the police reported about the robbery yesterday?  
a) Are                      b) Had                      c) Were                      d) Have
- ♣ 28) Dad has his new car..... once a month.  
a) cleaned                      b) clean                      c) be cleaned                      d) being cleaned
- ♣ 29) The .....of the car is flat, so it won't start.  
a) body                      b) battery                      c) tyre                      d) roof
- ♣ 30) Do you know what..... this problem?  
a) caused                      b) resulted                      c) gave                      d) gifted

### ✓ 7-Definitions :-

1-	cancer	:	A serious disease <b>مرض خطير</b> in which body cells grow abnormally <b>بشكل غير طبيعي</b>	سرطان
2-	install	:	To put a piece of equipment somewhere and connect it to be ready to be used .	يُنْبِت - يُرْكَب
3-	cause	:	the person or thing that makes something happen	سبب
4-	illness	:	The disease of your body or mind or the state of having a disease .	المرض



5-	link	:	a connection between two or more events, people or ideas	صلة - رابط
6-	mast	:	a tall metal tower with an aerial that sends and receives radio or television signals	برج إشارات لاسلكية
7-	signal	:	A number of light waves, sound waves that send information to radio , television	إشارة لاسلكية
8-	gain (v)	:	to increase in something	يزداد - يكتسب
9-	Invisible	:	impossible to be seen	خفي - غير مرئي
10-	process	:	series of events or changes that happen naturally	عملية
11-	remove	:	To take something away or to get rid of a problem	يزيل / يزيل
12-	release (v)	:	To stop holding something or to let someone go free after keeping them prisoner	يطلق
13-	Theory	:	An explanation for something not true yet	نظرية
14-	Achieve	:	To succeed in doing something good	يحقق
15-	Specialize	:	To limit your study to a particular subject	يتخصص
16-	Cure (n)	:	Medicine or treatment that can make an injury better	علاج -

### ✓ 8- Phrases, Expressions and Idioms:

Do well in the test	يؤدي أداء حسن في الامتحان
Do tests to...	يقوم باختبارات لاجل
Do/conduct/carry out	يجري تجربه معمله على
Do better=improve	تتحسن في الأداء
Do something useful	يقوم بعمل شيء مفيد
Do search into "on" disease	يجري بحث على الامراض
Do more revision	يراجع كثيرا
Do damage to	يتلف/يضر/يؤدي
Make a discovery of	يقوم باكتشاف
Make advances to	يحرز تقدم لاجل
Make nuclear power safe	يجعل الطاقة النووية امنه
Make life better	يجعل الحياه افضل
A gradual improvement	تحسن تدريجي في
Limit the amount of time	يحد من (يقلل) من الوقت في
Be put "planted" into a pot	توضع/تزرع في اناء
Flood "submerge" the city	يغمر المدينه بالماء
In the way that is not normal	بطريقه غير طبيعيه
Almost exactly the same as	نفس القدر تقريبا
Research the possible causes of illness	يبحث في الاسباب المحتمله للامراض
Installed in high or remote areas	يثبت في اماكن عاليه او نائيه
Pass down through generations	تتوارث عبر الاجيال
There is no proof that	لا يوجد دليل على
At the end of the process	في نهايه العمليه
Get their health checked frequently	يتفحصون صحتهم كثيرا
Add rain water	يضيف مياه المطر
Find the ways to + inf = find the ways of +ving	يجد طرق لـ
Get a headache	يصاب بصداع





Theoretically = "in theory"	نظريا
Produce / make their own food	تصنع غذائها
Gain "put on" a huge amount of weight	يزداد في الوزن
Keep up with the changes	يوافق التغيرات
Send radio waves	يرسل موجات لاسلكيه
Medical research scientist	عالم أبحاث طبيه
Theory of general relativity	نظريه النسبيه العامه
Change the energy from the sun into chemical energy	يحول الطاقه الشمسيه الي طاقه كيميائيه
Be on	مفتوح/ شغال
How big are the dangers	كم حجم المخاطر
Release back into the air	يتصاعد ثانيه الي الهواء
Terminal "fatal" diseases	امراض مميتة/ قاتله
Release oxygen back into the air	يطلق الاكسجين
Be off	مغلق
Run around the playground	يجري حول الملعب
Get their food from the soil	يحصل علي غذائها من التربه
The circulation of blood	الدوره الدمويه
A completely natural process	عمليه طبيعيه تماما
Be certain of	متأكد من
How to survive	كيف تنجو من
Test the theory with experiments	يثبت صحة النظرية
A famous sports person	شخص رياضي مشهور
A series of events	سلسله من الاحداث

### ✓ 9-Language Notes :

#### 1- Focus on prefixes:

##### 1- (In) -

visible	مرئي	invisible	غير مرئي
formal	رسمي	informal	غير رسمي
tolerant	متسامح	intolerant	غير متسامح
accurate	دقيق	inaccurate	غير دقيق
active	نشط	inactive	غير نشيط / غير فعال
convenient	ملائم/مناسب	inconvenient	غير ملائم
expensive	غالي	inexpensive	مش غالي
credible	معقول	incredible	لا يصدق
correct	صحيح	incorrect	غير صحيح
valid	متاح	invalid	غير متاح
fertile	خصب	infertile	غير خصب
appropriate	لائق	inappropriate	غير لائق
advisable	منصوح بـ	inadvisable	غير منصوح بـ

##### 2- (un) -

infected	معدي	uninfected	غير معدي
intelligent	ذكي	unintelligent	غير ذكي
usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
important	هام	unimportant	غير هام



able	قادر	unable	غير قادر
injured	مصاب	uninjured	غير مصاب
improved	محسن	unimproved	غير محسن
informed	مبلغ	uninformed	غير مبلغ
influential	مؤثر	uninfluential	غير مؤثر
industrial	صناعي	unindustrial	غير صناعي
inhabited	مسكون	uninhabited	غير مسكون
inspiring	ملهـم	uninspiring	غير ملهم
interesting	شيق	uninteresting	غير شيق
interested	مهتم	uninterested	غير مهتم
inhibited	خجول	uninhabited	منطـلق
imaginable	يمكن تخيله	unimaginable	لا يمكن تخيله

### 3- (im)-

polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب
possible	ممكـن	impossible	مستحيل
patient	صبور	impatient	غير صبور
perfect	متقن / كامل	imperfect	غير متقن
measurable	يمكن قياسه	immeasurable	لا يمكن قياسه
moral	أخلاقي	immoral	غير أخلاقي
passive	سلبي	impassive	غير سلبي
mature	ناضج	immature	غير ناضج
probable	محتمل	improbable	غير متصل
proper	لائق	improper	غير لائق
personal	شخصي	impersonal	غير شخصي
pure	نقي / طاهر	impure	غير نقي
practical	عملي	impractical	غير عملي
modest	متواضع	immodest	غير متواضع
balanced	متوازن	imbalanced	غير متوازن

### 4- (varieties)- متنوعات

appear	يظهر	disappear	يختفي
appoint	يرضي	disappoint	يحبط
agree	يوافق	disagree	يرفض
paid	مدفوع	unpaid	غير مدفوع
happy	سعيد	unhappy	غير سعيد
fortunately	لحسن الحظ	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
renewable	متجدد	non-renewable	غير متجدد
fiction	خيال	non-fiction	حقيقه
understand	يفهم	misunderstand	يسئ الفهم
lead	يقود	mislead	يضل
literate	متعلم	illiterate	امي
legal	قانوني / شرعي	illegal	غير شرعي
regular	معتاد	irregular	غير معتاد
responsible	مسئول	irresponsible	مستهتر





## 2- theory – in theory – theoretical – theorist – theoretically

**\*\* theory** نظريه

eg: All what you say is a theory that has never been proved yet.

**\*\* in theory = theoretically**

eg: theoretically, in theory anyone can travel into space

**\*\* theoretical** نظري

eg: We will cover the theoretical part in physics next week

**\*\* theorist** مؤمن بنظريه

eg: He is an economical theorist

## 3- treat – cure – heal

**\*\* treat** يعالج / يعامل

eg: He was treated neighbourly

**\*\* cure of "v"** يعالج من مرض

cure for "n"

علاج لـ

eg: There will be a cure for corona virus in the near future

**\*\* heal** يلتئم "الحروق / الجروح / الإصابات"

eg: This medicine helps in healing cuts

## 4- rather than بدلاً من / أفضل من

eg: We should depend on ourselves rather than the others

**\*\* other than** غير / بخلاف / باستثناء

eg: You can take five books other than the two you have

## 5- process – operation – procession

**\*\* process** عملية طبيعية أو تصنيعية "سلسلة من الأحداث"

eg: The government has begun the process of reforming education

**\*\* procession** موكب أو مسيرة

eg: In china, There's a big procession to celebrate the New Year's day

**\*\* operation** عملية تشغيل / عملية جراحية

eg: Mr. Ali has had a serious operation recently

## 6- \*\* move in / into

**\*\* move in** ينتقل الي "لا يتبعها المكان"

eg: When her new flat is ready, she will move in

**\*\* move into** ينتقل الي "يتبعها المكان"

eg: She will move into her new flat as soon as it is ready

## 7-Subject + see / hear / watch + inf يعبر عن الحدث كله

Subject + see / hear / watch + v.ing يعبر عن جزء من الحدث

eg: I saw Mo salah play football = I saw the whole match

eg: I saw Mo Salah playing football = I saw part of the match

## 8- sign – signal

**\*\* sign** اشاره الي "حدث يدل علي حقيقه / لافتة"

eg: If you want to reach the station in no time follow the signs

**\*\* signal** اشاره التليفون / الراديو / التليفزيون "شاره" ضوئية أو صوتيه "كدليل أو إعطاء اذن أو طلب المساعدة

eg: I think this ship is signalling to us , let's help them

## 9- illness – disease – epidemic

**\*\* illness** اعتلال بالصحة

eg: She had to stay at home because of her illness

**\*\* disease** مرض محدد

eg: Cancer is a very dangerous disease, that kills people



**\*\*epidemic** وباء

eg: Covid 19 is a worldwide epidemic, that threatens millions of people

### 10- visible – visual – invisible

**\*\* visible : can be seen** مرئي

eg: The criminal was visible on killing the victim on purpose

**\*\*visual** بصري

eg: The scene of killing the victim has a strong visual impact

**\*\* invisible: can't be seen** غير مرئي

eg: The little boy hid behind some trees, he thought that he was invisible

### 11- regular – regularly – gradual – gradually

**\*\* regular** منتظم

eg: He gives regular interest to his duties

**\*\* regularly** بانتظام

eg: She visits her uncle regularly

**\*\* gradual** تدريجي

eg: There is a gradual improvement in his performance

**\*\* gradually** تدريجيا

eg: His performance gradually improved

### 12- soil – land – earth – ground – dust

**\*\* earth** الكرة الأرضية

eg: The earth moves round the sun

**\*\* floor** طابق في بناءه

eg: He lives in the second floor

**\*\* ground** أرض / أرضيه علميه

eg: Sometimes, people prefer to sit on the ground

**\*\* land** اليابسة / أرض

eg: He could see the land using some equipment

**\*\* soil** تربة زراعية / رملية

eg: It's a fertile soil, you can plant anything

**\*\* dust** تراب ناعم / غبار

eg: He drove off in a cloud of dust

### 13- regretful "نادم" شخص

eg: She feels regretful for not helping her mother yesterday

**\*\*regrettable** مؤسف

eg: He must be regrettable for making such mistakes

### 14- result – result from – result in

**\*\* result** نتيجة

eg: I have received the result of my exams in a written report

**\*\*result from** ينجم عن

eg: Cancer results from smoking

**\*\* result in** يؤدي الى

eg: Smoking results in cancer

### 10- Confusing words for choices:

lose	يفقد	miss/waste	يفتقد/يفوته/يهدر
cancer	مرض السرطان	cancer=tumour	ورم سرطاني
modify	يعدل	alter	يتغير/يغير





illness	اعتلال بالصحة	sickness/disease	مرض محدد
process	عملية طبيعية او صناعية	operation	عملية تشغيل/جراحية
venom	سم (عن طريق اللدغ)	poison	سم (عن طريق الدس)
health	صحة	wealth	ثروته
test	يختبر	taste	يتذوق
result	نتيجة	conclusion	استنتاج/خاتمه
install	يركب/يثبت برنامج	fix	يثبت/ يصلح
mast	صاري الهاتف	mist	شبهوره
cause of	سبب لـ	reason for	مبرر/ سبب
signal for	يرسل اشارته لطلب	signal to	يرسل اشارته الي
proof	دليل/ برهان	prove	يثبت
serious	خطير/ جاد	series	سلسلة/متتالية
regularly	بانتظام	gradually	تدريجيا
visible	مرئي (يمكن رؤيته)	visual	بصري (يخص البصر)
gain	يكتسب شيء محتوي (الوزن)	win	يفوز بـ
wave	موجه	weave	يحيك/نسيج
as+ job + شيء حقيقي		like	شيء تحبه
experiment	تجربه معملية	experience	تجربه حياتيه/ خبره
reward	مكافأه/يكافئ	award	جائزه/ يمنح جائزه
search	يبحث/يقتش	research	يجري بحث علمي
compare – with	يقارن لتوضيح الاختلاف	compare to	يقارن لتوضيح الشبه
national	وطني/ قومي/ اهلي	nationalist	قائد وطني
human	ادمي/ بشري	humane	انساني (رحمه/ شفقه)
install	يركب/ يثبت شيء	instill	يغرس
the same	نفس الشيء	the same as	تماما مثل
release	يطلق/ يخرج/ يحرر	realize	يدرك/ يفهم
invent	يخترع (شيء لم يكن له وجود ووجد)	discover	يكشف (شيء كان له وجود ووجد)

### ✓ 11- Words and their antonyms :-

diabetic	مريض بالسكر	non-diabetic	غير مصاب بالسكر
regularly	بشكل منتظم	irregularly	بشكل غير منتظم
gain "weight"	يزداد في	lose "weight"	يفقد – يخسر
normal	عادي – طبيعي	abnormal	غير طبيعي – شاذ
normally	بشكل طبيعي	abnormally	بشكل غير طبيعي
visible	مرئي	invisible	غير مرئي
add	يضيف	remove	يزيل
prove	يثبت	disprove	يثبت عدم صحة
affect	يؤثر	affected by	متأثر بـ
huge / massive	ضخم	tiny	صغير جدا
in theory	نظريا	in practice	عمليا / تطبيقيا
close to	قريب من	far from / remote	منعزل
release	يحرر – يطلق سراح	capture	ياسر – يستحوذ علي



gradually	تدريجيا	suddenly	فجأة
increase	يزيد	decrease	يخفض - يقلل
top	قمه	bottom	قاع
certain	متأكد / واثق	uncertain	غير متأكد
overweight	وزن زياده	underweight	وزن اقل
breathe in	يشهق	breathe out	يزفر
generalize	يعمم	specialize	يتخصص - يختص
correct	صحيح	incorrect	غير صحيح
curable	قابل للشفاء	incurable	غير قابل للشفاء

### \*\*\*Practice(2)Test Your Knowledge\*\*\*

\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- ① 31-The.....of the experiment surprised everyone.  
a-result                      b-outlet                      c-insult                      d-revolt
- ① 32-You will never.....very much if you do not work hard.  
a-relieve                      b-approve                      c-achieve                      d-believe
- ① 33-At school, students learn many subjects, but when they get to university, they usually.....  
a) realize                      b) economize                      c)specialize                      d)symbolize
- ① 34-Scientists often do experiments to prove a particular .....  
a) theory                      b) habit                      c) custom                      d)tradition
- ① 35-I found playing the guitar very difficult at first, but in the last two weeks I've.....  
improved  
a) artificially                      b) brutally                      c)gradually                      d)cheerfully
- ① 36-People who have ..... must be very careful about what they eat.  
a) diagnosis                      b) diabetes                      c)dialects                      d)diary
- ① 37-We need an electrician to .....our new washing machine.  
a-instill                      b- still                      c- plant                      d- install
- ① 38-.....is a serious disease in which cells in the body grow in a way that is not normal.  
a) Cancer                      b)Diabetes                      c) Colic                      d) Headache
- ① 39-Some people suffer from mental.....  
a-ill                      b-illness                      c-sick                      d-painful
- ① 40-A .....is tall pole often used for sending waves of radio or television signals.  
a) nest                      b) column                      c) mast                      d) sail
- ① 41-A .....is a number of light waves, sound waves that send information to radio ,television.  
a) sign                      b) notice                      c) board                      d) signal
- ① 42-A ..... is a connection between two or more people , events , ideas or situations  
a) leek                      b)link                      c) lick                      d) leak
- ① 43-Parents should ...their children to limit the amount of time they spend using mobile phone.  
a) get                      b) have                      c) let                      d) make
- ① 44-They should also get them .....off their mobile phones when they go to sleep.  
a) turning                      b) turn                      c) turned                      d) to turn
- ① 45-They.....ten students move into a house with a mobile phone mast in the garden.  
a) had                      b) has                      c) got                      d) get





- ⓪ 46-I (got-had-have-having)Ali to go to the sports club with me, although he didn't want to go.
- ⓪ 47-Mother had Shaimaa(tidy-to tidy-tiding-to tidying)her room before she went out.
- ⓪ 48-Before the meeting, the manager always gets the reports(to type-type-typed-typing).
- ⓪ 49-Dina ( allowed-make -has-does)the flat cleaned every week
- ⓪ 50-The PE teacher had us (ran-run-to run-running)around the playground four times .
- ⓪ 51-If you don't know how to use the computer ,(let-make-have-get)your son to help you.
- ⓪ 52-How often do you get your teeth(check-to check-checking-checked)at the dentist's.
- ⓪ 53-We are eating in a restaurant tonight because our parents(had- have-are having-have to) our kitchen painted.
- ⓪ 54-I can't use my bike because I am having it(repaired-to repair-repairing-be repaired).
- ⓪ 55-We don't always ( had – have – will have – are having ) our car washed.
- ⓪ 56-My parents get the plants (water-watering-to water-watered)at the weekend.
- ⓪ 57-I ( have – will have – am having – had ) my house decorated next week.
- ⓪ 58-Yesterday, I had my hair (to cut-be cut-cutting-cut).
- ⓪ 59-Every Friday, Joe has his car (wash-be washed-to wash-washed).
- ⓪ 60-Tomorrow, she is going to have her shower (repaired-be repaired-repairing-to repair).
- ⓪ 61-(Cancer-Link-Mast-Signal) is a serious disease in which cells in your body grow in a way that is not normal.
- ⓪ 62-(Install-Illness-Process-Cause) is to put a piece of equipment somewhere so that it is ready to use.
- ⓪ 63-(Release-Invisible-Visible-Process) means let go, Stop holding something.
- ⓪ 64-The earthquake (caused-resulted-reasoned-done) several buildings to collapse.
- ⓪ 65-She can't (feed-drink-eat-eaten) her baby.
- ⓪ 66-He drove off in a cloud of (earth-land-dust-soil).
- ⓪ 67-Teachers have to(install-instill-learn-imitate)confidence into students.
- ⓪ 68-Parents should get their children to turn(on-of-off-for)their mobile phones when they go to sleep, or to put them in a different room.
- ⓪ 69-The radio waves can easily pass through our (thoughts-ideas-bodies-opinions).
- ⓪ 70-It seems that there is no (prove-proof-improve-disapprove) that radio waves make people ill.
- ⓪ 71-Leaves falling from trees in the autumn is a completely natural (excess-business-process – pretence).
- ⓪ 72-She has been( diabetic- athletic- allergic - sympathetic) since she was a child. There is too much sugar in her blood.
- ⓪ 73-His greatest(agreement-arrangement-achievement-discouragement) was becoming the captain of the national team when he was 20.
- ⓪ 74-There was a(manual-punctual-spiritual-gradual) improvement in her schoolwork.
- ⓪ 75-The clothes will(wet-dry-fry-cry)if you hang them .
- ⓪ 76- (Artistically-Atomically-Theoretically-Historically), anyone can travel to the moon.
- ⓪ 77-The(remove-removal-move-movement)of the bottle cork will make the liquid disappear.
- ⓪ 78- I wrote an(formal-informal-formality-invisible) letter to my friend.
- ⓪ 79-The timetable is very old so the information in it is (new-recent-inaccurate –fresh).
- ⓪ 80- Something which is(compatible-invisible-audible-flexible)is impossible to see.



- ⓪ 81- I had my car (washed-wash-washing-to wash).
- ⓪ 82- I got my hair (cut- to cut-cutting-been cut).
- ⓪ 83- I had the documents (type-to type-typed-typing).
- ⓪ 84-We get the signal for our mobile phones from that tall (match-mast-maze-post) on the hill.
- ⓪ 85-I usually (make my hair- have cut my hair- get my hair- have my hair cut) once a month.
- ⓪ 86-Their clothes were dirty because they had had (their flat paint- painted their flat -their flat painted- their flat to paint )
- ⓪ 87-I had the cleaner (clean-cleaned-to clean-cleaning) the house.
- ⓪ 88-I had the taxi driver (collected-collect-to collect-collecting) us.
- ⓪ 89-I got John to (arriving- arrives -arrive- arrival) on time.
- ⓪ 90-I had the mechanic (to fix-fixing-fixed-fix) the brakes.
- ⓪ 91-I .....Ali to go to the club with me, although he didn't want to go.  
a-made                      b-got                      c- had                      d- let
- ⓪ 92. Mother had Sara..... her room before she went out.  
a-tidy                      b-to tidy                      c- tided                      d- tidying
- ⓪ 93. Before the meeting, the manager gets the reports.....  
a-to type                      b-type                      c-typed                      d-typing
- ⓪ 94. Dina.....the flat cleaned every week.  
a- makes                      b- does                      c- allows                      d- has
- ⓪ 95. Adel always has his computer.....  
a- fixed                      b- to fix                      c- fix                      d- fixing
- ⓪ 96. Fareeda's had her bad tooth..... out (by the dentist).  
a- to pull                      b- pull                      c- pulled                      d- pulling
- ⓪ 97. The park manager.....the plants watered every day.  
a- makes                      b- causes                      c- allows                      d- gets
- ⓪ 98. Lamia will.....her house decorated (by some workmen).  
a-let                      b-get                      c-want                      d-make
- ⓪ 99. The PE teacher had us..... around the playground four times.  
a- run                      b- ran                      c- to run                      d- running
- ⓪ 100. If you can't use the computer, get your brother..... you.  
a-help                      b- helped                      c-to help                      d-helping
- ⓪ 101. They have put a new telephone..... on the roof of that building.  
a-trunk                      b-mast                      c-mobile                      d- antenna
- ⓪ 102 .My mother bought a new washing machine and my uncle is going to.....it this evening  
a-install                      b-repair                      c-link                      d-attach
- ⓪ 103. My little brother is often angry. He is very.....  
a- invisible                      b- intolerant                      c- uninjured                      d- inaccurate
- ⓪ 104. Manal had an accident, but she is OK. She was.....  
a- uninjured                      b- informal                      c- impolite                      d- inaccurate
- ⓪ 105. When you write an email to a friend, it is.....  
a- uninjured                      b- impatient                      c- informal                      d- unintelligent
- ⓪ 106.This information is not correct. It is.....  
a- informal                      b- inaccurate                      c- impolite                      d- intolerant
- ⓪ 107. Some animals are very clever, but I think ducks are.....  
a- intolerant                      b- impolite                      c- informal                      d- unintelligent
- ⓪ 108. The small child talked rudely. He was.....  
a-impolite                      b- uninjured                      c-impatient                      d-informal





109. We waited an hour for the bus and began to feel.....  
a- uninjured      b- impatient      c- impolite      d- inaccurate
- 110- Fareeda looks..... I think she should see a doctor.  
a-ill      b-fine      c-fit      d-polite
- 111.The manager got a technician.....a new computer program.  
a-to install      b-install      c-installed      d-installing
112. Ali is going to the stadium. Let's get him.....tickets for the match  
a-buy      b-to buy      c-bought      d-buying
113. I didn't.....my hair cut yesterday.  
a- make      b- let      c- have      d- want
114. My brother always has .....his clothes  
a- to clean      b- clean      c- cleaning      d- cleaned
115. I..... my car checked before I left the garage last week.  
a- had      b- made      c- let      d- promised
- 116- Mariam..... the windows washed.  
a- made      b- did      c- had      d- allowed
- 117- Ali will ..... his car repaired.  
a- had      b- make      c- allow      d- get
- 118.We don't always have our car.....  
a-to wash      b-washed      c-wash      d-washing
- 119.Abdullah got his house..... last week.  
a-painted      b-to paint      c- paint      d- painting
120. My parents have/get the plants.....at the weekend.  
a-watering      b-water      c-watered      d- to water

## ✓ 12- Prepositions:

linked with/to	متصل/مرتبط بـ	article about	مقاله عن
invisible to	غير مرئي لـ	careful about	حريص بشأن
refer to	يشير الي	find out about	يكتشف/يحدد
send to	يرسل الي	talk about	يتحدث عن
signal to	يرسل اشاره الي	worried about	قلق علي
next to	بجوار	complain about	يشكو من
useful to	نافع لـ/مفيد لـ	result in	يؤدي الي/يتسبب في
close to	قريب من	specialize in	يتخصص في
complain to	يشكو لـ	similar in	متماثل/ مشابه في
similar to	مشابه لـ	increase in	زياده في
certain/sure of	متأكد من	interested in	مهتم بـ
complain of	يشكو من	benefit from	يستفيد من
cause of	سبب لـ	change from	يتغير من..
explanation for	تفسير لـ	fall from	يتساقط من
signal for	يرسل اشاره لطلب	get...from	يحصل من
important for	هام لـ	remove...from	يزيل من
cure for	علاج لـ	send...from	يرسل من
arise from	ينشأ من	result from	يتبع من/ ينتج عن
pull out	يخلع سنه	live under	يعيش تحت حكم
rather than	بدلا من	similar in	مشابه في
change into	يحول الي	release into	يطلق في



experiment on	يجرب علي	get over	يتغلب علي
ready to	مستعد لـ	work on	يطور مشروع
test with	يختبر بـ	a link between	صله بين
carry out	ينفذ	fall off	يسقط من فوق
to be safe	لكي تكون في امان	at regular times	في اوقات منتظمه
in theory	نظريا	get together	يتقابل

### \*\*\*Practice(3):(Test Your Prepositions)\*\*\*

\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\*

- 121-I don't think I've done very well (in-into-out-over) this year's science tests at school.
- 122-The results (from-for-to-of)the experiment surprised everyone.
- 123-He thought that plants must get their food(through- from- into-out) soil
- 124-Van Helmot decided to test the theory (for- to-with-from) experiments
- 125-First, he dried some soil, put it (into-in-of-out) a pot and weighed it.
- 126-He watered the soil regularly (for- to-with-from) rain water.
- 127-He removed the tree (of -for-out-from) the pot and weighed it again.
- 128-Plants can change the energy (of -for-out-from) the sun into chemical energy.  
During this process, oxygen and sugar are produced.
- 129-The oxygen is released (for-with-back-to) into the air.
- 130-It's all about doing experiments and comparing your results (to-for-from-with) other scientists, then gradually developing theories.
- 131-I'd like to specialize in studying the causes (for-of-to-with) serious illnesses, like cancer or diabetes.
- 132-(Artistically-Atomically-Theoretically-Historically),anyone can travel to the moon.
- 133-Some scientists still believe in Darwin's (function- theory- diary- delivery) of evolution.
- 134-Most scientists agree that human activity is the (result-reason-cause -case)of global warming.
- 135-Our English teacher wants us to form a (group-communicate -contact-link) between our school and a school in England.
- 136-Cancer is a serious disease in which (cells-veins-holes-arteries) in someone's body grow in a way that is not normal.
- 137-It is sometimes difficult to get a telephone (call -card-charge -signal) in remote parts of the country.
- 138-Diabetes is an (illness-illegal-ulcer-ideal) which affects a lot of people.
- 139-They have put a new telephone (box-mast-cover-charger)on the roof of that building.
- 140-Bad traffic is(causing-letting-making-doing)a lot of people to be late for work.
- 141-Fareeda looks (ill-sickness-illness-disease). She should see a doctor .
- 142-Look at the lights on the boat are they (signal-sign-signaling-looking) to us ?
- 143-The teacher asked the technician to (link- communicate- contact- lift) all the computers in the classroom.
- 144-We bought a new program for our computer and the (install -instillation - installation- stale) has been very successful.





- ① 145- the car shouldn't be parked there so the police will have it (remove-to remove-removed -removing)
- ① 146-There is no ( gain – pain – rain – sail ) without pain .
- ① 147-There are some sports where it is good to (earn-win-defeat-gain) weight, rather than lose it.
- ① 148-Farmers water their crops (regularly-bitterly-disorderly-formerly) to grow well.
- ① 149-The little boy hiding behind the door thought he was(divisible-edible-legible-invisible).
- ① 150-If you don't turn the taps off, you can waste a huge (number-amount- account-discount)of water in a short time.

### ✓ 13 – Language Focus :

#### Causative : Have and Get

##### 1) Usage:

To make or persuade someone to do something or to say that the action is done by someone else.  
يجعل أو ليسمح أو يجبر أو يطلب أو يقنع شخص آخر أن يفعل شيئاً ما، و تعبر عن أن الفعل قام به شخص آخر.

##### 1- The active causative have and get

We use have +object+infinitive without to=get + object + infinitive with to to mean make or persuade someone to do something. Have is more formal than get:

The teacher **had** us **do** some extra work today.

Please **get** Yasser **to help** you.

##### 2-The passive causative have and get

We use get /have +object + past participle to say that the action is done by someone else:

I don't cut my hair. I **have** my hair **cut**.

Do you usually **get** your room **cleaned**? No, I clean it myself.

##### 3-This is similar in meaning to the passive :

*We do not need to say who does the action. It can be used in any tense:*

We always **get** our clothes **washed**. (Our clothes are washed for us.)

I **had** my teeth **checked** yesterday. (My teeth were checked yesterday.)

Ali **is getting** his car **repaired**. (Ali's car is being repaired.)

##### 4-Like the passive, we can say who does the action by adding by :

I'm having my homework **checked by the teacher**.

Notice how we use the causative form in questions and answers:

**Did** you have your meal **prepared**?

No, I **didn't** (have it prepared). I prepared it myself.

- يمكن أن يكون الاستخدام السببي في مختلف الأزمنة.

#### Present simple المضارع البسيط

##### Active

inf. مصدر / inf. مصدر +s/es

- Hala always **washes** our clothes.

- Somebody **does** her shopping

##### Causative use

have / has + مفعول + pp

- We always **have** our clothes **washed**

- She **gets** her shopping **done**.

#### Present continuous المضارع المستمر

##### Active

am / is / are + v. + ing

- The chef **is preparing** our lunch now.

- Somebody **is mending** my car.

##### Passive

am / is /are + having + مفعول + pp

-We **are having** our lunch **prepared** now.

-I **am having** my car **mended**.



## المستقبل البسيط Future simple

### Active

will / shall + inf.

- They **will build** new houses here next year. We **will have** new houses **built** here next year.

### Causative use

will / shall + have + مفعول + pp

## - سوف Be going to

### Active

be going to + مصدر

- The government **is going to build** a new road. - We **are going to have** a new road **built**.  
- My boss **is going to raise** our salaries. - We **are going to get** our salaries **raised**.

### Causative use

be going to + have + مفعول + pp

## الماضي البسيط Past simple

### Active

التصريف الثاني للفعل

- The government **built** a new school in the village last year. - Residents **had** a new school **built** by the government in the village last year.  
- Somebody painted this room for Ali yesterday. - Ali **had** this room painted yesterday.

### Causative use

had + مفعول + pp

## الماضي المستمر Past continuous

### Active

was / were + v. + ing

- They **were decorating** my house yesterday. - I **was having** my house **decorated** yesterday.  
- She **was washing** our dishes when I arrived. - We **were getting** our dishes **washed** when I arrived.

### Causative use

was / were + having + مفعول + pp

## المضارع التام Present perfect

### Active

Has / have + pp

- They **have delivered** our new furniture. - We **have had** our new furniture **delivered**.  
- Somebody **has planted** some trees for her. - She **has had** some trees **planted**.

### Causative use

has / have + had + مفعول + pp

## الماضي التام Past perfect

### Active

had + pp

- Mother **had not made** the bread before we went to bed. - We **had not had** the bread **made** before we went to bed.  
- When Mr Ali arrived, he found that thieves **had broken** into his shop. - When Mr Ali arrived, he found that he **had had** his shop **broken** into.

### Causative use

had + had + مفعول + pp

- قارن أيضا بين الجمل الآتية المستخدمة في المبني للمجهول و الاستخدام السببي في كل الأزمنة -

- |   |   |                 |
|---|---|-----------------|
| - He <b>has</b> his teeth checked twice a year.   | (His teeth are checked twice a year.)     | مضارع بسيط      |
| - I <b>had</b> my teeth <b>checked</b> yesterday. | (My teeth <b>were</b> checked yesterday.) | ماضي بسيط       |
| - Ali <b>is getting</b> his car repaired.         | (Ali's car <b>is being</b> repaired.)     | مضارع مستمر     |
| - He <b>was having</b> the house painted.         | (The house <b>was being</b> painted)      | ماضي مستمر      |
| - John <b>will have</b> his house painted.        | (John's house <b>will be</b> painted)     | مستقبل بسيط     |
| - She <b>has had</b> the stairs cleaned.          | (The stairs <b>have been</b> cleaned)     | مضارع تام       |
| - She <b>had had</b> the dinner cooked.           | (The dinner <b>had been</b> cooked)       | ماضي تام        |
| - I must have my car mended.                      | (My car must be mended)                   | الفعل في المصدر |
- إذا أردنا أن نذكر الفاعل في جملة الاستخدام السببي، يوضع في نهاية الجملة مسبقا بحرف الجر (by).
- I'm having my homework checked by the teacher.





- لاحظ كيف يكون الاستخدام السببي في حالة السؤال.

- Did you have your meal prepared?

(Past simple)

- No, I didn't (have it prepared). I prepared it myself.

- لاحظ كيف يكون الاستخدام السببي في حالة النفي.

- I will not get the papers delivered by my assistant. I'll deliver them by myself

- لاحظ الفارق بين الجمل التالية من حيث المعنى.

- I cleaned my house. (This means I cleaned it myself).  
- أنا من قام بتنظيف المنزل

(If I paid someone to clean it) / (A cleaner cleaned my house) شخص آخر قام بتنظيف المنزل  
لا يوجد فارق في الاستخدام بين (have) و (get) سوى أن (have) تستخدم بشكل رسمي أكثر.

- I don't know how to repair cars, so I'm having mine repaired at the garage round the corner.

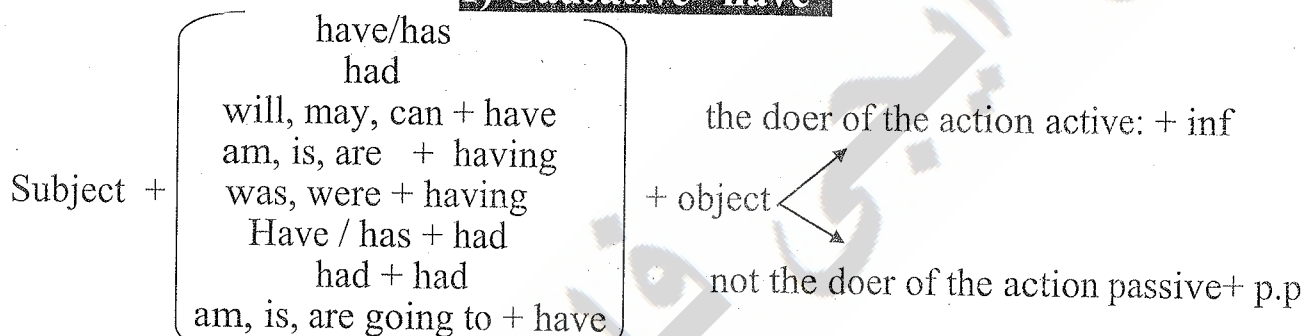
- كما أن (get) أكثر استخداما و شيوعا من (have) في الجملة الأمرية.

- I really must get my eyes tested. I'm sure I need glasses.

- Get your hair cut! It's too long.

## Synopsis Very Important

### 1) Causative "have"



1) eg: Mona has the servant "clean – cleans – to clean – cleaned" the apartment.

eg: Mona has the apartment "clean – cleans – to clean – cleaned" by the servant.

2) eg: Ali is having the mechanic "repair – to repair – repairs – repaired" his car.

eg: Ali is having his car "repair – to repair – repairs – repaired by" by the mechanic

### \* The causative form in questions and answers\*

eg: Did you have your meal prepared? No, I didn't have it prepared"  
I prepared it myself.

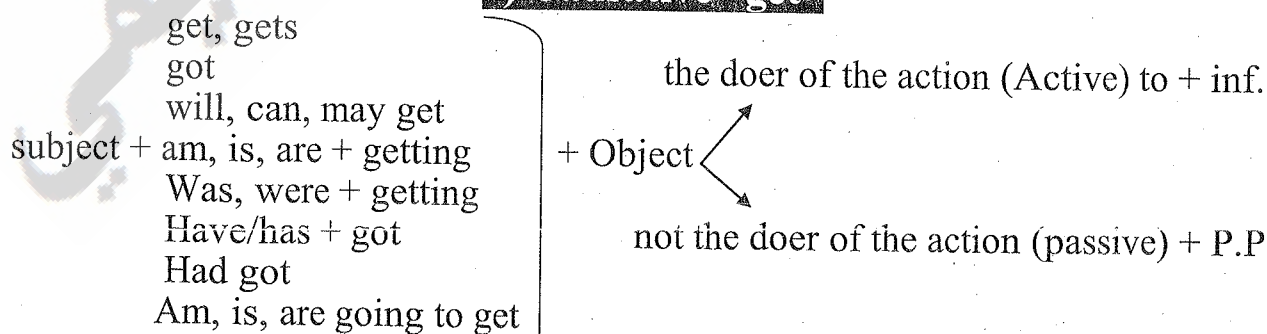
eg: Will you have your house painted?

No, I won't have my house painted, I will paint it myself

eg: Are you going to have your hair cut by the barber?

No, I am not going to have it cut, I am going to cut it myself.

### 2) Causative "get"



eg: Ahmed gets the barber "cut – to cut – cuts – be cut" his hair "active"  
 eg: Ahmed gets his hair "cut – to cut – cuts – be cut" by the barber "passive"

### "question and answer"

Does Ahmed get his hair cut by the barber? No, he doesn't get it cut, He cut it himself  
 eg: The students have got the teacher "explain–explains–to explain–explained" the lessons.

eg: The students have got the lessons "explain – explains – to explain – explained" by the teacher.

**Synopsis: 1)** هناك بعض الافعال تستخدم بنفس الاسلوب مثل:

Subject	make see hear let	+	object	+	Inf.	"Active"
---------	----------------------------	---	--------	---	------	----------

eg: The father let his children "to go – go – gone – going" to the club.

eg: The coach made the team "followed – following – follow – follows" his instructions to win the match

### **(2)-**

subject	+	am is are was were	made heard seen allowed	+	to	+	inf.	"passive"
---------	---	--------------------------------	----------------------------------	---	----	---	------	-----------

eg: He was made to confess.

eg: Michael was seen to leave Strelsau.

(3) يمكن استخدام السببة بدلا من المبني للمجهول للتعبير عن الحوادث او المصائب

eg: I had my coat stolen = My coat was stolen

He had his hand broken = his hands were broken.

(4) يمكن استخدام الافعال الاتيه بنفس الاسلوب

Subject	+	يسمح Allow يسمح Permit يستلزم Require يطلب Ask يطلب Want يقنع Persuade يخبر Tell يجبر Force يجبر Oblige يقنع Convince يحتاج Need	+	object	+	to	+	inf	"Active"
---------	---	--	---	--------	---	----	---	-----	----------

eg: The manager allowed the employees to take the week off.

eg: The wife persuaded her husband to buy her a new villa.

(5) في المبني للمعلوم يمكن استخدام "v + ing" بدلا من "inf or to + inf"

eg: Mona had her mother helping her during the party.

eg: Mona got her mother helping her during the party.

(6) يمكن ان ياتي بعد get في حاله:

**Get something + v.ing "something"**

eg: At last, we have got our camera working again.





### **\*Test Yourself:**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :\***

- 1. Most people love their mobile phones, but some people are worried about the effect of mobile phone.....  
a-symbols                      b-signs                      c signals                      d marks
- 2. Doctors think that smoking can.....a lot of damage to our health.  
a-carry                      b-do                      c take                      d make
- 3. Children should..... the amount of time they spend using mobiles.  
a limit                      b maximize                      c level                      d increase
- 4. We should get children to turn.....their mobile phones when they go to sleep, or to put them in a different room.  
a on                      b off                      c up                      d down
- 5. Although mobile phone signals are weak, the signals sent from mobile phone.....are much stronger.  
a masks                      b mists                      c masts                      d musts
- 6. Radio waves can easily..... through our bodies.  
a lift                      b leave                      c take                      d pass
- 7-A.....is a small machine that is put inside someone's heart to help it beat regularly.  
a-pacemaker                      جهاز تنظيم ضربات القلب                      b-stethoscope                      سماعة الطبيب                      c-telescope                      d-tube
- 8- Scientists believe that we should have mobile phone masts ..... in high or remote areas wherever possible,  
a-instilled                      b- installed                      c- insisted                      d- remained
- 9- The plane should reach its.....by 9 pm.  
a- purpose                      b- aim                      c- situation                      d- destination
- 10. Scientists usually..... experiments on animals to develop new drugs.  
a -carry                      b-carry out                      c-make                      d-take
- 11. The car mustn't be parked here as the police will have it.....  
a-stopped                      b-stepped                      c -removed                      d-improved
- 12. Children grow fast and.....a lot of weight in their teenage years.  
a-beat                      b-earn                      c -win                      d-gain
- 13. Trees take in carbon dioxide and..... oxygen.  
a-store                      b-absorb                      c-release                      d-relax
- 14. I'm eager to know the.....of the exam to make sure I have passed!  
a-solution                      b-result                      c-conclusion                      d-cause
- 15.....is a disease in which cells in your body grow in a way that is not normal.  
a-Cancer                      b-Diabetes                      c-Headache                      d-Stomach
- 16 -My car was repaired. This means that I.....  
a-had my car repaired                      b-had to repair my car  
c-had repaired my car                      d-will have to repair my car
- 17 We usually.....our food made as we are busy studying.  
a-cause                      b-have                      c-do                      d-make
- 18- My car engine doesn't start; I will..... a mechanic to check it.  
a-Net                      b-have                      c-get                      d-make
- 19- We won't paint our house ourselves. We ..... by a clever painter.  
a-won't paint it                      b-will have painted it                      c-will have it painted                      d-will paint it



- 20-I'm going to get my hair..... as it is very long  
a-shortens                      b- lengthens                      c- lengthened                      d- shortened
- 21-Are you going to have your shoes polished?- No, I will.....myself  
a-get it polished                      b- polish it                      c- polish them                      d- have them polished
- 22-After I..... at El-Nasr car service, I drove to Ras Elbar  
a- had serviced my car                      b- had had my car serviced  
c- have had my car serviced                      d- serviced
- 23.Never have your homework.....; always do it yourself.  
a- done                      b- doing                      c- to be doing                      d-did
- 24. ....an air conditioner installed in your room; it's terribly hot there.  
a- Let                      b- Take                      c- Have                      d-Had
- 25.I had my computer fixed. This means that .....  
a- it wasn't fixed                      b- no one fixed it                      c- I fixed it                      d-someone fixed it
- 26.Have you..... the main road in your town paved?  
a- making                      b- get                      c- had                      d-make
- 27.I'm..... my car serviced now.  
a- making                      b- getting                      c- allowed                      d-allowing
- 28.When I was a child, I..... ; I was too young to do so.  
a- used to have my room tidied                      b- used to tidy my room  
c- tidied my room                      d- have tied my room
- 29. Be careful, you.....; have a technician check it.  
a- need to check this machine.                      b- need to have this machine checked  
c- need to have checked this machine                      d- must check this machine
- 30. Have you had your room decorated? - No, I..... myself yesterday.  
a-have decorated it                      b-had it decorated                      c-decorated it                      d-had decorated it

**\*\*\*Practice(5):( Open Book Exercises)\*\*\***

**\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\***

- ☞ 31.I advise you to turn.....your mobile before going to bed  
a-off                      b-on                      c-out                      d-into
- ☞ 32. The customer complained to the manager.....the cold food.  
a-from                      b- about                      c-of                      d-on
- ☞ 33. Engineers are working..... a new metro line to the airport.  
a- for                      b-in                      c- at                      d- on
- ☞ 34. Mobile waves can pass.....buildings as well as our bodies.  
a- into                      b- out of                      c- through                      d- from
- ☞ 35. The dentist pulled.....Dina's bad tooth  
a- out                      b- off                      c- in                      d- about
- ☞ 36) You need a certain .....of sunshine to get enough vitamin D.  
a) theory                      b) process                      c) invisible                      d) amount
- ☞ 37. Mobile phones have not been.....long enough to be certain of their effect on health.  
a. around                      b. away                      c. off                      d. up
- ☞ 38. Their uncle is a scientist. He's.....research into new forms of energy.  
a. making                      b. taking                      c. getting                      d. doing
- ☞ 39. After five years, he removed the tree..... the pot and weighed it again.  
a. about                      b. of                      c. in                      d. from
- ☞ 40. Scientists always try to test their theories.....experiments .  
a. off                      b. to                      c. with                      d. for
- ☞ 41- He decided..... his journey to Kuwait because of his son's illness.  
a) postpone                      b) postponing                      c) to postpone                      d) to postponing





- 42- When he became grown enough, he was able to.....his own food.  
a) perform                      b) make                      c) do                      d) help
- 43- My car is the.....as yours. It is difficult to differentiate between them.  
a) same                      b) alike                      c) similar                      d) like
- 44- Are you capable of.....decisions on your own?  
a) doing                      b) giving                      c) causing                      d) making
- 45- Poor people can only afford the most basic..... treatment.  
a) medicine                      b) medicinal                      c) medical                      d) medico
- 46- This house is.....the same as it was 20 years ago.  
a) exact                      b) exactly                      c) exactness                      d) exacting
- 47- Mother was worried..... my brother as he was late.  
a) about                      b) by                      c) with                      d) off
- 48- The bad weather was the cause..... the plane delay  
a) for                      b) about                      c) on                      d) of
- 49- I can see the advantages of this for you but will I benefit..... it?  
a) of                      b) from                      c) about                      d) in
- 50- Students learn computer to keep up..... modern technology.  
a) by                      b) off                      c) with                      d) in
- 51- The car should not be parked there, so the police will have it.....  
a-removed                      b-remained                      c- parked                      d-repaired
- 52- You can see some air pollution, but a lot of it is.....  
a-screened                      b- intolerant                      c-inaccurate                      d-invisible
- 53- Children grow fast and..... a lot of weight in their teenage years.  
a-lose                      b-earn                      c-gain                      d-do
- 54- It is not usually possible to..... too animals into the wild.  
a- leave                      b- release                      c- come out                      d- publish
- 55- It was a difficult.....to build the bridge, but cars can use it now.  
a- process                      b- theory                      c-mast                      d-function
- 56- Scientists agree that human activity is the..... of global warming.  
a-reason                      b-result                      c-case                      d-cause
- 57- Our English teacher wants us to form a.....between our school and a school in England.  
a-connect                      b- link                      c-communicate                      d-relation
- 58- It is sometimes difficult to get a telephone.....in remote parts.  
a-sign                      b-mast                      c-signal                      d-wave
- 59- Diabetes is a(n)..... which affects a lot of people.  
a-illness                      b-virus                      c-medicine                      d-poison
- 60- Hala's grandmother is very ill. She has.....  
a-wealth                      b-health                      c- diabetic                      d-cancer
- 61- The ..... is a connection between two or more events, people or ideas.  
a) pink                      b) call                      c) rope                      d) link
- 62- A.....is a light or sound waves that carry information to a radio or television.  
a) signal                      b) sign                      c) signature                      d) nature
- 63- To.....means to put a piece of equipment somewhere so that it is ready to be used.  
a) fix                      b) repair                      c) install                      d) download
- 64- A ..... is a series of events or changes that happen naturally.  
a) accident                      b) operation                      c) experiment                      d) process
- 65- It was a long and difficult.....to build the bridge, but cars can use it now.  
a. release                      b. remove                      c. visible                      d. process
- 66- Van Helmot found that the tree had.....a huge amount of weight.  
a. fed                      b. eaten                      c. gained                      d. slept
- 67- The car should not be parked there so the police will have it.....  
a. release                      b. invisible                      c. removed                      d. released



68. You can see some air pollution, but a lot of it is.....  
a. invisible      b. release      c. process      d. visible
69. Children grow fast and..... a lot of weight in their teenage years.  
a. gain      b. eat      c. release      d. feed
70. It is not usually possible to..... zoo animals into the wild, because they would not know how to survive.  
a. invisible      b. release      c. process      d. gain
71. A/An..... is series of events or changes that happen naturally.  
a. experiment      b. process      c. experience      d. procession
72. To..... means to increase in something.  
a. release      b. remove      c. gain      d. dry
73. To..... means to let go; stop holding something.  
a. remove      b. gain      c. feed      d. release
74. To..... means to take something away from, out of, or off the place where it is.  
a. release      b. remove      c. gain      d. dry
- 75..... means impossible to be seen .  
a. obvious      b. clear      c. visible      d. invisible
76. To..... is to put a piece of equipment somewhere so that it is ready to be used.  
a. unplug      b. install      c. release      d. cause
77. To..... means to let go; stop holding something.  
a. gain      b. realize      c. release      d. win
78. A / An..... means waves that send information to radio, television, etc.  
a. device      b. pole      c. mast      d. signal
79. Something that is..... is impossible to be seen.  
a. invisible      b. visible      c. apparent      d. noticeable
80. A/An ..... is a connection between two or more people or ideas,  
a. signal      b. cause      c. link      d. pole
81. A/An ..... is a tall pole on land often used for sending radio waves  
a. hill      b. mast      c. peak      d. summit
- 82) I made my son ..... the windows before he could go outside to play.  
a) washes      b) wash      c) to wash      d) washed
83. To..... is to increase in something.  
a. limit      b. reduce      c. lose      d. gain
84. A / An..... is a disease of your body or mind.  
a. disease      b. illness      c. comfort      d. overweight
85. A / An..... is a series of events or changes that happen naturally.  
a. process      b. operation      c. system      d. history
86. A / An..... is a serious disease in which cells in a body grown in a way that is not normal.  
a. illness      b. headache      c. diabetes      d. cancer
- 87- The ..... of the new program for our computer was a success.  
a- sticking      b- carrying      c- installation      d- disconnection
- 88- You could use a..... to help you to walk.  
a- mast      b- pole      c- stalk      d- stick
- 89- To get a good view, you could walk up a.....  
a- tower      b- ladder      c- mast      d- lift
90. How often do you get your teeth..... at the dentist's?  
a- to check      b- checked      c- check      d- checking





- 91- His greatest(improvement-development-achievement-settlement)was becoming the captain of the national team when he was 16.
- 92- There are some sports where it is good to(gain-know-win-earn)weight, rather than lose it.
- 93- Van Helmot weighed a small tree, planted it in the pot and added rain water then, he watered the soil (irregularly-regularity-regular-regularly)with rain water.
- 94- After five years, Van Helmot removed the tree(into-from-of-to)the pot and weighed it again.
- 95- People who have(small box-fever-diabetes-flu)must be very careful about what they eat.
- 96- Chemical engineering is the design and operation of machinery used in industrial (chemical-chemist-chemically-chemistry) processes.
- 97 -A(dialectical-diabetic-diagram-diabetes)is a person who suffers from diabetes.
- 98- The fire(spread-ran-healed-distinguished)very rapidly because of the strong wind.
- 99- Drugs have become a(useful-necessary-serious-vital)problem in a lot of schools.
- 100- Microbes are(visible-seen-invisible-noticeable)because it is impossible to see them with the naked eye.
- 101- My father is a university professor. He gives(lessons-lectures-cermons-advice) at Cairo university.
- 102- Farmers water their crops to(give-do-make-stay) sure they grow well.
- 103- Van Helmot found that the tree had(earned-won-gained-done)a huge amount of weight.
- 104- When Van Helmot weighed the soil, however, it was(more-utmost-most-almost) exactly the same as it had been five years earlier.
- 105- Van Helmot did not realize that there was(seen- isible-invisible-clear)food which was feeding his tree.
- 106- We now know that plants and trees make their(possessive-special-private-own)food.
- 107- They are doing(lecture-discovery-search-research)into the effects of passive smoking.
- 108- Scientists are trying to find a(care-cure-disease-diagnose)for cancer.
- 109- Are there any spare( battles-butter-tutors-batteries)for my tape recorder ?
- 110- They knew who had stolen the money but they couldn't (improve - prove - provide - deprive) it.
- 111- Plants can change the energy from the sun into (solar - electrical -natural - chemical)energy.
- 112- Modern space science (disagrees- disappoint- disproves- disconnect)all previous theories about the universe.
- 113- During Photosynthesis, the Oxygen is (absorbed- released- blown- changed) back into the air.
- 114- The police(rescued- escaped-separated-extracted) the girl from her cruel master.
- 115- I'll(lend-give-send- borrow) some money from the bank to start my new business.
- 116- Although the doctor examined the patient well, he could not know what was wrong (with-for-of- about) him.
- 117- We're all sure that the man is(guilty-ashamed-innocent-criminal)of the crime for which he is in prison . We should help him to prove that.
- 118- I'm eating less than usual because I don't want to gain too much (height-fame-respect-weight).
- 119- The pupils are trying to find(in-out-on-from) about the role played by women in the Egyptian society.
- 120- The teacher (go- caused-had- allowed) us copy the notes from the blackboard.



**\*\*\*Practice(5):( Previous Exams Egypt, Sudan and Azhar:)\*\*\***

**\*\*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*\***

- 121- Walid had his eyes..... last week. He needs to wear glasses.  
a- tested                      b- to test                      c- test                      d- testing
122. Can I borrow your bike? I can't use mine as I'm having it.....  
a-repairs                      b-repaired                      c-repair                      d-to repair
123. My mother gets me..... my bed room at the weekend.  
a-tidy                      b-tidied                      c-to tidy                      d-tidying
124. Ali's homework wasn't good so the teacher had him..... it again.  
a-to do                      b-done                      c-doing                      d-do
125. Tarek gets his photos.....after he takes them.  
a-to print                      b-printing                      c-print                      d-printed
126. When my cousins were in England, my uncle got some money .....to them.  
a-to send                      b-sent                      c-sends                      d-send
127. Leila usually.....twice a year.  
a) has checked her teeth                      b) checks her teeth  
c) has her teeth checked                      d) get her teeth checked
128. The police are.....the causes of a railway accident.  
a) asking                      b) investigating                      c) realizing                      d) experimenting
129. Scientists .....their results with past results,  
a) complete                      b) compare                      c) treat                      d) define
- 130 A.....is used for pouring liquids.  
a)tube                      b) pipe                      c) funnel                      d) tunnel
131. Doctors use.....to listen to heartbeats,  
a) thermometers                      b) test tubes                      c) earphones                      d) stethoscopes
132. Did you get your breakfast.....yesterday?  
a) cooked                      b) to cook                      c) cooks                      d) bad cooked
- 133- The teacher.....the students do some homework.  
a) wanted                      b) asked                      c) got                      d) had
- 134- They will..... the clerk to do some jobs.  
a) get                      b) have                      c) let                      d) do
- 135- Mona got her leg..... by the doctor.  
a) to examine                      b) examined                      c) examining                      d) examine
- 136- Did you..... the leak in the petrol tank fixed?  
a) ask                      b) want                      c) to have                      d) get
- 137-Ahmed's mother had him clean his room. This means she.....him clean his room.  
a) made                      b) persuaded                      c) asked                      d) convinced
138. Wait there and I'll..... Yasser to help you with those bags.  
a) get                      b) have                      c) let                      d) make
139. Cancer is a terrible .....that people of any age can get.  
a) sick                      b) illness                      c) toxic                      d) ill
140. After working for 10 hours, I feel as I have..... nothing . (دور أول 2014)  
a) achieved                      b) launched                      c) succeeded                      d) acknowledged
141. People have.....this plant successfully in many parts of the world. (دور ثان 2014)  
a) grown                      b) brought                      c) positioned                      d) explored
- 142.I.....my ambition when I became an engineer. (دور أول 2015)  
a. won                      b. got                      c. made                      d. achieved





143. The air which is around us is..... we can't see it. (دور ثان 2015)  
 a. incredible b. incorrect c. invisible d. impossible
144. We visit our village..... We go there every month. (دور ثان 2015)  
 a. particularly b. regularly c. gradually d. practically
145. Experiments are used to test scientific..... (أزهر 2011)  
 a) theories b) thoughts c) fiction d) facts
146. His constant cough was the ..... of many years of smoking. (أزهر 2012)  
 a) cause b) result c) reason d) because
147. You should go on a diet as you are..... weight. (أزهر 2013)  
 a) gaining b) winning c) earning d) beating
148. I'm afraid you did your best but your..... in the project isn't good enough. (السودان 2014)  
 a) community b) sound c) neighbourhood d) achievement
149. Our team is going to enter the competition. We all hope to ..... something. (أزهر 2015)  
 a. beat b. gain c. earn d. win
150. The factory is in the..... of moving to new offices. (دور أول 2017)  
 a. profession b. operation c. process d. profession

### Homework: Open Book Practice

1) \*\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : \*\*

- 1-She spent a considerable (mount-count-discount-amount) of money on clothes.
- 2-I have been working all day , but I feel as if I(chained-achieved-charged-doing) nothing.
- 3-(Diabetic-Parasitic-Aquatic-Gigantic) patients sometimes go into a coma.
- 4-(Annually-Manually-Gradually-Punctually), she realized that he wasn't telling her the truth.
- 5-The(ends-results-faults-salts)of the opinion poll تصويت showed most women supported this action.
- 6-She's hired a lawyer who (vaporizes-sympathizes-summarizes-specializes) in divorce cases
- 7-I've asked my neighbour to(water-alter-barter-enter)the plants while I'm away.
- 8-You should check the plant for any (impossible -incredible- visible- admirable) signs of disease.
- 9-He(gets-has-having-getting)his sister to wash his clothes
- 10-I will have my car (mended-to mend-have known -was knowing)tomorrow.
- 11-I get my daughter (read -have read -reading- to read) the exam questions carefully.
- 12-I get my students (waste-wasted-not waste-not to waste)so much time .
- 13-She stayed in the job for five years, (gain-gaining-to earn-earning)valuable experience.
- 14-It is important to (drought-dry-dryness-drying)your clothes before putting them on.
- 15-According to the(theoretical-theory-process-therapy)of relativity, nothing can travel faster than light.
- 16-My mother (got-made-had-let)me to help her do the shopping this morning.
- 17-Cancer is a terrible (toxic-ill-sick- illness)that people of any age can get.
- 18-Leila usually(would have-has-is having-has to)her teeth checked twice a year.



- Q19-Our house has been much less hot since my father(put-did-installed-made)air conditioning
- Q20-Wait there and I'll (have-get-let-make)Yasser to help you with those bags.
- Q21-My father ( got – had – has – caused )me tidy my room this morning.
- Q22-It is not always easy to get a mobile phone(sign-noise-side-signal)in the desert.
- Q23-I usually (make my hair -have cut my hair -get my hair -have my hair cut) once a month.
- Q24-You can(printing your name-have put your name-get your name printed-get printed your name) on a T-shirt in that shop.
- Q25-The police do not know the (challenge -reason-cause -benefit )of the accident in the street yesterday.
- Q26- Mariam .....the windows yesterday. They look nice and clean now!  
a-got                      b-had                      c-cleaned                      d-got cleaned
- Q27 -The light from the sun that damages our skin is ..... You can't see it.  
a-interrupted                      b-informed                      c-irrational                      d-invisible
- Q28-Yesterday, we .....our roof repaired after the storm.  
a-have had                      b-have                      c-have to                      d-had to have
- Q29 I didn't understand the homework so I.....my friend to help me.  
a-had                      b-got                      c-was having                      d-was had
- Q30- The teacher ..... us copy the notes from the blackboard.  
a-got                      b- caused                      c-had                      d- allowed
- Q31-My uncle lives in Al-Mahala..... is a big industrial city.  
a whose                      b where                      c what                      d which
- Q32 -Mrs. Eman has got her Ph. D.....we all congratulated her.  
a to which                      b about which                      c on which                      d which
- Q33 -Shakespeare was a great playwright ..... plays are famous everywhere.  
a who's                      b whose                      c who                      d which
- Q34- I don't believe..... he says; he usually tells lies.  
a what                      b that                      c which                      d who
- Q35- The 6th of October, 1973 was the day.....the Egyptian armed forces beat Israel and regained Sinai.  
a -which                      b in which                      c at which                      d on which
- Q36- Mr. Adel,.....is our new manager, is very friendly.  
a that                      b who                      c what                      d whom
- Q37 -We should all honour those .....do their best to serve humanity.  
a -what                      b which                      c who                      d whom
- Q38-I don't really know..... my neighbour will come back from Italy.  
a -what                      b when                      c where                      d which
- Q39-The electric machines.....in Japan are used everywhere.  
a -are made                      b which made                      c made                      d are making
- Q40.I'm sorry;.....happened was my mistake.  
a -when                      b where                      c that                      d what
- Q41.Mr. Akram is the generous man .....house we had lunch yesterday.  
a -who's                      b which                      c in whose                      d whose
- Q42.He spoke badly about my teacher.....made me angry; I like and respect my teacher so much.  
a-what                      b which                      c who                      d whom





- Q 43-The early morning is the best time..... I do sport in.  
a -what                      b which                      c who                      d when
- Q 44 Fortunately, I found the mobile.....  
a - I had lost it              b which I had lost it              c I had lost                      d that I had lost it
- Q 45 -The manager with..... I work is very friendly.  
a - whose                      b that                      c whom                      d who
- Q 46- During her life, Dr. Aisha helped to.....women's position in Egyptian society.  
a - approve                      b move                      c improve                      d remove
- Q 47- Dr. Aisha used to go with her father to meetings at which she.....  
to read and write.  
a- educated                      b learned                      c taught                      d instructed
- Q 48- Dr. Aisha was..... her degree in 1939 and then joined the university  
staff as a research assistant in 1942.  
a- awarded                      b rewarded                      c taken                      d won
- Q 49-Dr. Aisha was.....as a government inspector for the teaching of Arabic Literature.  
a - dismissed                      b deployed                      c employed                      d worked
- Q 50-Dr. Aisha argued for a more..... role for women in the modern world.  
a - ordinary                      b fixed                      c negative                      d positive

## 2) Reading Comprehension:

✓ Read the passage and answer the questions below

When Joni graduated from secondary school, her classmates chose her the year's "outstanding girl athlete". A few weeks later she was in the hospital, paralyzed from the neck down. It happened when she misjudged the depth of the water while diving, and broke her neck.

In those first weeks after the accident, faced with life in a wheelchair and unable to move without help, Joni was bitter and disappointed. She discovered that faith could give her the comfort, strength and hope she needed.

She began to develop patience. She started using the mouth stick. With practice she learnt to write and then to draw by holding a pencil between her teeth.

Joni continued to develop her artistic talent, and she became a very busy person because she started a business. Joni appeared on "The Today Show," a nationwide television programme. "Letters and requests came pouring in from people who saw the show," she said. Through all her activities and with personal courage, Joni has proved to herself and others that a disability does not have to be disappointment.

### 1-A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- Joni broke her neck because she (knew the depth of the water - measured the depth of the water wrongly - imagined the water was deeper than it really was - was not clever at swimming)
- 2- Joni was chosen the "outstanding girl athletes" (before finishing her secondary education - when she was still a secondary schoolgirl - after she had finished her secondary schooldays - after the accident).
- 3-The best "Title" of the passage is ("An outstanding girl athlete" - "An accident in a swimming pool" - "Patience beats disappointment" - "disability for ever")
- 4- When Joni graduated (in-on-at-from) secondary school, her classmates chose her the year's "outstanding girl athlete".
- 5- Joni continued to develop her (teaching-nursing-artistic-engineering) talent, and she became a very busy person because she started a business



6- Joni has (proved-proof-improved-approved) to herself and others that a disability does not have to be disappointment.

**2-B – Answer the following questions:**

- 7- How did Joni become paralyzed?
- 8- How did Joni overcome her disappointment?
- 9- What is "The Today Show"?
- 10- To what extent did she make use of her artistic talent?

**3) Translation: A) Translate into Arabic :**

1. Distance learning makes use of educational experts in the various branches of knowledge all over the world. We can make use of distance learning in all fields including the different branches of science.
2. The promotion of international co-operation and peace through education is one of UNESCO's basic aims. It is the only means for the accomplishment of prosperity, real and lasting peace among the peoples of the world.
3. The government sets up industrial projects to increase our local production. It encourages the private sector to invest capital. It also demolishes the barriers that hinder economic progress.

**B) Translate into English:**

- 1- تستخدم الطاقة النووية في مجالات الطب والصناعة والزراعة وتوليد الكهرباء.
- 2- الانفجار السكاني مشكلة تواجه الدول النامية وهي تعوق تقدمها وتكون مواردها الطبيعية محدودة.
- 3- ان زيادة الانتاج وتحسين نوعيته هما الطريق لتحقيق دخل يساعد على رفع مستوى المعيشة.
- 4- تعتبر قناة السويس أعظم ممر مائي بين الشرق والغرب، ولقد أصبحت مصدرا هاما للدخل القومي.
- 5- تأتي الأمانة في قمة الصفات البارزة لأخلاق الانسان الفاضل.

**4) Write an email to a friend of (180) words on ONE (1) of the following:**

Your name is Reda. Your friend's name is Essmat. His/Her address is  
Essmat@newmail.com.

- a - Why people have always wanted to explore new places.
- b- What you think of science fiction.





موقع ايجي فاست  
التعليمي